

With Bonus
CD-ROM
for Extra Practice

CAMBRID

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Basic Grammar in use

Self-study reference and practice for students of North American English

THIRD EDITION

with answers

Raymond Murphy
with William R. Smalzer

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Basic Grammar in use

Self-study reference and practice for students of North American English

THIRD EDITION

with answers

Raymond Murphy
with William R. Smalzer

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
Cambridge, New York, Melbourne, Madrid, Cape Town, Singapore,
São Paulo, Delhi, Dubai, Tokyo

Cambridge University Press
32 Avenue of the Americas, New York, NY 10013-2473, USA

www.cambridge.org

© Cambridge University Press 2011

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,
no reproduction of any part may take place without the written
permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 1989
Third Edition 2011

Printed in Hong Kong, China, by Golden Cup Printing Company Limited

A catalog record for this publication is available from the British Library.

ISBN 978-0-521-13334-0 Student's Book with answers and CD-ROM
ISBN 978-0-521-13353-1 Student's Book with answers
ISBN 978-0-521-13337-1 Student's Book with CD-ROM
ISBN 978-0-521-13330-2 Workbook with answers

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or
accuracy of URLs for external or third-party Internet Web sites referred to in
this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such Web sites is,
or will remain, accurate or appropriate.

Book design and layout: Adventure House, NYC
Audio production: Richard LePage & Associates

Illustration credits: Carlos Castellanos, Richard Deverell, Travis Foster, Peter
Hoey, Randy Jones, Gillian Martin, Sandy Nichols, Roger Penwill, Lisa
Smith, Ian West, Simon Williams, and Tracy Wood

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Contents

To the Student viii
To the Teacher x

Present
1 **am/is/are**
2 **am/is/are** (questions)
3 **I am doing** (present continuous)
4 **are you doing?** (present continuous questions)
5 **I do/work/like**, etc. (simple present)
6 **I don't . . .** (simple present negative)
7 **Do you . . . ?** (simple present questions)
8 **I am doing** (present continuous) and **I do** (simple present)
9 **I have . . .** and **I've got . . .**

Past
10 **was/were**
11 **worked/got/went**, etc. (simple past)
12 **I didn't . . . Did you . . . ?** (simple past negative and questions)
13 **I was doing** (past continuous)
14 **I was doing** (past continuous) and **I did** (simple past)
15 **I used to . . .**

Present perfect
16 **Have you ever . . . ?**
17 **How long have you . . . ?**
18 **for since ago**
19 **I have done** and **I did** (present perfect and simple past 1)
20 **just, already,** and **yet** (present perfect and simple past 2)
21 **I've lost my key. I lost my key last week.** (present perfect and simple past 3)

Passive
22 **is done was done** (passive 1)
23 **is being done has been done** (passive 2)

Verb forms
24 **be/have/do** in present and past tenses
25 Regular and irregular verbs

Future
26 **What are you doing tomorrow?**
27 **I'm going to . . .**
28 **will** 1
29 **will** 2

If you are not sure which unit you need, see the STUDY GUIDE on page 263.

WWW.ARMANIENGLISH.COM
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Modals, imperatives, etc.

30 **might**
31 **can** and **could**
32 **must**
33 **should**
34 **I have to . . .**
35 **Would you like . . . ? I'd like . . .**
36 **I'd rather . . .**
37 **Do this! Don't do that! Let's do this!**

There and *it*

38 **there is there are**
39 **there was/were there has/have been there will be**
40 **It . . .**

Auxiliary verbs

41 **I am, I don't**, etc.
42 **You have? / Have you? / You are? / Are you?**, etc.
43 **too/either so am I / neither do I**, etc.
44 **isn't, haven't, don't**, etc. (negatives)

Questions

45 **is it . . . ? have you . . . ? do they . . . ?**, etc. (questions 1)
46 **Who saw you? Who did you see?** (questions 2)
47 **Who is she talking to? What is it like?** (questions 3)
48 **What . . . ? Which . . . ? How . . . ?** (questions 4)
49 **How long does it take . . . ?**
50 **Do you know where . . . ? I don't know what . . .**, etc.

Reported speech

51 **She said that . . . He told me that . . .**

-ing and *to . . .*

52 **work/working go/going do/doing**
53 **to . . . (I want to do)** and **-ing (I enjoy doing)**
54 **I want you to . . . I told you to . . .**
55 **I went to the store to . . .**

Go, get, do, make, and *have*

56 **go to . . . go on . . . go for . . . go -ing**
57 **get**
58 **do** and **make**
59 **have**

Pronouns and possessives

60 **I/me he/him they/them**, etc.
61 **my/his/their**, etc.
62 **Whose** is this? It's **mine/yours/hers**, etc.
63 **I/me/my/mine**

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the STUDY GUIDE on page 263.

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

64 **myself/yourself/themselves**, etc.
65 **-'s** (**Kate's** camera / **my brother's** car, etc.)

A and *the*

66 **a/an . . .**
67 **train(s)** **bus(es)** (singular and plural)
68 **a bottle / some water** (countable/uncountable 1)
69 **a cake / some cake / some cakes** (countable/uncountable 2)
70 **a/an** and **the**
71 **the . . .**
72 **go to work** **go home** **go to the movies**
73 **I like music** **I hate exams**
74 **the . . .** (names of places)

Determiners and pronouns

75 **this/that/these/those**
76 **one/ones**
77 **some** and **any**
78 **not + any** **no** **none**
79 **not + anybody/anyone/anything** **nobody/no one/nothing**
80 **somebody/anything/nowhere**, etc.
81 **every** and **all**
82 **all** **most** **some** **any** **no/none**
83 **both** **either** **neither**
84 **a lot** **much** **many**
85 **(a) little** **(a) few**

Adjectives and adverbs

86 **old/nice/interesting**, etc. (adjectives)
87 **quickly/badly/suddenly**, etc. (adverbs)
88 **old/older** **expensive / more expensive**
89 **older than . . .** **more expensive than . . .**
90 **not as . . . as**
91 **the oldest** **the most expensive**
92 **enough**
93 **too**

Word order

94 He **speaks English** very well. (word order 1)
95 **always/usually/often**, etc. (word order 2)
96 **still** **yet** **already**
97 **Give me that book!** **Give it to me!**

Conjunctions and clauses

98 **and** **but** **or** **so** **because**
99 **When . . .**
100 **If we go . . .** **If you see . . .**, etc.
101 **If I had . . .** **If we went . . .**, etc.
102 a person **who . . .** a thing **that/which . . .** (relative clauses 1)
103 the people **we met** the hotel **you stayed at** (relative clauses 2)

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the **STUDY GUIDE** on page 263.

WWW.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Prepositions

104 **at 8:00 on Monday in April**
105 **from . . . to until since for**
106 **before after during while**
107 **in at on** (places 1)
108 **in at on** (places 2)
109 **to in at** (places 3)
110 **next to, between, under**, etc.
111 **up, over, through**, etc.
112 **on at by with about**
113 **afraid of . . .** , **good at . . .** , etc. **of/at/for**, etc. (prepositions + **-ing**)
114 **listen to . . .** , **look at . . .** , etc. (verb + preposition)

Phrasal verbs

115 **go in, fall off, run away**, etc. (phrasal verbs 1)
116 **put on** your shoes **put** your shoes **on** (phrasal verbs 2)

Appendix 1 Active and passive 235
Appendix 2 List of irregular verbs 236
Appendix 3 Irregular verbs in groups 237
Appendix 4 Short forms (**he's / I'd / don't**, etc.) 238
Appendix 5 Spelling 240
Appendix 6 Phrasal verbs (**take off / give up**, etc.) 242
Appendix 7 Phrasal verbs + object (**put out** a fire / **try on** clothes, etc.) 243

Additional Exercises 244

Study Guide 263

Answer Key to Exercises 276
Answer Key to Additional Exercises 303
Answer Key to Study Guide 306

Index 308

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the STUDY GUIDE on page 263.

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

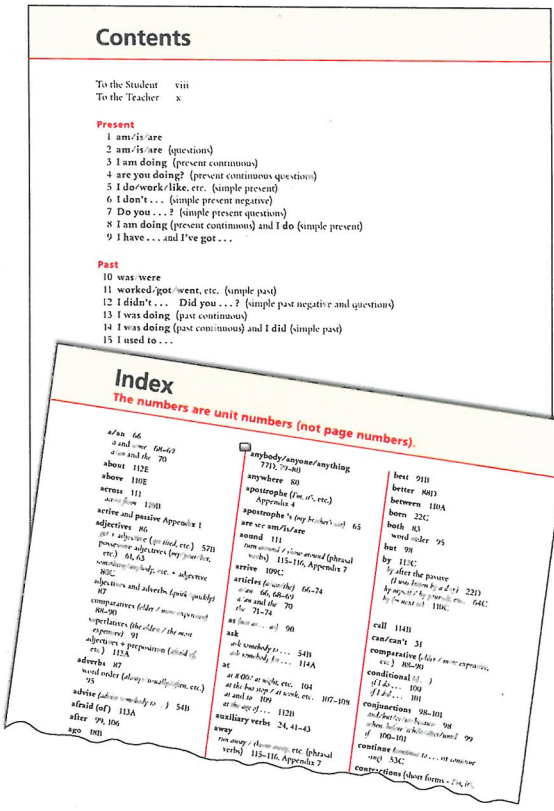
مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

To the Student

This is a grammar book for beginning to low-intermediate students of English. There are 116 units in the book, and each unit is about a different point of English grammar. There is a list of units at the beginning of the book *(Contents)*.

Do not study all the units in order from beginning to end. It is better to choose the units that you *need* to do. For example, if you have a problem with the present perfect (*I have been, he has done,* etc.), study Units 16–21.

Use the *Contents* or the *Index* (at the back of the book) to find the unit (or units) that you need.


Contents

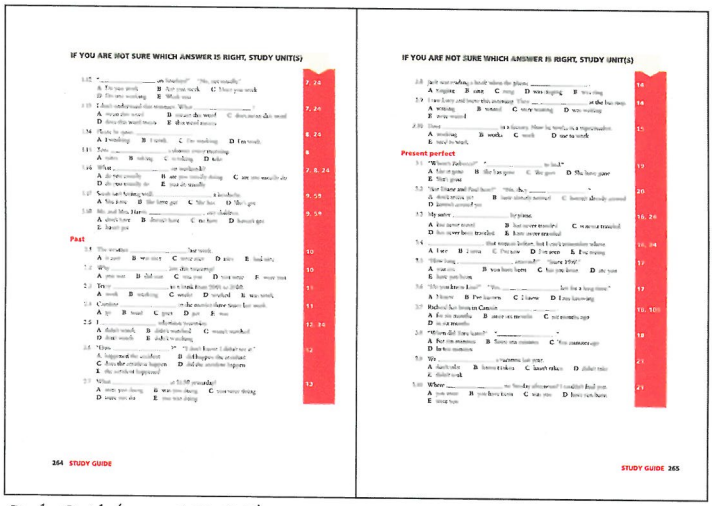
To the Student viii
To the Teacher x

Present
1 am/is/are
2 am/is/are (questions)
3 I am doing (present continuous)
4 are you doing? (present continuous questions)
5 I do/work/like, etc. (simple present)
6 I don't . . . (simple present negative)
7 Do you . . . ? (simple present questions)
8 I am doing (present continuous) and I do (simple present)
9 I have . . . and I've got . . .

Past
10 was/were
11 worked/got/went, etc. (simple past)
12 I didn't . . . Did you . . . ? (simple past negative and questions)
13 I was doing (past continuous)
14 I was doing (past continuous) and I did (simple past)
15 I used to . . .

Index
The numbers are unit numbers (not page numbers).

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the *Study Guide* at the back of the book.


IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT, STUDY UNIT(S)

Past

264 STUDY GUIDE

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT, STUDY UNIT(S)

Present perfect

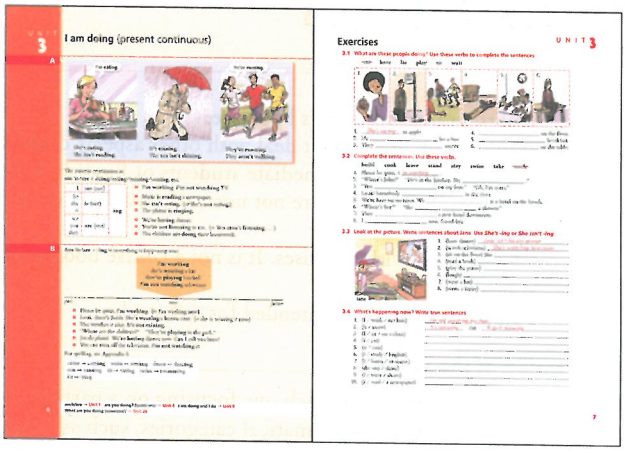
STUDY GUIDE 265

Study Guide (pages 263–275)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Each unit is two pages. The information is on the left-hand page and the exercises are on the right:

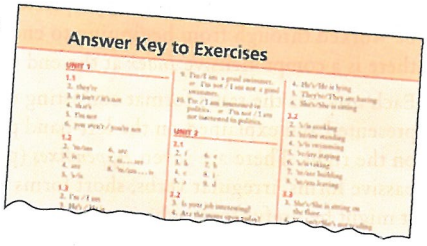


Information **Exercises**

Study the left-hand page (information), and then do the exercises on the right-hand page.

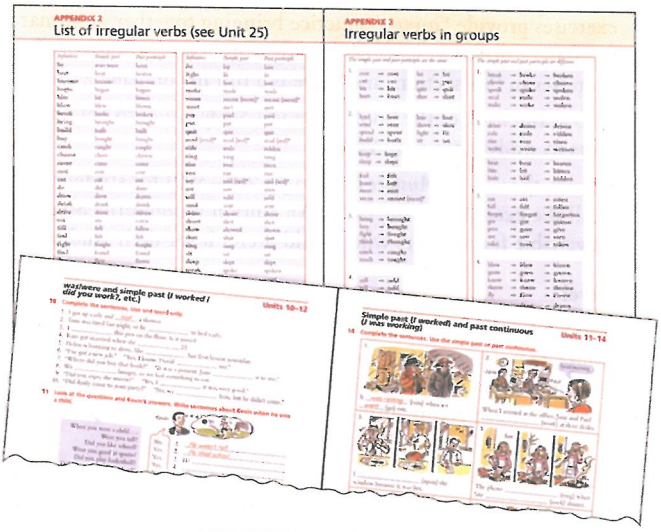
Use the *Answer Key* to check your answers. The *Answer Key* is on pages 276–302.

Study the left-hand page again if necessary.



Don't forget the seven *Appendixes* at the back of the book (pages 235–243). These will give you information about active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms, spelling, and phrasal verbs.

There are also *Additional Exercises* at the back of the book (pages 244–262). There is a list of these exercises on page 244.



CD-ROM

This book is sold with or without a CD-ROM. On the CD-ROM, there are more exercises on all the units, and these are different from the exercises in the book. There are also more than 600 test questions.



www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

To the Teacher

The most important features of this book are:

- It is a grammar book. It does not deal with other aspects of the language.
- It is for beginning to low-intermediate students of English. It does not cover areas of grammar which are not normally taught at the beginning to low-intermediate level.
- It is a reference book with exercises. It is not a course book and is not organized progressively.
- It is addressed to learners and intended for self-study.

Organization of the book

There are 116 units in the book, each one focusing on a particular area of grammar. The material is organized in grammatical categories, such as tenses, questions, and articles. Units are *not* ordered according to difficulty, and should therefore be selected and used in the order appropriate for the learner(s). The book should *not* be worked through from beginning to end. The units are listed in the *Contents*, and there is a comprehensive *Index* at the end of the book.

Each unit has the same format consisting of two facing pages. The grammar point is presented and explained on the left-hand page and the corresponding exercises are on the right. There are seven *Appendixes* (pages 235–243) dealing with active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms (contractions), spelling, and phrasal verbs. It might be useful for teachers to draw students' attention to these.

At the back of the book there is a set of *Additional Exercises* (pages 244–262). These exercises provide "mixed" practice bringing together grammar points from a number of different units (especially those concerning verb forms). There are 35 exercises in this section, and there is a full list on page 244.

Also at the back of the book there is a *Study Guide* to help students decide which units to study – see page 263.

Finally, there is an *Answer Key* (pages 276–302) for students to check their answers to all the exercises in the book. An edition without the *Study Guide* and *Answer Key* is available for teachers who would prefer it for their students.

Level

The book is for beginning learners, i.e., learners with very little English, but not for complete beginners. It is intended mainly for beginning students who are beyond the early stages of a beginners' course. It could also be used by low-intermediate learners whose grammar is weaker than other aspects of their English or who have problems with particular areas of basic grammar.

The explanations are addressed to the beginning learner and are therefore as simple and as short as possible. The vocabulary used in the examples and exercises has also been restricted so that the book can be used at this level.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Using the book

The book can be used by students working alone (see *To the Student*) or as supplementary course material. In either case the book can serve as a beginning grammar book.

When used as course material, the book can be used for immediate consolidation or for later revision or remedial work. It might be used by the whole class or by individual students needing extra help and practice.

In some cases it may be desirable to use the left-hand pages (presentation and explanation) in class, but it should be noted that these have been written for individual study and reference. In most cases, it would probably be better for teachers to present the grammar point in their preferred way with the exercises being done for homework. The left-hand page is then available for later reference by the student.

Some teachers may prefer to keep the book for revision and remedial work. In this case, individual students or groups of students can be directed to the appropriate units for self-study and practice.

CD-ROM

The book is sold with or without a CD-ROM. The CD-ROM contains further exercises on all the units in the book, as well as a bank of more than 600 test questions from which users can select to compile their own tests.

Basic Grammar in Use, *Third Edition*

This is a new edition of *Basic Grammar in Use*. The differences between this edition and the second edition are:

- The book has been redesigned with new color illustrations.
- There is reorganization, so some units have different numbers from the previous edition.
- There are many (usually minor) revisions to the explanations, examples, and exercises.
- There are two new pages of *Additional Exercises* (pages 244–262).
- There is a new CD-ROM with further exercises to accompany the book.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Basic Grammar in use

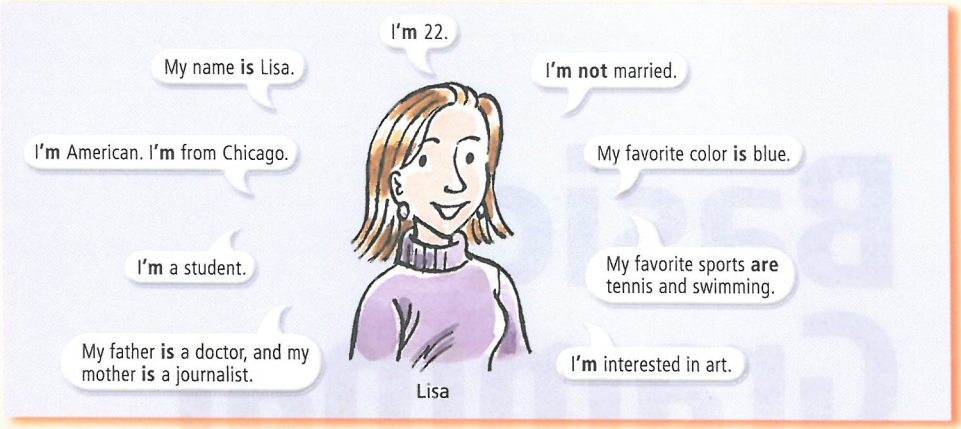
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

NIT 1

am/is/are

A



B

Positive		
I	**am**	(I'm)
he she it	**is**	(he's) (she's) (it's)
we you they	**are**	(we're) (you're) (they're)

short forms

Negative				
I	**am not**	(I'm not)		
he she it	**is not**	(he's **not** (she's **not** (it's **not**	*or* *or* *or*	he **isn't**) she **isn't**) it **isn't**)
we you they	**are not**	(we're **not** (you're **not** (they're **not**	*or* *or* *or*	we **aren't**) you **aren't**) they **aren't**)

short forms

- I'm cold. Can you close the window, please?
- I'm 32 years old. My sister **is** 29.
- Steve **is** sick. He's in bed.
- My brother **is** afraid of dogs.
- It's 10:00. You're late again.
- Ann and I **are** good friends.
- Your keys **are** on the table.



- I'm tired, but I'm **not** hungry.
- Tom **isn't** interested in politics. He's interested in music.
- Jane **isn't** a teacher. She's a student.
- Those people **aren't** Canadian. They're Australian.
- It's sunny today, but it **isn't** warm.

C

that's = that **is** there's = there **is** here's = here **is**

- Thank you. That's very nice of you.
- Look! There's Chris.
- "Here's your key." "Thank you."



www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

1.1 Write the short form (*she's / we aren't*, etc.)

1. she is *she's*
2. they are _____
3. it is not _____
4. that is _____
5. I am not _____
6. you are not _____

1.2 Write *am*, *is*, or *are*.

1. The weather *is* nice today.
2. I _____ not rich.
3. This bag _____ heavy.
4. These bags _____ heavy.
5. Look! There _____ Carol.
6. My brother and I _____ good tennis players.
7. Amy _____ at home. Her children _____ at school.
8. I _____ a taxi driver. My sister _____ a nurse.

1.3 Complete the sentences.

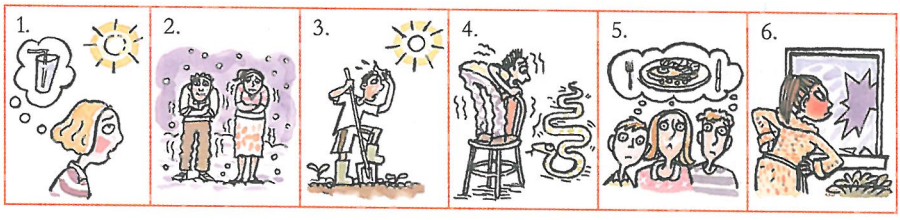
1. Steve is sick. *He's* in bed.
2. I'm not hungry, but _____ thirsty.
3. Mr. Thomas is a very old man. _____ 98.
4. These chairs aren't beautiful, but _____ comfortable.
5. The weather is nice today. _____ warm and sunny.
6. "_____ late." "No, I'm not. I'm early!"
7. Catherine isn't at home. _____ at work.
8. "_____ your coat." "Oh, thank you very much."

1.4 Look at Lisa's sentences in 1A. Now write sentences about yourself.

1. (name?) My _____
2. (from?) I _____
3. (age?) I _____
4. (job?) I _____
5. (favorite color or colors?) My _____
6. (interested in . . . ?) I _____

1.5 Write sentences for the pictures. Use:

afraid **angry** **cold** **hot** **hungry** ~~**thirsty**~~



1. *She's thirsty.*
2. They _____
3. He _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

1.6 Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use *is/isn't* or *are/aren't*.

1. (it / hot today) *It isn't hot today.* OR *It's hot today.*
2. (it / windy today) It _____
3. (my hands / cold) My _____
4. (Brazil / a very big country) _____
5. (diamonds / cheap) _____
6. (Toronto / in the United States) _____

Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use *I'm / I'm not*.

7. (tired) *I'm tired.* OR *I'm not tired.*
8. (hungry) I _____
9. (a good swimmer) _____
10. (interested in politics) _____

→ Additional exercise 1 (page 244)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

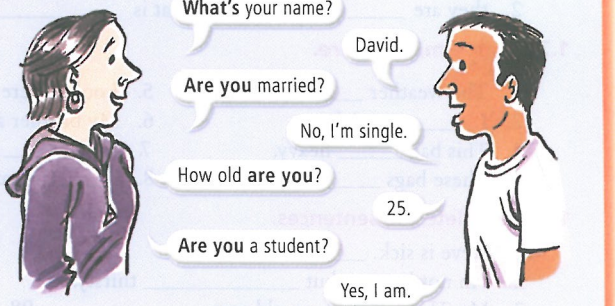
UNIT 2

am/is/are (questions)

A

Positive	
I	**am**
he she it	**is**
we you they	**are**

Question	
am	I?
is	he? she? it?
are	we? you? they?



- "**Am I** late?" "No, **you're** on time."
- "**Is your mother** at home?" "No, **she's** out."
- "**Are your parents** at home?" "No, **they're** out."
- "**Is it** cold in your room?" "Yes, a little."
- **Your shoes are** nice. **Are they** new?

We say:

- **Is she** at home? / **Is your mother** at home? (*not* Is at home your mother?)
- **Are they** new? / **Are your shoes** new? (*not* Are new your shoes?)

B

Where . . . ? / What . . . ? / Who . . . ? / How . . . ? / Why . . . ?

- **Where is** your mother? Is she at home?
- "**Where are** you from?" "Canada."
- "**What color is** your car?" "It's red."
- "**How old is** Joe?" "He's 24."
- "**How are** your parents?" "They're fine."
- These postcards are nice. **How much are** they?
- This hotel isn't very good. **Why is** it so expensive?

what's = what is who's = who is how's = how is where's = where is

- **What's** your phone number?
- **Who's** that man?
- **Where's** Lucy?
- **How's** your father?

C

Short answers

Yes,	I	**am.**
	he she it	**is.**
	we you they	**are.**

No,	**I'm**	**not.**
	he's **she's** **it's**	
	we're **you're** **they're**	

or

No,	he she it	**isn't.**
	we you they	**aren't.**



- "**Are you** tired?" "**Yes, I am.**"
- "**Are you** hungry?" "**No, I'm not**, but I'm thirsty."
- "**Is your friend** Japanese?" "**Yes, he is.**"
- "**Are these your keys?**" "**Yes, they are.**"
- "**That's** my seat." "**No, it isn't.**"

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

2.1 Find the right answers for the questions.

1. Where's the camera?	a) Toronto.	1. g
2. Is your car blue?	b) No, I'm not.	2. ____
3. Is Linda from London?	c) Yes, you are.	3. ____
4. Am I late?	d) My sister.	4. ____
5. Where's Ann from?	e) Black.	5. ____
6. What color is your bag?	f) No, it's black.	6. ____
7. Are you hungry?	g) In your bag.	7. ____
8. How is George?	h) No, she's American.	8. ____
9. Who's that woman?	i) Fine.	9. ____

2.2 Make questions with these words.

1. (is / at home / your mother) Is your mother at home ?
2. (your parents / are / how) How are your parents ?
3. (interesting / is / your job) ____ ?
4. (the stores / are / open today) ____ ?
5. (from / where / you / are) ____ ?
6. (interested in sports / you / are) ____ ?
7. (is / near here / the post office) ____ ?
8. (at school / are / your children) ____ ?
9. (you / are / late / why) ____ ?

2.3 Complete the questions. Use *What . . . / Who . . . / Where . . . / How . . . .*

1. How are your children?
2. ____ the bus stop?
3. ____ your children?
4. ____ these oranges?
5. ____ your favorite sport?
6. ____ the man in this photograph?
7. ____ your new shoes?

They're fine.
At the end of the block.
Five, six, and ten.
$1.50 a pound.
Skiing.
That's my father.
Black.

2.4 Write the questions.





Paul

1. (name?) What's your name?
2. (Australian?) ____
3. (how old?) ____
4. (a teacher?) ____
5. (married?) ____
6. (wife a lawyer?) ____
7. (from?) ____
8. (her name?) ____
9. (how old?) ____

Paul.
No, I'm Canadian.
I'm 30.
No, I'm a lawyer.
Yes, I am.
No, she's a teacher.
She's from Mexico.
Ana.
She's 27.

2.5 Write short answers (*Yes, I am. / No, he isn't.*, etc.).

1. Are you married? No, I'm not.
2. Are you thirsty? ____
3. Is it cold today? ____
4. Are your hands cold? ____
5. Is it dark now? ____
6. Are you a teacher? ____

→ Additional exercises 1–2 (pages 244–245)

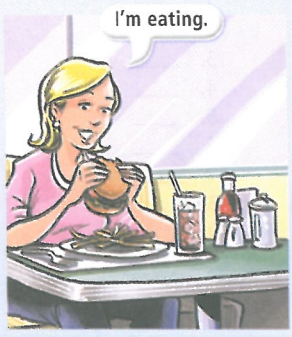
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

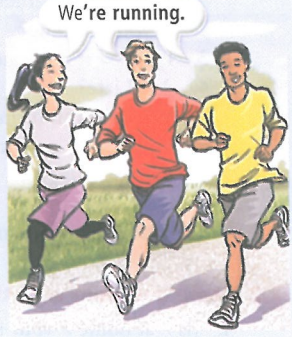
UNIT 3

I am doing (present continuous)

A







She's **eating**.
She **isn't reading**.

It's **raining**.
The sun **isn't shining**.

They're **running**.
They **aren't walking**.

The present continuous is:
am/is/are + doing/eating/running/writing, etc.

I	**am** (not)	**-ing**
he she it	**is** (not)	
we you they	**are** (not)	

- **I'm working**. **I'm not watching** TV.
- Maria **is reading** a newspaper.
- She **isn't eating**. (*or* She's **not** eating.)
- The phone **is ringing**.
- We're **having** dinner.
- You're **not listening** to me. (*or* You **aren't listening** . . .)
- The children **are doing** their homework.

B

Am/is/are + **-ing** = something is happening *now*:

I'm working
she's **wearing** a hat
they're **playing** baseball
I'm not watching television

past — *now* — *future*

- Please be quiet. **I'm working**. (= I'm working now)
- Look, there's Sarah. She's **wearing** a brown coat. (= she is wearing it now)
- The weather is nice. It's **not raining**.
- "Where are the children?" "They're **playing** in the park."
- *(on the phone)* We're **having** dinner now. Can I call you later?
- You can turn off the television. **I'm not watching** it.

For spelling, see Appendix 5.

come → coming write → writing dance → dancing
run → running sit → sitting swim → swimming
lie → lying

am/is/are → Unit 1 are you doing? (questions) → Unit 4 I am doing and I do → Unit 8
What are you doing tomorrow? → Unit 26

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

3.1 What are these people doing? Use these verbs to complete the sentences:

~~eat~~ have lie play sit wait



1. She's eating an apple.
2. He _____ for a bus.
3. They _____ soccer.
4. _____ on the floor.
5. _____ breakfast.
6. _____ on the table.

3.2 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs:

build cook leave stand stay swim take ~~work~~

1. Please be quiet. I 'm working .
2. "Where's John?" "He's in the kitchen. He _____."
3. "You _____ on my foot." "Oh, I'm sorry."
4. Look! Somebody _____ in the river.
5. We're here on vacation. We _____ at a hotel on the beach.
6. "Where's Sue?" "She _____ a shower."
7. They _____ a new hotel downtown.
8. I _____ now. Good-bye.

3.3 Look at the picture. Write sentences about Jane. Use *She's -ing* or *She isn't -ing*.



1. (have dinner) Jane isn't having dinner.
2. (watch television) She's watching television.
3. (sit on the floor) She _____
4. (read a book) _____
5. (play the piano) _____
6. (laugh) _____
7. (wear a hat) _____
8. (write a letter) _____

3.4 What's happening now? Write true sentences.

1. (I / wash / my hair) I'm not washing my hair.
2. (it / snow) It's snowing. OR It isn't snowing.
3. (I / sit / on a chair) _____
4. (I / eat) _____
5. (it / rain) _____
6. (I / study / English) _____
7. (I / listen / to music) _____
8. (the sun / shine) _____
9. (I / wear / shoes) _____
10. (I / read / a newspaper) _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 4 are you doing? (present continuous questions)

A

Positive		
I	**am**	**doing** **working** **going** **staying**, etc.
he she it	**is**	
we you they	**are**	

Question		
am	I	**doing?** **working?** **going?** **staying?**, etc.
is	he she it	
are	we you they	



- "**Are** you **feeling** OK?" "Yes, I'm fine, thanks."
- "**Is** it **raining**?" "Yes, take an umbrella."
- Why **are** you **wearing** a coat? It's not cold.
- "**What's** Paul **doing**?" "He**'s reading** the newspaper."
- "What **are** the children **doing**?" "They**'re watching** television."
- Look, there's Emily! Where**'s** she **going**?
- Who **are** you **waiting** for? **Are** you **waiting** for Sue?

B

Study the word order:

	is/are + *subject* + **-ing**		
	Is	he	**working** today?
	Is	Paul	**working** today? (*not* Is working Paul today?)
Where	**are**	they	**going**?
Where	**are**	those people	**going**? (*not* Where are going those people?)

C

Short answers

Yes,	I	**am.**	No,	I'm	**not.**	*or*	No,	he she it	**isn't.**
	he she it	**is.**		he's she's it's				
	we you they	**are.**		we're you're they're				we you they	**aren't.**

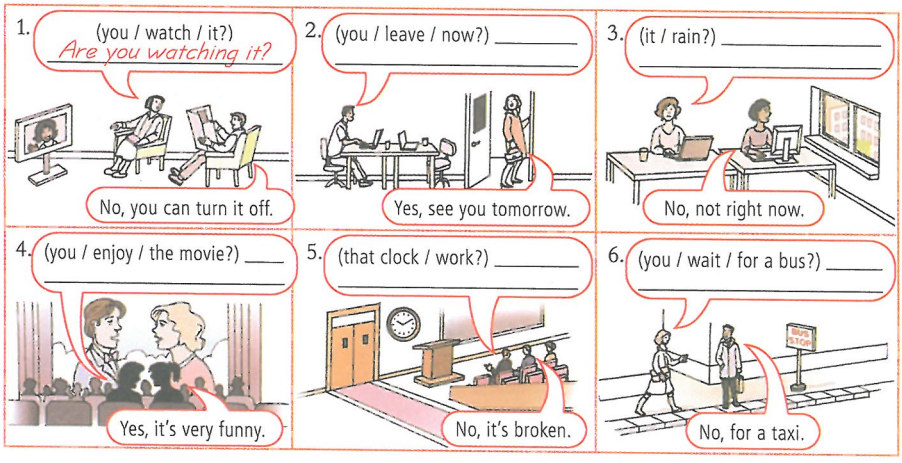
- "**Are** you **leaving** now?" "**Yes, I am.**"
- "**Is** Paul **working** today?" "**Yes, he is.**"
- "**Is** it **raining**?" "**No, it isn't.**"
- "**Are** your friends **staying** at a hotel?" "**No, they aren't.** They're staying with me."

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

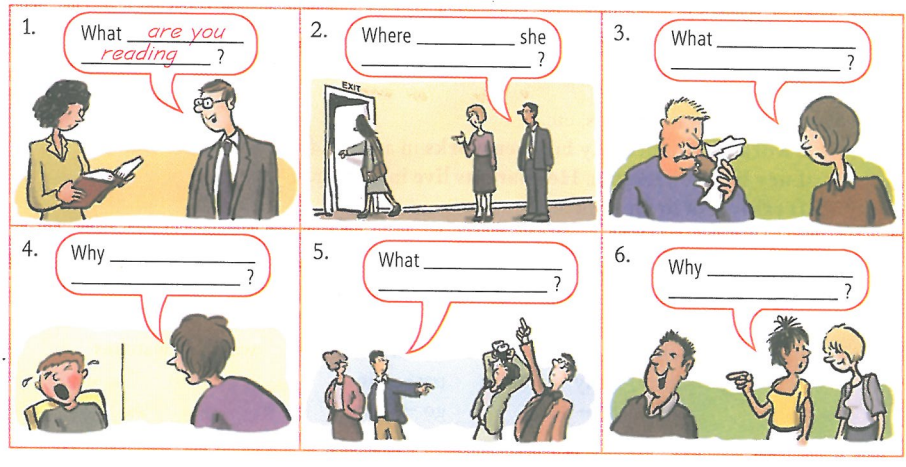
Exercises

4.1 Look at the pictures and write the questions.



4.2 Look at the pictures and complete the questions. Use:

cry eat go laugh look at ~~read~~



4.3 Make questions with these words. Put the words in the right order.

1. (is / working / Paul / today) Is Paul working today ?
2. (what / the children / are / doing) What are the children doing ?
3. (you / are / listening / to me) _____ ?
4. (where / your friends / are / going) _____ ?
5. (are / watching / your parents / television) _____ ?
6. (what / Jessica / is / cooking) _____ ?
7. (why / you / are / looking / at me) _____ ?
8. (is / coming / the bus) _____ ?

4.4 Write short answers (*Yes, I am.* / *No, he isn't.*, etc.).

1. Are you watching TV? No, I'm not.
2. Are you wearing a watch? _____
3. Are you eating something? _____
4. Is it raining? _____
5. Are you sitting on the floor? _____
6. Are you feeling all right? _____

→ Additional exercise 3 (page 245)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

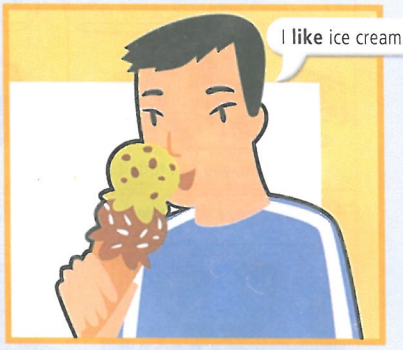
NIT 5

I do/work/like, etc. (simple present)

A



They're looking at their books.
They **read** a lot.



He's eating an ice cream cone.
He **likes** ice cream.

They **read** / he **likes** / I **work**, etc. = the *simple present*:

I/we/you/they	**read**	**like**	**work**	**live**	**watch**	**do**	**have**
he/she/it	**reads**	**likes**	**works**	**lives**	**watches**	**does**	**has**

Remember:
he works / **she** lives / **it** rains, etc.

- **I work** in an office. **My brother works** in a bank. (*not* My brother work)
- **Lucy lives** in Houston. **Her parents live** in Chicago.
- **It rains** a lot in the winter.

I **have** → he/she/it **has**:

- **John has** lunch at home every day.

For spelling, see Appendix 5.

-es after **-s** / **-sh** / **-ch**:	pass → pass**es**	finish → finish**es**	watch → watch**es**
-y → **-ies**:	study → stud**ies**	try → tr**ies**	
also:	do → d**oes**	go → g**oes**	

B

We use the simple present for things that are true in general, or for things that happen sometimes or all the time:

- I **like** big cities.
- Your English is good. You **speak** very well.
- Tim **works** very hard. He **starts** at 7:30 and **finishes** at 8:00 at night.
- The earth **goes** around the sun.
- We **do** a lot of different things in our free time.
- It **costs** a lot of money to build a hospital.

C

Always/never/often/usually/sometimes + simple present

- Sue **always gets** to work early. (*not* Sue gets always)
- I **never eat** breakfast. (*not* I eat never)
- We **often sleep** late on weekends.
- Mark **usually plays** tennis on Sundays.
- I **sometimes walk** to work, but not very often.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

I don't . . . (negative) → Unit 6 Do you . . . ? (question) → Unit 7 I am doing and I do → Unit 8
always/usually/often, etc. (word order) → Unit 85

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

5.1 Write these verbs with *-s* or *-es*.

1. (read) she *reads*
2. (think) he _____
3. (fly) it _____
4. (dance) he _____
5. (have) she _____
6. (finish) it _____

5.2 Complete the sentences about the people in the pictures. Use:

eat go live ~~play~~ play sleep



1. *He plays* the piano.
2. They _____ in a very big house.
3. _____ a lot of fruit.
4. _____ tennis.
5. _____ to the movies a lot.
6. _____ seven hours a night.

5.3 Complete the sentences. Use:

boil close cost cost like like meet open ~~speak~~ teach wash

1. Maria *speaks* four languages.
2. Banks usually _____ at 9:00 in the morning.
3. The art museum _____ at 5:00 in the afternoon.
4. Tina is a teacher. She _____ math to young children.
5. My job is very interesting. I _____ a lot of people.
6. Peter's car is always dirty. He never _____ it.
7. Food is expensive. It _____ a lot of money.
8. Shoes are expensive. They _____ a lot of money.
9. Water _____ at 100 degrees Celsius.
10. Julia and I are good friends. I _____ her, and she _____ me.

5.4 Write sentences from these words. Use the right form of the verb (*arrive* or *arrives*, etc.).

1. (always / early / Sue / arrive) *Sue always arrives early.*
2. (to the movies / never / I / go) _____
3. (work / Martina / hard / always) _____
4. (like / chocolate / children / usually) _____
5. (Julia / parties / enjoy / always) _____
6. (often / people's names / I / forget) _____
7. (television / Tim / watch / never) _____
8. (usually / dinner / we / have / at 6:30) _____
9. (Jenny / always / nice clothes / wear) _____

5.5 Write sentences about yourself. Use *always/never/often/usually/sometimes*.

1. (watch TV in the evening) *I usually watch TV in the evening.*
2. (read in bed) I _____
3. (get up before 7:00) _____
4. (go to work/school by bus) _____
5. (drink coffee in the morning) _____

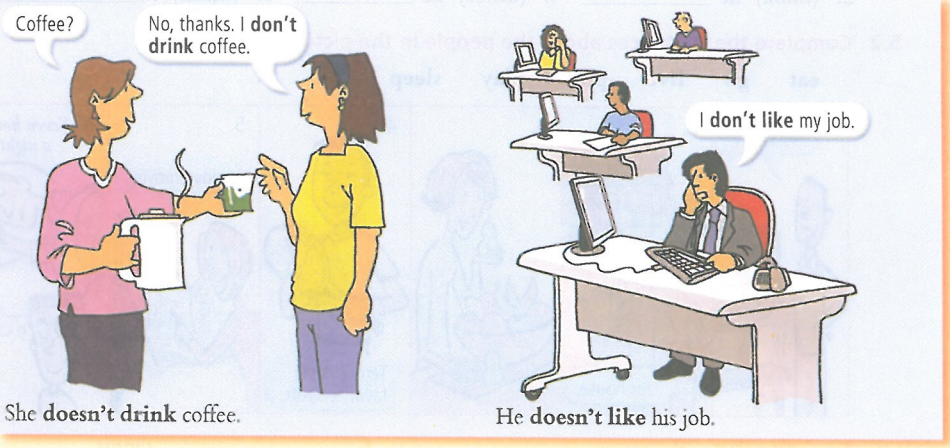
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 6 I don't . . . (simple present negative)

A

The simple present negative is **don't/doesn't** + *verb*:



She **doesn't drink** coffee.

He **doesn't like** his job.

Positive	
I we you they	**work** **like** **do** **have**
he she it	**works** **likes** **does** **has**

Negative		
I we you they	**don't** **(do not)**	**work** **like** **do** **have**
he she it	**doesn't** **(does not)**	

- I **drink** coffee, but I **don't drink** tea.
- Sue **drinks** tea, but she **doesn't drink** coffee.
- You **don't work** very hard.
- We **don't watch** television very often.
- The weather is usually nice. It **doesn't rain** very often.
- Gary and Nicole **don't know** many people.

B

Remember:

I/we/you/they	**don't . . .**
he/she/it	**doesn't . . .**

- **I don't** like football.
- **He doesn't** like football.

- **I don't** like Fred, and **Fred doesn't** like me. (*not* Fred don't like)
- **My car doesn't** use much gas. (*not* My car don't use)
- Sometimes he is late, but **it doesn't** happen very often.

C

We use **don't/doesn't** + *base form* (don't **like** / doesn't **speak** / doesn't **do**, etc.):

- **I don't like** to wash the car. **I don't do** it very often.
- Sarah **speaks** Spanish, but she **doesn't speak** Italian. (*not* doesn't speaks)
- Bill **doesn't do** his job very well. (*not* Bill doesn't his job)
- Paula **doesn't** usually **have** breakfast. (*not* doesn't . . . has)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آزمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

6.1 Write the negative.

1. I play the piano very well. — *I don't play the piano very well.*
2. Jane plays the piano very well. — Jane _____
3. They know my phone number. — They _____
4. We work very hard. — _____
5. Mike has a car. — _____
6. You do the same thing every day. — _____

6.2 Study the information and write sentences with *like*.



	Bill and Rose	Carol	You
1. classical music?	yes	no	?
2. boxing?	no	yes	
3. horror movies?	yes	no	

1. *Bill and Rose like classical music.*
   Carol _____
   I _____ classical music.
2. Bill and Rose _____
   Carol _____
   I _____
3. _____

6.3 Write about yourself. Use:

I never . . . or ***I . . . a lot*** or ***I don't . . . very often.***

1. (watch TV) *I never watch TV.* OR *I watch TV a lot.* OR *I don't watch TV very often.*
2. (go to the theater) _____
3. (ride a bicycle) _____
4. (eat in restaurants) _____
5. (travel by train) _____

6.4 Complete the sentences. All of them are negative. Use ***don't/doesn't*** + these verbs:

cost **go** **know** ~~**read**~~ **see** **use** **wear**

1. I buy a newspaper every day, but sometimes I *don't read* it.
2. Paul has a car, but he _____ it very often.
3. Paul and his friends like movies, but they _____ to the movie theater very often.
4. Amanda is married, but she _____ a ring.
5. I _____ much about politics. I'm not interested in it.
6. The Regent Hotel isn't expensive. It _____ much to stay there.
7. Brian lives near us, but we _____ him very often.

6.5 Put the verb into the correct form, positive or negative.

1. Margaret *speaks* four languages – English, Japanese, Arabic, and Spanish. (speak)
2. I *don't like* my job. It's very boring. (like)
3. "Where's Martin?" "I'm sorry. I _____." (know)
4. Sue is a very quiet person. She _____ very much. (talk)
5. Andy _____ a lot of coffee. It's his favorite drink. (drink)
6. It's not true! I _____ it! (believe)
7. That's a very beautiful picture. I _____ it a lot. (like)
8. Mark is a vegetarian. He _____ meat. (eat)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 7 Do you . . . ? (simple present questions)

A

We use **do/does** in simple present questions:

Positive	
I we you they	**work** **like** **do** **have**
he she it	**works** **likes** **does** **has**

Question		
do	I we you they	**work?** **like?** **do?** **have?**
does	he she it	



B

Study the word order:

	do/does	*subject*	**infinitive**	
	Do	you	**work**	on Sundays?
	Do	your friends	**live**	near here?
	Does	Chris	**play**	tennis?
Where	**do**	your parents	**live?**	
How often	**do**	you	**wash**	your hair?
What	**does**	this word	**mean?**	
How much	**does**	it	**cost**	to fly to Puerto Rico?

Questions with **always/usually/ever**:

	Do	you	**always**	**have**	breakfast?
	Does	Chris	**ever**	**call**	you?
What	**do**	you	**usually**	**do**	on weekends?

What do you **do**? = What's your job?

- "**What do** you **do**?" "I work in a bank."

C

Remember:

do I/we/you/they . . .
does he/she/it . . .

- **Do they** like music?
- **Does he** like music?

D

Short answers

Yes,	I/we/you/they **do.**		No,	I/we/you/they **don't.**	
	he/she/it **does.**			he/she/it **doesn't.**	

- "**Do you** play tennis?" "**No, I don't.**"
- "**Do your parents** speak English?" "**Yes, they do.**"
- "**Does Gary** work hard?" "**Yes, he does.**"
- "**Does your sister** live in Vancouver?" "**No, she doesn't.**"

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین مرکز دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

7.1 Write questions with *Do . . . ?* and *Does . . . ?*

1. I like chocolate. How about you? Do you like chocolate ?
2. I play tennis. How about you? _____ you _____ ?
3. You live near here. How about Lucy? _____ Lucy _____ ?
4. Tom plays tennis. How about his friends? _____ ?
5. You speak English. How about your brother? _____ ?
6. I do yoga every morning. How about you? _____ ?
7. Sue often travels on business. How about Paul? _____ ?
8. I want to be famous. How about you? _____ ?
9. You work hard. How about Anna? _____ ?

7.2 Make questions from these words + *do*/*does*. Put the words in the right order.

1. (where / live / your parents) Where do your parents live ?
2. (you / early / always / get up) Do you always get up early ?
3. (how often / TV / you / watch) _____ ?
4. (you / want / what / for dinner) _____ ?
5. (like / you / football) _____ ?
6. (your brother / like / football) _____ ?
7. (what / you / do / in your free time) _____ ?
8. (your sister / work / where) _____ ?
9. (to the movies / ever / you / go) _____ ?
10. (what / mean / this word) _____ ?
11. (often / snow / it / here) _____ ?
12. (go / usually / to bed / what time / you) _____ ?
13. (how much / to call Mexico / it / cost) _____ ?
14. (you / for breakfast / have / usually / what) _____ ?

7.3 Complete the questions. Use these verbs:

~~do~~ do enjoy get like start teach work





1. What do you do ?
2. _____ it?
3. What time _____ in the morning?
4. _____ on Saturdays?
5. How _____ to work?
6. And your husband. What _____ ?
7. What _____ ?
8. _____ his job?

I work in a bookstore.
It's OK.
At 9:00.
Sometimes.
Usually by bus.
He's a teacher.
Science.
Yes, he loves it.

7.4 Write short answers (*Yes, he does. / No, I don't.*, etc.).

1. Do you watch TV a lot? No, I don't. OR Yes, I do.
2. Do you live in a big city? _____
3. Do you ever ride a bicycle? _____
4. Does it rain a lot where you live? _____
5. Do you play the piano? _____

→ Additional exercises 4–7 (pages 245–246)

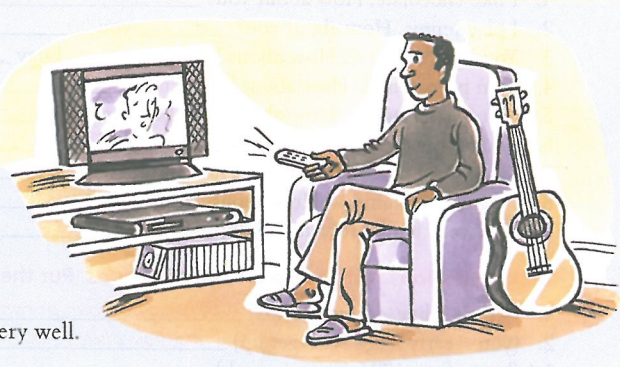
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 8

I am doing (present continuous) and I do (simple present)

A



Jack is watching television.
He is *not* playing the guitar.

But Jack has a guitar.
He plays it a lot, and he plays very well.

Jack **plays** the guitar,
but he **is not playing** the guitar now.

Is he playing the guitar?	**No, he isn't.**	*(present continuous)*
Does he play the guitar?	**Yes, he does.**	*(simple present)*

B

Present continuous (**I am doing**) = now, at the time of speaking:

I'm doing

past — *now* — *future*

- Please be quiet. **I'm working**. (*not* I work)
- Tom **is taking** a shower at the moment. (*not* Tom takes)
- Take an umbrella with you. **It's raining**.
- You can turn off the television. **I'm** not watch**ing** it.
- Why are you under the table? What **are** you do**ing**?

C

Simple present (**I do**) = in general, all the time, or sometimes:

I do

past — *now* — *future*

- I **work** every day from 9:00 to 5:30.
- Tom **takes** a shower every morning.
- It **rains** a lot in the winter.
- I **don't watch** television very often.
- What **do** you usually **do** on weekends?

D

We do *not* use these verbs in the present continuous (**I am -ing**):

like	**love**	**want**	**know**	**understand**	**remember**	**depend**
prefer	**hate**	**need**	**mean**	**believe**	**forget**	

Use only the simple present with these verbs (**I want / do you like?**, etc.):

- I'm tired. I **want** to go home. (*not* I'm wanting)
- "**Do** you **know** that girl?" "Yes, but I **don't remember** her name."
- I **don't understand**. What **do** you **mean**?

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آموزشی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

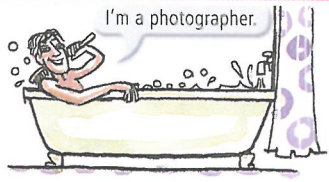
present continuous → Units 3-4 ; simple present → Units 5-7 ; present for the future → Unit 25

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

8.1 Answer the questions about the pictures.

1.



Does he take photographs? *Yes, he does.*
Is he taking a photograph? *No, he isn't.*
What is he doing?
He's taking a bath.

2.



Is she driving a bus? _____
Does she drive a bus? _____
What is she doing?
_____

3.



Does he wash windows? _____
Is he washing a window? _____
What is he doing?
_____

4.



Are they teaching? _____
Do they teach? _____
What do they do?
_____

8.2 Complete the sentences with *am/is/are* or *do/don't/does/doesn't*.

1. Excuse me, *do* you speak English?
2. "Where's Kate?" "I _____ know."
3. What's so funny? Why _____ you laughing?
4. "What _____ your sister do?" "She's a dentist."
5. It _____ raining. I _____ want to go out in the rain.
6. "Where _____ you come from?" "Canada."
7. How much _____ it cost to send a letter to Canada?
8. Steve is a good tennis player, but he _____ play very often.

8.3 Put the verb in the present continuous (*I am doing*) or the simple present (*I do*).

1. Excuse me, *do you speak* (you / speak) English?
2. "Where's Tom?" *"He's taking* (he / take) a shower."
3. *I don't watch* (I / not / watch) television very often.
4. Listen! Somebody _____ (sing).
5. Sandra is tired. _____ (she / want) to go home now.
6. How often _____ (you / read) a newspaper?
7. "Excuse me, but _____ (you / sit) in my seat." "Oh, I'm sorry."
8. I'm sorry, _____ (I / not / understand). Can you speak more slowly?
9. It's late. _____ (I / go) home now. _____ (you / come) with me?
10. What time _____ (your father / finish) work every day?
11. You can turn off the radio. _____ (I / not / listen) to it.
12. "Where's Paul?" "In the kitchen. _____ (he / cook) something."
13. Martin _____ (not / usually / drive) to work. He _____ (usually / walk).
14. Sue _____ (not / like) coffee. _____ (she / prefer) tea.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

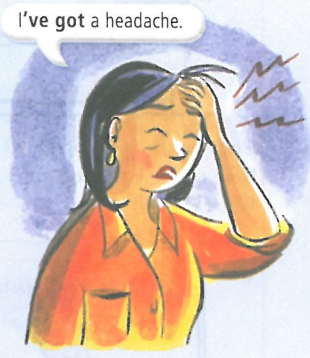
UNIT 9 I have . . . and I've got . . .

A

You can say **I have** or **I've got**, **he has** or **he's got**:

I we you they	**have**	*or*	I we you they	**have got**	(**I've got**) (**we've got**) (**you've got**) (**they've got**)
he she it	**has**	*or*	he she it	**has got**	(**he's got**) (**she's got**) (**it's got**)

short form



- I **have** blue eyes. *or* I**'ve got** blue eyes.
- Tim **has** two sisters. *or* Tim **has got** two sisters.
- Our car **has** four doors. *or* Our car **has got** four doors.
- Sarah isn't feeling well. She **has** a headache. *or* She**'s got** a headache.
- They like animals. They **have** a horse, three dogs, and six cats. *or* They**'ve got** a horse . . .

B

I **don't have** / I **haven't got**, etc. *(negative)*

You can say:

I/we/you/they	**don't**	**have**	*or*	I/we/you/they	**haven't**	**got**
he/she/it	**doesn't**			he/she/it	**hasn't**	

- I **have** a bike, but I **don't have** a car. *or* I**'ve got** a bike, but I **haven't got** a car.
- Mr. and Mrs. Harris **don't have** any children. *or* . . . **haven't got** any children.
- It's a nice house, but it **doesn't have** a garage. *or* . . . it **hasn't got** a garage.
- Mariko **doesn't have** a job. *or* Mariko **hasn't got** a job.

C

Do you **have** . . . ? / **Have** you **got** . . . ?, etc. *(questions)*

You can say:

do	I/we/you/they	**have?**	*or*	**have**	I/we/you/they	**got?**
does	he/she/it			**has**	he/she/it	

- **Do** you **have** a camera? *or* **Have** you **got** a camera?
- **Does** Helen **have** a car? *or* **Has** Helen **got** a car?
- What kind of car **does** she **have**? *or* What kind of car **has** she **got**?
- What **do** you **have** in your bag? *or* What **have** you **got** in your bag?

D

Short answers

- "**Do** you have a camera?" "Yes, I **do**." / "No, I **don't**." *or*
  "**Have** you got a camera?" "Yes, I **have**." / "No, I **haven't**."
- "**Does** Anne have a car?" "Yes, she **does**." / "No, she **doesn't**." *or*
  "**Has** Anne got a car?" "Yes, she **has**." / "No, she **hasn't**."

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

had / didn't have (past) → Units 11–12 have breakfast / have a headache etc. → Unit 58 some/any → Unit 77

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

9.1 Write the short form with *got* (*we've got* / *he hasn't got*, etc.).

1. we have got *we've got*
2. he has got _____
3. they have got _____
4. she has not got _____
5. it has got _____
6. I have not got _____

9.2 Read the questions and answers. Then write sentences about Mark.

1. Have you got a car?	No.	1. *He hasn't got a car.*
2. Have you got a computer?	Yes.	2. He _____
3. Have you got a dog?	No.	3. _____
4. Have you got a cell phone?	No.	4. _____
5. Have you got a watch?	Yes.	5. _____
6. Have you got any brothers or sisters?	Yes, two brothers and a sister.	6. _____



What about you? Write sentences with *I've got* or *I haven't got*.

7. (a computer) _____
8. (a dog) _____
9. (a bike) _____
10. (brothers / sisters) _____

9.3 Write these sentences with *have/has* or *don't have* / *doesn't have*. The meaning is the same.

1. They have got two children. *They have two children.*
2. She hasn't got a key. *She doesn't have a key.*
3. He has got a new job. _____
4. They haven't got much money. _____
5. Have you got an umbrella? _____
6. We have got a lot of work to do. _____
7. I haven't got your phone number. _____
8. Has your father got a car? _____
9. How much money have we got? _____

9.4 Complete the sentences with *do*, *doesn't*, *don't*, *got*, *has*, or *have*.

1. Sarah hasn't *got* a car. She goes everywhere by bicycle.
2. They like animals. They *have* three dogs and two cats.
3. Charles isn't happy. He _____ got a lot of problems.
4. They don't read much. They _____ have many books.
5. "What's wrong?" "I've _____ something in my eye."
6. "Where's my pen?" "I don't know. I don't _____ it."
7. Julia wants to go to the concert, but she _____ have a ticket.

9.5 Complete the sentences. Use *have/has* or *don't have* / *doesn't have* with:

a lot of friends **four wheels** ~~**a headache**~~ **six legs**
~~**a big yard**~~ **much time** **a key**

1. I'm not feeling well. I *have a headache.*
2. It's a nice house, but it *doesn't have a big yard.*
3. Most cars _____
4. Everybody likes Tom. He _____
5. I can't open the door. I _____
6. An insect _____
7. Hurry! We _____

→ Additional exercises 5–7 (page 246)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 10

was/were

A



Now Robert **is** at work.

At midnight last night
he **wasn't** at work.

He **was** in bed.
He **was** asleep.

am/is (present) → **was** (past):

- I **am** tired. (now) — I **was** tired **last night**.
- Where **is** Kate? (now) — Where **was** Kate **yesterday**?
- The weather **is** nice today. — The weather **was** nice **last week**.

are (present) → **were** (past):

- You **are** late. (now) — You **were** late **yesterday**.
- They **aren't** here. (now) — They **weren't** here **last Sunday**.

B

Positive	
I he she it	**was**
we you they	**were**

Negative	
I he she it	**was not** **(wasn't)**
we you they	**were not** **(weren't)**

Question	
was	I? he? she? it?
were	we? you? they?

- Last year Rachel **was** 22, so she **is** 23 now.
- When I **was** a child, I **was** afraid of dogs.
- We **were** hungry after the trip, but we **weren't** tired.
- The hotel **was** comfortable, but it **wasn't** expensive.

- **Was** the weather nice when you **were** on vacation?
- Your shoes are nice. **Were** they expensive?
- Why **were** you late this morning?

C

Short answers

Yes,	I/he/she/it **was**.	
	we/you/they **were**.	

No,	I/he/she/it **wasn't**.	
	we/you/they **weren't**.	

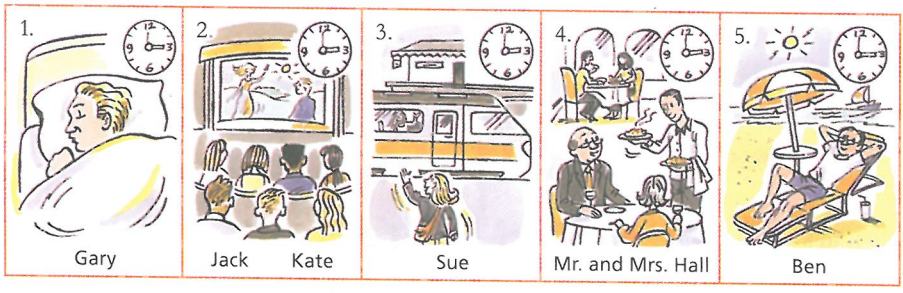
- "**Were you** late?" "**No, I wasn't.**"
- "**Was Ted** at work yesterday?" "**Yes, he was.**"
- "**Were Sue and Steve** at the party?" "**No, they weren't.**"

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

10.1 Where were these people at 3:00 yesterday afternoon?



1. *Gary was in bed.*
2. Jack and Kate _____
3. Sue _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. And you? I _____

10.2 Write *am/is/are* (present) or *was/were* (past).

1. Last year she *was* 22, so she *is* 23 now.
2. Today the weather _____ nice, but yesterday it _____ very cold.
3. I _____ hungry. Can I have something to eat?
4. I feel fine this morning, but I _____ very tired last night.
5. Where _____ you at 11:00 last Friday morning?
6. Don't buy those shoes. They _____ very expensive.
7. I like your new jacket. _____ it expensive?
8. This time last year I _____ in Paris.
9. "Where _____ the children?" "I don't know. They _____ here a few minutes ago."

10.3 Write *was/were* or *wasn't/weren't*.

1. We weren't happy with the hotel. Our room *was* very small, and it *wasn't* clean.
2. Mark _____ at work last week because he _____ sick. He's better now.
3. Yesterday _____ a holiday, so the banks _____ closed. They're open today.
4. "_____ Kate and Bill at the party?" "Kate _____ there, but Bill _____."
5. "Where are my keys?" "I don't know. They _____ on the table, but they're not there now."
6. You _____ at home last night. Where _____ you?

10.4 Write questions from these words + *was/were*. Put the words in the right order.

1. (late / you / this morning / why?)
   Why were you late this morning? → The traffic was bad.
2. (difficult / your exam?)
   _____ → No, it was easy.
3. (last week / where / Sue and Chris?)
   _____ → They were on vacation.
4. (your new camera / how much?)
   _____ → One hundred and twenty dollars.
5. (angry / you / yesterday / why?)
   _____ → Because you were late.
6. (nice / the weather / last week?)
   _____ → Yes, it was beautiful.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

NIT 11

worked/got/went, etc. (simple past)

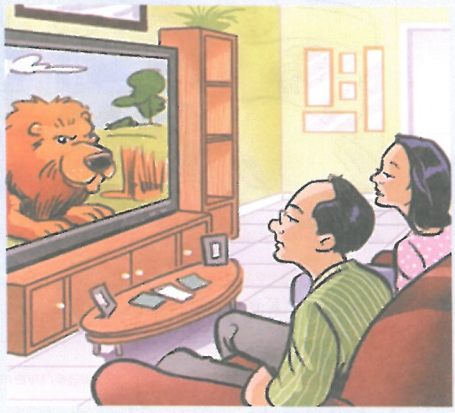
A

They **watch** television every night. *(simple present)*

They **watched** television last night. *(simple past)*

watched is the *simple past*:

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**watched**



B

The simple past is often **-ed** *(regular verbs)*. For example:

work → **worked** dance → **danced**
clean → **cleaned** stay → **stayed**
start → **started** need → **needed**

- I brush my teeth every morning. This morning I **brushed** my teeth.
- Terry **worked** in a bank from 1996 to 2003.
- Yesterday it **rained** all morning. It **stopped** at lunchtime.
- We **enjoyed** the party last night. We **danced** a lot and **talked** to a lot of people. The party **ended** at midnight.

For spelling, see Appendix 5.

try → tr**ied** study → stud**ied** copy → cop**ied**
stop → stop**ped** plan → plan**ned**

C

Some verbs are *irregular* (= not regular). The simple past is *not* **-ed**. Here are some important irregular verbs (see also Appendixes 2–3):

begin →	**began**	fall →	**fell**	leave →	**left**	sell →	**sold**
break	**broke**	find	**found**	lose	**lost**	sit	**sat**
bring	**brought**	fly	**flew**	make	**made**	sleep	**slept**
build	**built**	forget	**forgot**	meet	**met**	speak	**spoke**
buy	**bought**	get	**got**	pay	**paid**	stand	**stood**
catch	**caught**	give	**gave**	put	**put**	take	**took**
come	**came**	go	**went**	read	**read** (red)*	tell	**told**
do	**did**	have	**had**	ring	**rang**	think	**thought**
drink	**drank**	hear	**heard**	say	**said**	win	**won**
eat	**ate**	know	**knew**	see	**saw**	write	**wrote**

**pronounced "red"*

- I usually get up early, but this morning I **got** up at 9:30.
- We **did** a lot of work yesterday.
- Caroline **went** to the movies three times last week.
- James **came** into the room, **took** off his coat, and **sat** down.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

UNIT

11.1 Complete the sentences. Use a verb from the box.

~~brush~~ die end enjoy happen open rain start stay want

1. I *brushed* my teeth three times yesterday.
2. It was hot in the room, so I _____ the window.
3. The movie was very long. It _____ at 7:15 and _____ at 10:00.
4. When I was a child, I _____ to be a doctor.
5. The accident _____ last Sunday afternoon.
6. It's a nice day today, but yesterday it _____ all day.
7. We _____ our vacation last year. We _____ at a very nice place.
8. Anna's grandfather _____ when he was 90 years old.

11.2 Write the simple past of these verbs.

1. get *got*	4. pay _____	7. go _____	10. know _____
2. see _____	5. visit _____	8. think _____	11. put _____
3. play _____	6. buy _____	9. copy _____	12. speak _____

11.3 Read about Lisa's trip to Mexico City. Put the verbs in the correct form.



Last Tuesday, Lisa (1) *flew* from Los Angeles to Mexico City. She (2) _____ up at 6:00 in the morning and (3) _____ a cup of coffee. At 7:15 she (4) _____ home and (5) _____ to the airport. When she (6) _____ there, she (7) _____ the car, (8) _____ to the terminal, and (9) _____ in. Then she (10) _____ breakfast at an airport café and (11) _____ for her flight. The plane (12) _____ on time and (13) _____ in Mexico City four hours later. Finally she (14) _____ a taxi from the airport to her hotel downtown.

fly
get, have
leave, drive
get, park
walk, check
have, wait
depart, arrive
take

11.4 Write sentences about the past (*yesterday* / *last week*, etc.).

1. James always goes to work by car. Yesterday *he went to work by car.*
2. Rachel often loses her keys. She _____ last week.
3. Kate meets her friends every night. She _____ last night.
4. I usually buy two newspapers every day. Yesterday I _____
5. We often go to the movies on weekends. Last Sunday we _____
6. I eat an orange every day. Yesterday I _____
7. Tom always takes a shower in the morning. This morning he _____
8. Our friends often come to see us. They _____ last Friday.

11.5 Write sentences about what you did yesterday.

1. *I went to the theater.*
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

Additional exercise 10 (page 248)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

NIT 12

I didn't . . . Did you . . . ?
(simple past negative and questions)

A We use **did** in simple past negatives and questions:

Base Form
play
start
watch
have
see
do
go

Positive	
I	**played**
we	**started**
you	**watched**
they	**had**
he	**saw**
she	**did**
it	**went**

Negative		
I	**did not (didn't)**	play
we		start
you		watch
they		have
he		see
she		do
it		go

Question		
	I	play?
	we	start?
	you	watch?
did	they	have?
	he	see?
	she	do?
	it	go?

B **Do/does** *(present)* → **did** *(past)*:

I **don't** watch television very often.
I **didn't** watch television **yesterday**.
Does she go out often?
Did she go out **last night**?

C We use **did/didn't** + *base form* (**watch/play/go**, etc.):

I **watched**	*but*	I **didn't watch**	(*not* I didn't watched)
they **went**		**did** they **go**?	(*not* did they went?)
he **had**		he **didn't have**	
you **did**		**did** you **do**?	

I **played** tennis yesterday, but I **didn't win**.
"**Did** you **do** your homework?" "No, I **didn't have** time."
We **went** to the movies, but we **didn't enjoy** the film.

D Study the word order in questions:

	did +	*subject* +	*base form*	
	Did	your sister	**call**	you?
What	**did**	you	**do**	last night?
How	**did**	the accident	**happen**?	
Where	**did**	your parents	**go**	for vacation?

E *Short answers*

Yes,	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**did.**

No,	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**didn't.**

"**Did you** see Joe yesterday?" "**No, I didn't.**"
"**Did it** rain on Sunday?" "**Yes, it did.**"
"**Did Helen** come to the party?" "**No, she didn't.**"
"**Did your parents** have a good trip?" "**Yes, they did.**"

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

12.1 Complete these sentences with the verb in the negative.

1. I saw Barbara, but I *didn't see* Jane.
2. They worked on Monday, but they _____ on Tuesday.
3. We went to the post office, but we _____ to the bank.
4. She had a pen, but she _____ any paper.
5. Jack did some work in the yard, but he _____ any work in the house.

12.2 Write questions with *Did . . . ?*

1. I watched TV last night. How about you? *Did you watch TV last night* ?
2. I enjoyed the party. How about you? _____ ?
3. I had a nice vacation. How about you? _____ ?
4. I finished work early. How about you? _____ ?
5. I slept well last night. How about you? _____ ?

12.3 What did you do yesterday? Write positive or negative sentences.

1. (watch TV) *I watched TV.* OR *I didn't watch TV.*
2. (get up before 7:00) I _____
3. (take a shower) _____
4. (buy a magazine) _____
5. (eat meat) _____
6. (go to bed before 10:30) _____

12.4 Write B's questions. Use:

cost **get to work** **go** **go to bed late** **happen** **have a nice time** ~~**stay**~~ **win**

1. *A:* We went to Chicago last month. *B:* Where *did you stay* ? *A:* With some friends.	5. *A:* We came home by taxi. *B:* How much _____ ? *A:* Twenty dollars.
2. *A:* I was late for the meeting. *B:* What time _____ ? *A:* Half past nine.	6. *A:* I'm tired this morning. *B:* _____ ? *A:* No, but I didn't sleep very well.
3. *A:* I played tennis this afternoon. *B:* _____ ? *A:* No, I lost.	7. *A:* We went to the beach yesterday. *B:* _____ ? *A:* Yes, it was great.
4. *A:* I had a nice vacation. *B:* Good. Where _____ ? *A:* To the mountains.	8. *A:* The window is broken. *B:* How _____ ? *A:* I don't know.

12.5 Put the verb in the correct form – positive, negative, or question.

1. We went to the movies, but the film wasn't very good. We *didn't enjoy* it. (enjoy)
2. Tim _____ some new clothes yesterday – two shirts, a jacket, and a sweater. (buy)
3. "_____ yesterday?" "No, it was a nice day." (rain)
4. We were tired, so we _____ long at the party. (stay)
5. It was very warm in the room, so I _____ a window. (open)
6. "Did you call Chris this morning?" "No, I _____ time." (have)
7. "I cut my hand this morning." "How _____ that?" (do)
8. "Why weren't you at the meeting yesterday?" "I _____ about it." (know)

→ Additional exercises 10–13 (page 248)

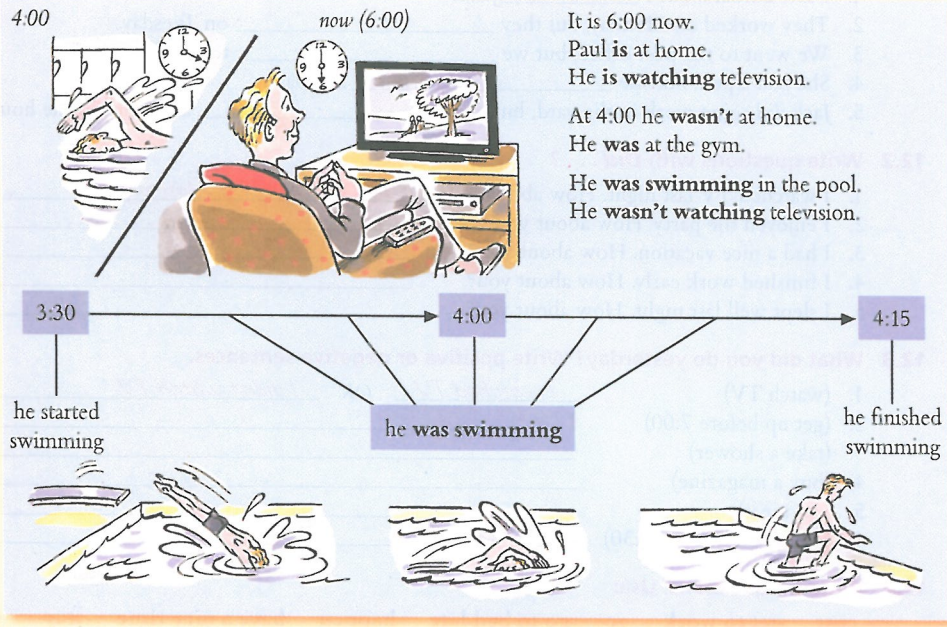
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 13

I was doing (past continuous)

A



B

Was/were + -ing is the *past continuous*:

Positive		
I he she it	**was**	**doing** **watching** **playing** **swimming** **living**, etc.
we you they	**were**	

Negative		
I he she it	**was not (wasn't)**	**doing** **watching** **playing** **swimming** **living**, etc.
we you they	**were not (weren't)**	

Question		
was	I he she it	**doing?** **watching?** **playing?** **swimming?** **living?**, etc.
were	we you they	

- What **were** you **doing** at 11:30 yesterday? **Were** you **working**?
- "What did he say?" "I don't know. I **wasn't listening**."
- It **was raining**, so we didn't go out.
- In 2001 we **were living** in Japan.
- Today she's wearing a skirt, but yesterday she **was wearing** pants.
- I woke up early yesterday. It was a beautiful morning. The sun **was shining**, and the birds **were singing**.

Spelling (**live** → **living** / **run** → **running** / **lie** → **lying**, etc.) → Appendix 5

C

Am/is/are + -ing *(present)* → **was/were + -ing** *(past)*:

Present	*Past*
■ **I'm working** (now).	■ I **was working** at 10:30 last night.
■ It **isn't raining** (now).	■ It **wasn't raining** when we went out.
■ What **are** you **doing** (now)?	■ What **were** you **doing** at 3:00?

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

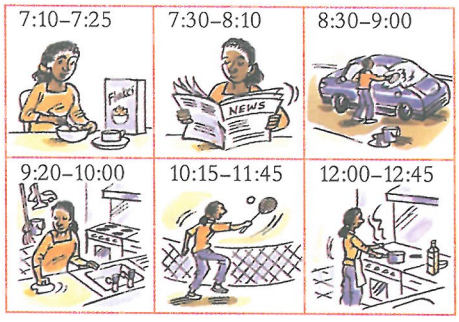
Exercises

13.1 Look at the pictures. Where were these people at 3:00 yesterday afternoon? And what were they doing? Write two sentences for each picture.

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
				
Rachel	Jack Kate	Tim	Tracey	Mr. and Mrs. Hall
at home watch TV	at the supermarket buy food	in his car drive	at the station wait for a train	in the park walk

1. *Rachel was at home. She was watching TV.*
2. Jack and Kate _____. They _____
3. Tim _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. And you? I _____

13.2 Sarah did a lot of things yesterday. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



1. At 8:45 *she was washing her car.*
2. At 10:45 she _____
3. At 8:00 _____
4. At 12:10 _____
5. At 7:15 _____
6. At 9:30 _____

13.3 Complete the questions. Use ***was/were -ing***. Use ***what/where/why*** if necessary.

1. (you / live) *Where were you living* in 1999?
2. (you / do) _____ at 2:00?
3. (it / rain) _____ when you got up?
4. (Sue / drive) _____ so fast?
5. (Tim / wear) _____ a suit yesterday?

In Brazil.
I was asleep.
No, it was sunny.
Because she was late.
No, a T-shirt and jeans.

13.4 Look at the picture. You saw Joe in the street yesterday afternoon. What was he doing? Write positive or negative sentences.



1. (wear / a jacket) *He wasn't wearing a jacket.*
2. (carry / a bag) _____
3. (go / to the dentist) _____
4. (eat / an ice cream cone)
5. (carry / an umbrella) _____
6. (go / home) _____
7. (wear / a hat) _____
8. (ride / a bicycle) _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 14

I was doing (past continuous) and I did (simple past)

A

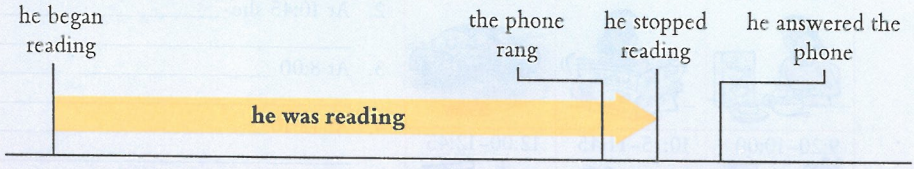


Jack **was reading** a book. The phone **rang**. He **stopped** reading. He **answered** the phone.

What **happened**? The phone **rang**. *(simple past)*
What **was** Jack **doing** when the phone rang?
He **was reading** a book. } *(past continuous)*

What **did** he **do** when the phone rang?
He **stopped** reading and **answered** the phone. } *(simple past)*

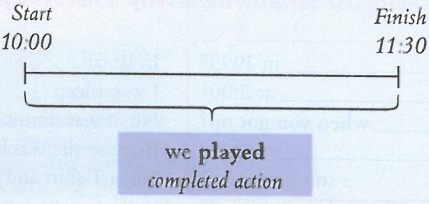
Jack began reading *before* the phone rang.
So *when* the phone rang, he **was reading**.



B

Simple past

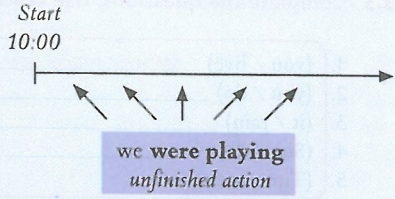
- *A:* What **did** you **do** yesterday morning?
  B: We **played** tennis. (from 10:00 to 11:30)



- Jack **read** a book yesterday. (= from beginning to end)
- **Did** you **watch** the basketball game on television last night?
- It **didn't rain** while we were on vacation.

Past continuous

- *A:* What **were** you **doing** at 10:30?
  B: We **were playing** tennis.



- Jack **was reading** a book when the phone rang.
- **Were** you **watching** television when I called you?
- It **wasn't raining** when I got up.

- I **started** work at 9:00 and **finished** at 4:30. At 2:30 I **was working**.
- It **was raining** when we **went** out. (= it started raining *before* we went out)
- I **saw** Lucy and Steve this morning. They **were waiting** at the bus stop.
- Kelly **fell** asleep while she **was reading**.

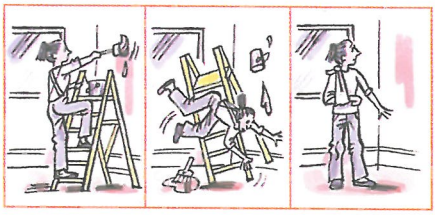
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

I did (simple past) → Units 11–12 . I was doing (past continuous) → Unit 13 . while → Unit 106

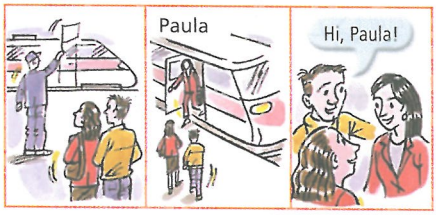
مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

14.1 Look at the pictures. Put the verbs in the correct form, past continuous or simple past.

1. 

Lucy *broke* (break) her arm last week. It _____ (happen) when she _____ (paint) her room. She _____ (fall) off the ladder.

2. 

The train _____ (arrive) at the station, and Paula _____ (get) off. Two friends of hers, Jon and Rachel, _____ (wait) to meet her.

3. 

Yesterday Sue _____ (walk) down the street when she _____ (meet) James. He _____ (go) to the station to catch a train, and he _____ (carry) a bag. They _____ (stop) to talk for a few minutes.

14.2 Put the verb into the past continuous or simple past.

1. *A:* What *were you doing* (you / do) when the phone *rang* (ring)?
   B: I *was watching* (watch) television.
2. *A:* Was Jane busy when you went to see her?
   B: Yes, she _____ (study).
3. *A:* What time _____ (the mail / arrive) this morning?
   B: It _____ (come) while I _____ (have) breakfast.
4. *A:* Was Tracey at work today?
   B: No, she _____ (not / go) to work. She was sick.
5. *A:* How fast _____ (you / drive) when the police _____ (stop) you?
   B: I'm not sure, but I _____ (not / drive) very fast.
6. *A:* _____ (your team / win) the baseball game yesterday?
   B: No, the weather was very bad, so we _____ (not / play).
7. *A:* How _____ (you / break) the window?
   B: We _____ (play) baseball. I _____ (hit) the ball and it _____ (break) the window.
8. *A:* _____ (you / see) Jenny last night?
   B: Yes, she _____ (wear) a very nice jacket.
9. *A:* What _____ (you / do) at 2:00 this morning?
   B: I was asleep.
10. *A:* I _____ (lose) my key last night.
    B: How _____ (you / get) into your apartment?
    A: I _____ (climb) in through a window.

→ Additional exercises 14–15 (pages 249–250)

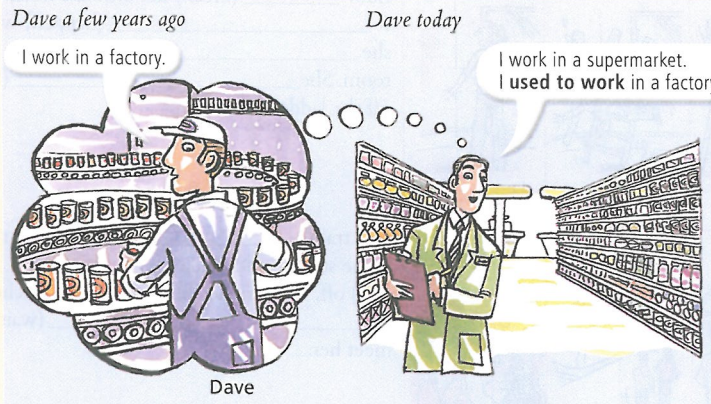
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 15

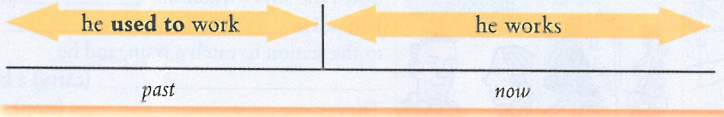
I used to . . .

A



Dave **used to work** in a factory. Now he **works** in a supermarket.

Dave **used to work** in a factory. = he worked in a factory before, but he doesn't work there now:



B

You can say **I used to work . . . / she used to have . . . / they used to be . . .**, etc.

I/you/we/they he/she/it	**used to**	**be** **work** **have** **play**, etc.

- When I was a child, I **used to like** chocolate.
- I **used to read** a lot of books, but I don't read much these days.
- Liz has short hair now, but it **used to be** very long.
- They **used to live** on the same street as us, so we **used to see** them a lot. But we don't see them very often these days.
- Helen **used to have** a piano, but she sold it a few years ago.



The negative is **I didn't use to . . .**

- When I was a child, I **didn't use to like** tomatoes.

The question is **did you use to . . . ?**

- Where **did** you **use to live** before you came here?

C

We use **used to . . .** only for the past. You cannot say "I use to . . ." for the present:

- I **used to play** tennis. These days I **play** golf. (*not* I use to play golf)
- We usually **get** up early. (*not* We use to get up early)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

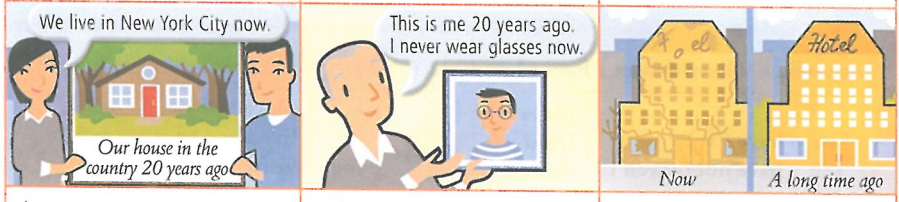
مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

15.1 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with ***used to*** . . . .



1. She used to have long hair.
2. He _____ baseball.
3. _____ a taxi driver.



4. _____ in the country.
5. _____
6. This building _____

15.2 Karen works very hard and has very little free time. A few years ago, things were different.

Do you play any sports? → Yes, I swim every day, and I play volleyball.
Do you go out much? → Yes, three or four nights a week.
Do you play a musical instrument? → Yes, the guitar.
Do you like to read? → Yes, I read a lot.
Do you travel much? → Yes, I take two or three trips a year.



Karen a few years ago



Karen now

Write sentences about Karen with ***used to*** . . . .

1. She used to swim every day.
2. She _____ volleyball.
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

15.3 Complete these sentences. Use ***used to*** or the simple present (***I play*** / ***he lives***, etc.).

1. I used to play tennis. I stopped playing a few years ago.
2. "Do you play any sports?" "Yes, I play basketball."
3. "Do you have a car?" "No, I _____ one, but I sold it."
4. George _____ a waiter. Now he's the manager of a hotel.
5. "Do you go to work by car?" "Sometimes, but most days I _____ by train."
6. When I was a child, I never _____ meat, but I eat it now.
7. Mary loves to watch TV. She _____ TV every night.
8. We _____ near the airport, but we moved downtown a few years ago.
9. Normally I start work at 7:00, so I _____ up very early.
10. What games _____ you _____ when you were a child?

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 16

Have you ever . . . ?

A



Have been / have driven / have played, etc. is the *present perfect* (**have** + *past participle*):

I we you they	**have ('ve)** **have not (haven't)**	**played** **lived** **visited** **read**
he she it	**has ('s)** **has not (hasn't)**	**lost** **been** **flown**

have	I we you they	**played?** **lived?** **visited?** **read?**
has	he she it	**lost?** **been?** **flown?**

regular verbs

irregular verbs

Regular verbs The past participle is **-ed** (the same as the simple past):

play → I have play**ed** live → I have liv**ed** visit → she has visit**ed**

Irregular verbs The past participle is not **-ed**.

Sometimes the past participle is the same as the simple past:

buy → I **bought** / I have **bought** have → he **had** / he has **had**

Sometimes the past participle is different (see Appendixes 2–3).

break → I **broke** / I have **broken** see → you **saw** / you have **seen**

B

We use the present perfect when we talk about a time from the past until now, for example, a person's life.

Have you ever been to Japan?

time from the past until now

past *now*

- "**Have** you **been** to France?" "No, I **haven't**."
- We**'ve been** to Canada, but we **haven't been** to Alaska.
- Mary is an interesting person. She **has had** many different jobs and **has lived** in many places.
- **I've seen** that woman before, but I can't remember where.
- How many times **has** Brazil **won** the World Cup?
- "**Have** you **read** this book?" "Yes, **I've read** it twice." (**twice** = two times)

C

Present perfect + **ever** (in questions) and **never**:

- "**Has** Ann **ever been** to Australia?" "Yes, once." (**once** = one time)
- "**Have** you **ever played** golf?" "Yes, I play a lot."
- My sister **has never traveled** by plane.
- **I've never ridden** a horse.
- "Who is that man?" "I don't know. I've never seen **him** before."

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

16.1 You are asking Helen questions beginning with ***Have you ever . . . ?*** Write the questions.



1. (Montreal?) *Have you ever been to Montreal?*
2. (play / golf?) *Have you ever played golf?*
3. (South Korea?) Have _____
4. (lose / your passport?) _____
5. (fly / in a helicopter?) _____
6. (win / a race?) _____
7. (Peru?) _____
8. (drive / a bus?) _____
9. (break / your leg?) _____

No, never.
Yes, many times.
Yes, once.
No, never.
Yes, a few times.
No, never.
Yes, twice.
No, never.
Yes, once.

16.2 Write sentences about Helen. (Look at her answers in Exercise 16.1.)

1. (Peru) *She's been to Peru twice.*
2. (South Korea) She _____
3. (win / a race) _____
4. (fly / in a helicopter) _____

Now write about yourself. How often have you done these things?

5. (New York) I _____
6. (play / tennis) _____
7. (drive / a truck) _____
8. (be / late for work or school) _____

16.3 Mary is 65 years old. She has had an interesting life. What has she done?



~~have~~	be	all over the world	a lot of interesting things
do	write	~~many different jobs~~	a lot of interesting people
travel	meet	10 books	married three times

1. *She has had many different jobs.*
2. She _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

16.4 Put the verbs in the present perfect.

1. *I've seen* (I / see) that woman before, but I can't remember her name.
2. "*Have you ever played*" (you / ever / play) golf?" "Yes, I play golf a lot."
3. "_____ (you / ever / write) a poem?" "Yes, in high school."
4. "Does Emma know Sam?" "No, _____ (she / never / meet) him."
5. Ann and Eli have lots of books, and _____ (they / read) all of them.
6. _____ (I / never / be) to Australia, but _____ (my brother / be) there twice.
7. Joy's favorite movie is *Howard and Belinda*. _____ (she / see) it five times, but _____ (I / never / see) it.
8. _____ (I / travel) by plane, bus, and train. Someday, I want to take a trip by boat.

→ Additional exercises 16, 18 (pages 250–251)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 17 How long have you . . . ?

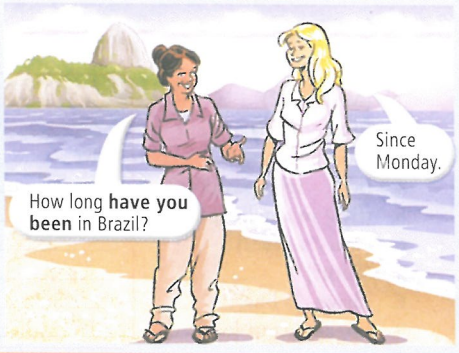
A

Jane is on vacation in Brazil.
She is there now.

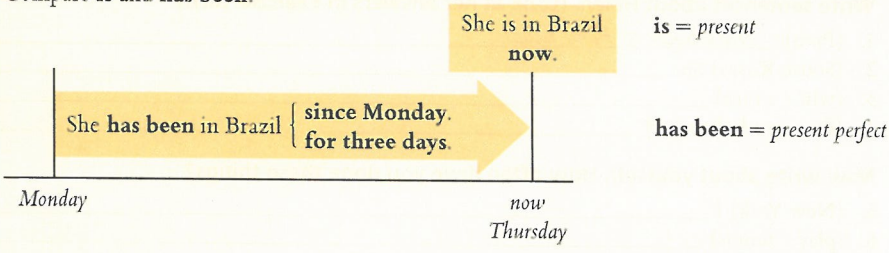
She arrived in Brazil on Monday.
Today is Thursday.

How long **has she been** in Brazil?

She **has been** in Brazil { **since Monday.** / **for three days.** }



Compare **is** and **has been**:



B

Compare:

Simple present	*Present perfect* (**have been / have lived / have known**, etc.)
Dan and Kate **are** married.	They **have been** married **for five years.** (*not* They are married for five years.)
Are you married?	**How long have** you **been** married? (*not* How long are you married?)
Do you **know** Lisa?	**How long have** you **known** her? (*not* How long do you know her?)
I **know** Lisa.	**I've known** her **for a long time.** (*not* I know her for . . .)
Vera **lives** in Brasília.	**How long has** she **lived** in Brasília? She **has lived** there **all her life.**
I **have** a car.	**How long have** you **had** your car? **I've had** it **since April.**

Present continuous	*Present perfect continuous* (**have been + -ing**)
I'm studying German.	**How long have** you **been studying** German? (*not* How long are you studying German?) **I've been studying** German **for two years.**
David **is watching** TV.	**How long has** he **been watching** TV? He**'s been** (= He **has been**) **watching** TV **since 5:00.**
It**'s raining.**	It**'s been** (= It **has been**) **raining all day.**

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

for and since → Units 48, 105

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

17.1 Complete these sentences.

1. Jane is in Brazil. She *has been* there since Monday.
2. I know Lisa. I *have known* her for a long time.
3. Sarah and Andy are married. They _____ married since 1999.
4. Brian is sick. He _____ sick for the last few days.
5. We live on Main Street. We _____ there for a long time.
6. Catherine works in a bank. She _____ in a bank for five years.
7. Alan has a headache. He _____ a headache since he got up this morning.
8. I'm studying English. I _____ English for six months.

17.2 Make questions with *How long . . . ?*

1.	Jane is on vacation.	*How long has she been on vacation* ?
2.	Scott and Judy are in Brazil.	How long _____ ?
3.	I know Amy.	How long _____ you _____ ?
4.	Diana is studying Italian.	_____ ?
5.	My brother lives in Seattle.	_____ ?
6.	I'm a teacher.	_____ ?
7.	It is raining.	?

17.3



Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with:

for 10 minutes	**all day**	**all her life**
~~**for 10 years**~~	**since he was 20**	**since Sunday**

1. *They have been married for 10 years.*
2. She _____
3. They _____
4. The sun _____
5. She _____
6. He _____

17.4 Which is right?

1. Mark ~~lives~~ / has lived in Canada since April. (*has lived* is right)
2. Jane and I are friends. I know / I've known her very well.
3. Jane and I are friends. I know / I've known her for a long time.
4. *A:* Sorry I'm late. How long are you waiting / have you been waiting?
   B: Not long. Only five minutes.
5. Martin works / has worked in a hotel now. He likes his job a lot.
6. Ruth is reading the newspaper. She is reading / She has been reading it for two hours.
7. "How long do you live / have you lived in this house?" "About 10 years."
8. "Is that a new coat?" "No, I have / I've had this coat for a long time."
9. Tom is / has been in Seattle right now. He is / He has been there for the last three days.

→ Additional exercises 16–18 (pages 250–251)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

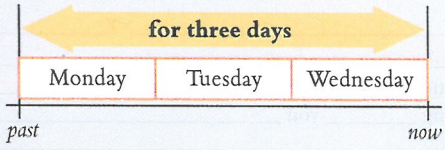
UNIT 18 for since ago

A For and since

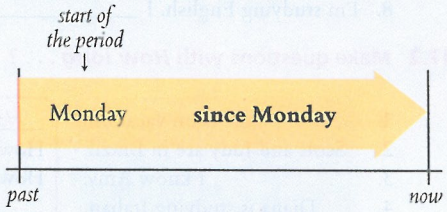
We use **for** and **since** to say *how long*:

- Jane **is** in Brazil. She **has been** there { **for three days.** / **since Monday.**

We use **for** + a period of time (**three days** / **two years**, etc.):



We use **since** + the start of the period (**Monday** / **9:00**, etc.):



for	
three days	10 minutes
an hour	two hours
a week	four weeks
a month	six months
five years	a long time

since	
Monday	Wednesday
9:00	12:30
July 4th	my birthday
January	I was 10 years old
1995	we arrived

- Richard has been in Canada **for six months**. (*not* since six months)
- We've been waiting **for two hours**. (*not* since two hours)
- I've lived in Chicago **for a long time**.

- Richard has been in Canada **since January**. (= from January to now)
- We've been waiting **since 9:00**. (= from 9:00 to now)
- I've lived in Chicago **since I was 10 years old**.

B Ago

ago = before now:

- Susan started her new job **three weeks ago**. (= three weeks before now)
- "When did Tom leave?" "**Ten minutes ago**." (= ten minutes before now)
- I had dinner **an hour ago**.
- Life was very different **a hundred years ago**.

We use **ago** with the *past* (**started**/**did**/**had**/**was**, etc.).

Compare **ago** and **for**:

- **When did** Jane **arrive** in Brazil?
  She **arrived** in Brazil **three days ago**.
- **How long has** she **been** in Brazil?
  She **has been** in Brazil **for three days**.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آزمایی بزرگترین آرشیو دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

18.1 Write *for* or *since*.

1. Jane has been in Brazil *since* Monday.
2. Jane has been in Brazil three days.
3. My aunt has lived in Australia _____ 15 years.
4. Jennifer is in her office. She has been there _____ 7:00.
5. Mexico has been an independent country _____ 1821.
6. The bus is late. We've been waiting _____ 20 minutes.
7. Nobody lives in those houses. They have been empty _____ many years.
8. Michael has been sick _____ a long time. He has been in the hospital _____ October.

18.2 Answer these questions. Use *ago*.

1. When was the last time you ate? *Three hours ago.*
2. When was the last time you were sick? _____
3. When was the last time you went to the movies? _____
4. When was the last time you were in a car? _____
5. When was the last time you went on vacation? _____

18.3 Complete the sentences. Use *for* or *ago* with these words.

1. Jane arrived in Brazil *three days ago.* (three days)
2. Jane has been in Brazil *for three days.* (three days)
3. Lynn and Mark have been married _____ (20 years)
4. Lynn and Mark got married _____ (20 years)
5. Dan arrived _____ (an hour)
6. I bought these shoes _____ (a few days)
7. Silvia has been studying English _____ (six months)
8. Have you known Lisa _____ ? (a long time)

18.4 Complete the sentences with *for* or *since*.

1. (Jane is in Brazil – she arrived there three days ago)
   Jane has been in Brazil for three days.
2. (Jack is here – he arrived on Tuesday)
   Jack has _____
3. (It's raining – it started an hour ago)
   It's been _____
4. (I know Sue – I met her in 2002)
   I've _____
5. (Claire and Matthew are married – they got married six months ago)
   Claire and Matthew have _____
6. (Liz is studying medicine at the university – she started three years ago)
   Liz has _____
7. (David plays the piano – he started when he was seven years old)
   David has _____

18.5 Write sentences about yourself. Begin your sentences with:

I've lived . . . I've been . . . I've been studying . . . I've known . . . I've had . . .

1. *I've lived in this town for three years.*
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

→ Additional exercises 16–18 (pages 250–251)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 19

I have done and I did (present perfect and simple past 1)

A



His car is dirty.



He is washing his car.



He **has washed** his car.
(= his car is clean *now*)



They are at home.



They are going out.



They **have gone** out.
(= they are not at home *now*)

B

We use the present perfect for *an action in the past* with a result *now*:

- **I've lost** my passport. (= I can't find my passport *now*)
- "Where's Rebecca?" "She**'s gone** to bed." (= she is in bed *now*)
- We**'ve bought** a new car. (= we have a new car *now*)
- It's Rachel's birthday tomorrow, and I **haven't bought** her a present.
  (= I don't have a present for her *now*)
- "Bob is away on vacation." "Oh, where **has** he **gone**?" (= where is he *now*?)
- **Have** you **met** my brother, or should I introduce you?
- I was a very slow typist in college, but I**'ve gotten** faster.

Usually you can also use the simple past (he **washed** / I **lost**, etc.) in these situations. So you can say:

- "Where's your key?" "I**'ve lost** it." *or* "I **lost** it."
- "Is Peter here?" "No, he**'s gone** home." *or* "He **went** home."
- We**'ve bought** a new car. *or* We **bought** a new car.

C

We use only the simple past (not the present perfect) with a *finished* time (**yesterday**, **last week**, etc.).

- I **lost** my key **yesterday**. (*not* I have lost)
- We **bought** a new car **last week**. (*not* we have bought)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

simple past → Units 11–12 present perfect → Units 16–18 present perfect and simple past → Units 20–21

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

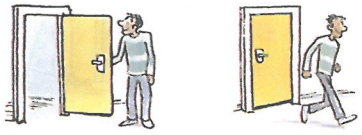
19.1 Look at the pictures. What has happened? Use the present perfect. Choose from:

go to bed ~~wash her car~~ stop raining close the door fall down take a shower

before → *now*

1. 

She has washed her car.

2. 

He _____.

3. 

They _____.

4. 

It _____.

5. 

He _____.

6. 

The _____.

19.2 Rewrite the sentences that have underlined verbs. Use the present perfect.

1. Lee Ming isn't here. He went home. *He has gone home.*
2. I don't need to call them. I wrote them a letter. _____
3. Karen's not coming to the party. She broke her arm. _____
4. My brother and his wife don't live here any more. They moved to Seattle. _____
5. I made a big mistake. _____
6. I lost my wallet. _____
   Did you see it anywhere? _____
7. Did you hear? _____
   Mark got married. _____

Now rewrite these present perfect sentences in the simple past.

8. I've done the shopping. *I did the shopping.*
9. Brian has taken my bike again without asking. _____
10. Have you told your friends the good news? _____
11. We haven't paid the electric bill. _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 20

just, already, and yet (present perfect and simple past 2)

A

Just = a short time ago

We use **just** with the *present perfect* or the *simple past*.

A: Are Diane and Paul here?
B: Yes, they**'ve just arrived**. *or*
Yes, **they just** arrived.
A: Are you hungry?
B: No, I**'ve just had** dinner. *or*
I **just had** dinner.
A: Is Tom here?
B: No, sorry, he**'s just left**. *or*
He **just left**.



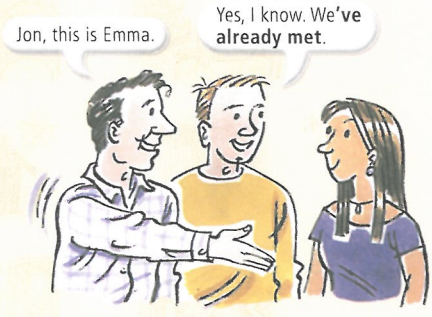
They **have just arrived**.

B

Already = before you expected / before I expected

We use **already** with the *present perfect* or the *simple past*.

A: What time are Diane and Paul coming?
B: They**'ve already arrived**. *or*
They **already arrived**.
It's only 9:00 and Anna **has already gone** to bed.
or . . . Anna **already went** to bed.
(= before I expected)
A: Jon, this is Emma.
B: Yes, I know. We**'ve already met**. *or*
We **already met**.



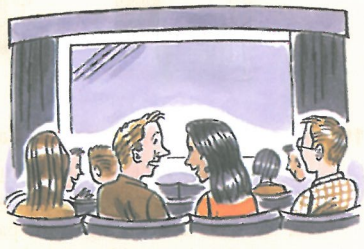
C

Yet = until now

We use **yet** with the *present perfect* or the *simple past*. We use **yet** in negative sentences and questions. **Yet** is usually at the end.

yet in *negative sentences*

- *A:* Are Diane and Paul here?
  B: No, they **haven't arrived yet**. *or*
  . . . they **didn't arrive yet**.
  (but B expects Diane and Paul to arrive soon)
- *A:* Does James know that you're going away?
  B: No, I **haven't told** him **yet**. *or*
  . . . I **didn't tell** him **yet**.
  (but B is going to tell him soon)
- Silvia has bought a new dress, but she **hasn't worn** it **yet**. *or* . . . she **didn't wear** it **yet**.



The film **hasn't started yet**.

yet in *questions*

- *A:* **Have** Diane and Paul **arrived yet**? *or*
  Did Diane and Paul **arrive yet**?
  B: No, not yet. We're still waiting for them.
- *A:* **Has** Nicole **started** her new job **yet**? *or*
  Did Nicole **start** her new job **yet**?
  B: No, she's starting next week.
- *A:* This is my new dress.
  B: Oh, it's nice. **Have** you **worn** it **yet**? *or*
  Did you **wear** it **yet**?



www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

20.1 Write a sentence with *just* for each picture.



1. They've just arrived
2. He _____
3. They _____
4. The race _____

20.2 Complete the sentences. Use *already* + present perfect.

1. What time is Paul arriving? — He's already arrived.
2. Do your friends want to see the movie? — No, they _____ it.
3. Don't forget to call Tom. — I _____
4. When is Martin going to work? — He _____
5. Do you want to read the newspaper? — I _____
6. When does Sarah start her new job? — She _____

20.3 Rewrite these sentences. Use the present perfect.

1. Did Sarah start her new job yet? Has Sarah started her new job yet?
2. Did you tell your father about the accident yet? _____
3. I just ate a big dinner, so I'm not hungry. _____
4. Jenny can watch TV because she already did her homework. _____
5. You can't go to bed – you didn't brush your teeth yet. _____
6. You can't talk to Pete because he just went home. _____
7. Nicole just got out of the hospital, so she can't go to work. _____

Now rewrite these sentences in the simple past.

8. Have you given the post office our new address yet?
   Did you give the post office our new address yet?
9. The mail carrier hasn't come yet. _____
10. I've just spoken to your sister. _____
11. Has Mario bought a new computer yet? _____
12. Ted and Alice haven't told anyone they're getting married yet.
    _____
13. We've already done our packing for our trip. _____
14. I've just swum a mile. I feel great! _____

20.4 Write questions with the present perfect and *yet*.

1. Your friend has a new job. Perhaps she has started it. You ask her:
   Have you started your new job yet?
2. Your friend has some new neighbors. Maybe he has met them. You ask him:
   _____ you _____ ?
3. Your friend has to pay her phone bill. Perhaps she has paid it. You ask her:
   _____ ?
4. Tom was trying to sell his car. Maybe he has sold it. You ask a friend about Tom.
   _____ ?

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 21

I've lost my key. I lost my key last week. (present perfect and simple past 3)

A

Sometimes you can use the *present perfect* (**I have lost** / he **has gone**, etc.) or the *simple past* (**I lost** / he **went**, etc.).

- "Is Peter here?" "No, he's **gone** home." *or* "No, he **went** home."

But with a finished time (**yesterday** / **last week**, etc.), we use only the simple past (not the present perfect).

simple past + *finished time*

We **arrived**	yesterday. last week. at 3:00. in 2002. six months ago.



Do *not* use the present perfect (**have arrived** / **have done** / **have been**, etc.) with a finished time:

- I **saw** Paula **yesterday**. (*not* I have seen)
- Where **were** you **on Sunday afternoon**? (*not* Where have you been)
- We **didn't take** a vacation **last year**. (*not* We haven't taken)
- "What **did** you **do last night**?" "I **stayed** at home."
- William Shakespeare **lived from 1564 to 1616**. He **was** a writer. He **wrote** many plays and poems.

Use the simple past to ask **When . . . ?** or **What time . . . ?**

- **When did** you **buy** your computer? (*not* When have you bought?)
- **What time did** Andy **go** out? (*not* What time has Andy gone out?)

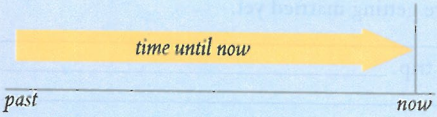
B

Compare:

Present perfect or *simple past*

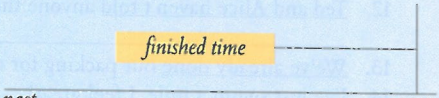
- I **have lost** my key. *or* I **lost** my key. (= I can't find it *now*)
- Ben **has gone** home. *or* Ben **went** home. (= he isn't here *now*)
- **Have** you **had** lunch? *or* **Did** you **have** lunch?
- The letter **hasn't arrived** yet. *or* The letter **didn't arrive** yet.

Present perfect only



- **Have** you **ever been** to Spain? (= in your life, until *now*)
- My friend is a writer. He **has written** many books.
- The letter **hasn't arrived** yet.
- **We've lived** in Boston for six years. (= we live there *now*)

Simple past only



- **Did** you **go** to Spain **last year**?
- William Shakespeare (1564-1616) **wrote** many plays and poems.
- The letter **didn't arrive** yesterday.
- We **lived** in Chicago for six years, but now we live in Boston.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

21.1 Complete the answers to the questions.

1.	Have you had lunch?	Yes, *I had it* an hour ago.
2.	Have you started your new job?	Yes, I _____ last week.
3.	Have your friends arrived?	Yes, they _____ on Friday.
4.	Has Sarah gone out?	Yes, _____ at 5:00.
5.	Have you worn your new suit?	Yes, _____ yesterday.

21.2 Are these sentences OK? Correct the verbs that are wrong. (The verbs are underlined.)

1. I've lost my key. I can't find it. — *OK*
2. Have you seen Kate yesterday? — *Did you see*
3. I've finished my work at 2:00. — _____
4. I'm ready now. I've finished my work. — _____
5. What time have you finished your work? — _____
6. Sue isn't here. She's gone out. — _____
7. Steve's grandmother has died two years ago. — _____
8. Where have you been last night? — _____

21.3 Put the verb in the present perfect or past.

1. My friend is a writer. He *has written* (write) many books.
2. We *didn't take* (not / take) a vacation last year.
3. I _____ (play) tennis yesterday afternoon.
4. What time _____ (you / go) to bed last night?
5. _____ (you / ever / meet) a famous person?
6. The weather _____ (not / be) very good yesterday.
7. Kathy travels a lot. She _____ (visit) many countries.
8. I _____ (turn) off the light before leaving this morning.
9. I live in New York now, but I _____ (live) in Mexico for many years.
10. "What's Peru like? Is it beautiful?" "I don't know. I _____ (not / be) there."

21.4 Put the verb in the present perfect or past.

1. *A:* *Have you ever been* (you / ever / be) to Florida?
   B: Yes, we *went* (go) there on vacation two years ago.
   A: _____ (you / have) a good time?
   B: Yes, it _____ (be) great.

2. *A:* What does your friend do?
   B: She's a painter. She _____ (win) many prizes for her paintings.
   A: _____ (you / see) any of her paintings?
   B: Yes, I _____ (see) some of her work last week.

3. Rose works in a factory, but she _____ (have) a lot of different jobs. Five years ago she _____ (be) a waitress in a restaurant. After that, she _____ (work) on a ranch, but she _____ (not / enjoy) it very much.

4. *A:* Do you know Martin's sister?
   B: I _____ (see) her a few times, but I _____ (never / speak) to her. _____ (you / ever / speak) to her?
   A: Yes. I _____ (meet) her at a party last week. She's very nice.

→ Additional exercises 19–23, 29–31 (pages A52–A54, A57–A59)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 22

is done was done (passive 1)

A



The office is **cleaned** every day.

The office was **cleaned** yesterday.

Compare active and passive:

Somebody **cleans** the office every day. *(active)*

The office **is cleaned** every day. *(passive)*

Somebody **cleaned** the office yesterday. *(active)*

The office **was cleaned** yesterday. *(passive)*

B

The passive is:

				past participle	
simple present	**am/is/are**	(not)	+	**cleaned**	**done**
simple past	**was/were**			**invented**	**built**
				injured	**taken**, etc.

The past participle of regular verbs is **-ed** (clean**ed**/damag**ed**, etc.).

For a list of irregular past participles (**done/built/taken**, etc.), see Appendixes 2–3.

- Butter **is made** from milk.
- Oranges **are imported** into Canada.
- How often **are** these rooms **cleaned**?
- I **am** never **invited** to parties.

- This house **was built** 100 years ago.
- These houses **were built** 100 years ago.
- When **was** the telephone **invented**?
- We **weren't invited** to the party last week.
- "**Was** anybody **injured** in the accident?"
  "Yes, two people **were taken** to the hospital."

C

Was/were born

- I **was born** in Colombia in 1989. (*not* I am born)
- "Where **were** you **born**?" "In Cairo."

D

Passive + **by**

- The telephone was invented **by Alexander Graham Bell** in 1876.
  (= Alexander Graham Bell invented it)
- I was bitten **by a dog** a few days ago.
- Do you like these paintings? They were painted **by a friend of mine**.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

is being done / has been done → Unit 23 | irregular verbs → Unit 25 | Appendixes 2–3 | by → Unit 112
active and passive → Unit 24

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

22.1 Write sentences from these words. Some of the sentences are questions. Sentences 1–7 are present.

1. (the office / clean / every day) *The office is cleaned every day.*
2. (these rooms / clean / every day?) *Are these rooms cleaned every day?*
3. (glass / make / from sand) Glass _____
4. (stamps / sell / in a post office) _____
5. (this word / not / use / very often) _____
6. (we / allow / to park here?) _____
7. (how / this word / pronounce?) _____

Sentences 8–15 are past.

8. (the office / clean / yesterday) *The office was cleaned yesterday.*
9. (the house / paint / last month) The house _____
10. (my phone / steal / a few days ago) _____
11. (three people / injure / in the accident) _____
12. (when / this bridge / build?) _____
13. (I / not / wake up / by the noise) _____
14. (how / these windows / break?) _____
15. (you / invite / to Jon's party last week?) _____

22.2 These sentences are not correct. Correct them.

1. This house built 100 years ago. *This house was built 100 years ago.*
2. Soccer plays in most countries of the world. _____
3. Why did the letter send to the wrong address? _____
4. A garage is a place where cars repair. _____
5. Where are you born? _____
6. How many languages are speaking in Switzerland? _____
7. Somebody broke into our house, but nothing stolen. _____
8. When was invented the bicycle? _____

22.3 Complete the sentences. Use the passive (present or past) of these verbs:

~~clean~~ damage find give invite make make show steal ~~take~~

1. The room *is cleaned* every day.
2. I saw an accident yesterday. Two people *were taken* to the hospital.
3. Paper _____ from wood.
4. There was a fire at the hotel last week. Two of the rooms _____ .
5. "Where did you get this picture?" "It _____ to me by a friend of mine."
6. Many British programs _____ on American television.
7. "Did Jim and Sue go to the wedding?" "No. They _____ , but they didn't go."
8. "How old is this movie?" "It _____ in 1965."
9. My car _____ last week, but the next day it _____ by the police.

22.4 Where were they born?

1. (Makoto / Tokyo) *Makoto was born in Tokyo.*
2. (Isabel / São Paulo) Isabel _____
3. (her parents / Rio de Janeiro) Her _____
4. (you / ???) I _____
5. (your mother / ???) _____

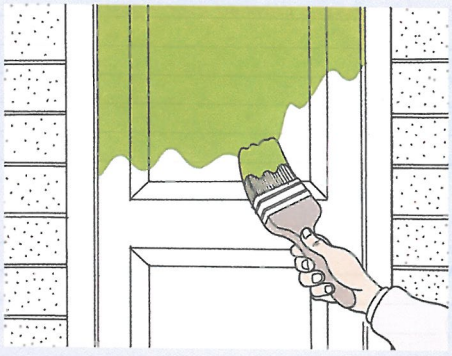
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 23

is being done has been done (passive 2)

A Is/are being . . . *(present continuous passive)*



Somebody **is painting** the door . *(active)*

The door **is being painted**. *(passive)*

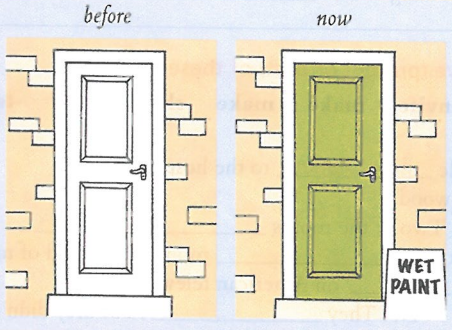
- My car is at the garage. It **is being repaired**. (= somebody is repairing it)
- Some new houses **are being built** across from the park. (= somebody is building them)

Compare the present continuous and simple present:

- The office **is being cleaned** right now. *(present continuous)*
  The office **is cleaned** every day. *(simple present)*
- In the United States, football games **are** usually **played** on weekends, but no big games **are being played** next weekend.

For the present continuous and simple present, see Units 8 and 26.

B Has/have been . . . *(present perfect passive)*



Somebody **has painted** the door . *(active)*

The door **has been painted**. *(passive)*

- My key **has been stolen**. (= somebody has stolen it)
- My keys **have been stolen**. (= somebody has stolen them)
- I'm not going to the party. I **haven't been invited**. (= nobody has invited me)
- **Has** this shirt **been washed**? (= has somebody washed it?)

Compare the present perfect and simple past:

- The room isn't dirty any more. It **has been cleaned**. *(present perfect)*
  The room **was cleaned** yesterday. *(simple past)*
- I can't find my keys. I think they**'ve been stolen**. *(present perfect)*
  My keys **were stolen** last week. *(simple past)*

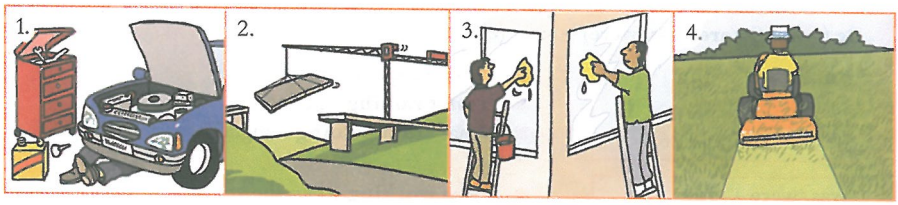
For the present perfect and simple past, see Units 19–21.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

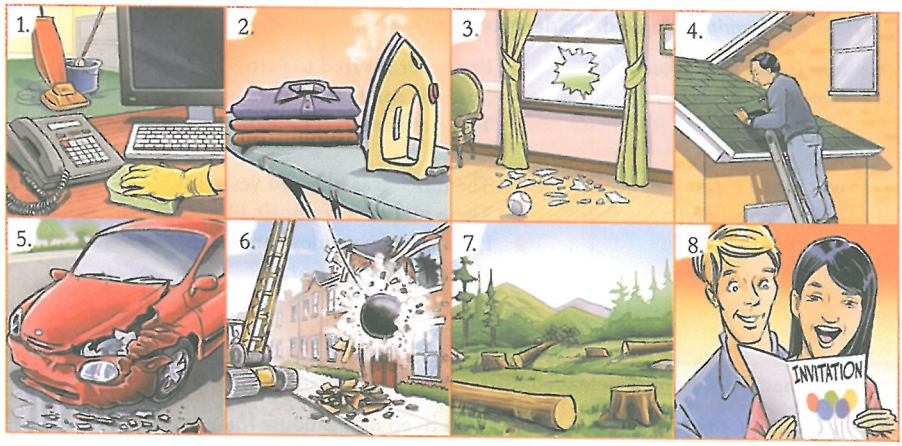
Exercises

23.1 What's happening?



1. The car *is being repaired.*
2. A bridge _____
3. The windows _____
4. The grass _____

23.2 Look at the pictures. What is happening or what has happened? Use the present continuous (*is/are being* . . .) or the present perfect (*has/have been* . . .).



1. (the office / clean) *The office is being cleaned*
2. (the shirts / iron) *The shirts have been ironed*
3. (the window / break) The window _____
4. (the roof / repair) The roof _____
5. (the car / damage) _____
6. (the houses / tear / down) _____
7. (the trees / cut / down) _____
8. (they / invite / to a party) _____

23.3 Complete the sentences. (Study Unit 22 before you do this exercise.)

1. I can't use my office right now. *It is being painted* (paint).
2. We didn't go to the party. We *weren't invited* (not / invite).
3. The washing machine was broken, but it's OK now. It _____ (repair).
4. The washing machine _____ (repair) yesterday afternoon.
5. A factory is a place where things _____ (make).
6. How old are these houses? When _____ (they / build)?
7. *A:* _____ (the computer / use) at the moment?
   B: Yes, Steve is using it.
8. I've never seen these flowers before. What _____ (they / call)?
9. My sunglasses _____ (steal) at the beach yesterday.
10. The bridge is closed. It _____ (damage) last week, and it _____ (not / repair) yet.

→ Additional exercises 24–27 (pages 255–256)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 24 be/have/do in present and past tenses

A Be (= am/is/are/was/were) + -ing (cleaning/working, etc.)

am/is/are + -ing
(present continuous)
→ Units 3–4 and 26

- Please be quiet. **I'm working.**
- It **isn't raining** right now.
- What **are** you **doing** tonight?

was/were + -ing
(past continuous)
→ Unit 13

- I **was working** when she arrived.
- It **wasn't raining**, so we didn't need an umbrella.
- What **were** you **doing** at 3:00?

B Be + *past participle* (cleaned/made/eaten, etc.)

am/is/are + *past participle*
(simple present passive)
→ Unit 22

- **I'm** never **invited** to parties.
- Butter **is made** from milk.
- These offices **aren't cleaned** every day.

was/were + *past participle*
(simple past passive)
→ Unit 22

- The office **was cleaned** yesterday.
- These houses **were built** 100 years ago.
- How **was** the window **broken**?
- Where **were** you **born**?

C Have/has + *past participle* (cleaned/lost/eaten/been, etc.)

have/has + *past participle*
(present perfect)
→ Units 16–17, 19–21

- **I've lived** in this house for 10 years.
- Tom **has never ridden** a horse.
- Kate **hasn't been** to South America.
- Where **have** Paul and Nicole **gone**?

D Do/does/did + *base form* (clean/like/eat/go, etc.)

do/does + *base form*
(simple present negative and questions)
→ Units 6–7

- I like coffee, but I **don't like** tea.
- Chris **doesn't go** out very often.
- What **do** you usually **do** on weekends?
- **Does** Silvia **live** alone?

did + *base form*
(simple past negative and questions)
→ Unit 12

- I **didn't watch** TV yesterday.
- It **didn't rain** last week.
- What time **did** Paul and Nicole **go** out?

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

24.1 Write *is/are* or *do/does*.

1. *Do* you work at night?
2. Where *are* they going?
3. Why _____ you looking at me?
4. _____ Bill live near you?
5. _____ you like to cook?
6. _____ the sun shining?
7. What time _____ the stores close?
8. _____ Maria working today?
9. What _____ this word mean?
10. _____ you feeling all right?

24.2 Write *am not/isn't/aren't* or *don't/doesn't*. All these sentences are negative.

1. Tom *doesn't* work at night.
2. I'm very tired. I _____ want to go out tonight.
3. I'm very tired. I _____ going out tonight.
4. Gary _____ working this week. He's on vacation.
5. My parents are usually at home. They _____ go out very often.
6. Nicole has traveled a lot, but she _____ speak any foreign languages.
7. You can turn off the television. I _____ watching it.
8. Liz has invited us to her party next week, but we _____ going.

24.3 Write *was/were/did/have/has*.

1. Where *were* your shoes made?
2. _____ you go out last night?
3. What _____ you doing at 10:30?
4. Where _____ your mother born?
5. _____ Barbara gone home?
6. What time _____ she go?
7. When _____ these houses built?
8. _____ Steve arrived yet?
9. Why _____ you go home early?
10. How long _____ they been married?

24.4 Write *is/are/was/were/have/has*.

1. Joe *has* lost his passport.
2. This bridge _____ built 10 years ago.
3. _____ you finished your work yet?
4. This town is always clean. The streets _____ cleaned every day.
5. Where _____ you born?
6. I _____ just made some coffee. Would you like some?
7. Glass _____ made from sand.
8. This is a very old photograph. It _____ taken a long time ago.
9. David _____ bought a new car.

24.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb into the correct form.

damage	~~**rain**~~	**enjoy**	~~**go**~~	**pronounce**	**eat**
listen	**use**	**open**	**go**	**understand**	

1. I'm going to take an umbrella with me. It's *raining*.
2. Why are you so tired? Did you *go* to bed late last night?
3. Where are the chocolates? Have you _____ all of them?
4. How is your new job? Are you _____ it?
5. My car was badly _____ in the accident, but I was OK.
6. Chris has a car, but she doesn't _____ it very often.
7. Mary isn't at home. She has _____ away for a few days.
8. I don't _____ the problem. Can you explain it again?
9. Martin is in his room. He's _____ to music.
10. I don't know how to say this word. How is it _____ ?
11. How do you _____ this window? Can you show me?

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 25

Regular and irregular verbs

A Regular verbs

The *simple past* and *past participle* of regular verbs is **-ed**:
clean → clean**ed** live → liv**ed** paint → paint**ed** study → studi**ed**

Simple past (→ Unit 11)

- I **cleaned** my room yesterday.
- Charlie **studied** engineering in college.

Past participle

have/has + *past participle* (present perfect → Units 16–17, 19–21):

- I **have cleaned** my room.
- Tina **has lived** in Miami for 10 years.

be (**is/are/were/has been**, etc.) + *past participle* (passive → Units 22–23):

- These rooms **are cleaned** every day.
- My car **has been repaired**.

B Irregular verbs

The simple past and past participle of irregular verbs do *not* end in **-ed**:

	make	break	cut
simple past	**made**	**broke**	**cut**
past participle	**made**	**broken**	**cut**

Sometimes the simple past and past participle are the same. For example:

	make	find	buy	cut
simple past / *past participle*	**made**	**found**	**bought**	**cut**

- I **made** a cake yesterday. *(simple past)*
- I **have made** some coffee. *(past participle – present perfect)*
- Butter **is made** from milk. *(past participle – present passive)*

Sometimes the simple past and past participle are different. For example:

	break	know	begin	go
simple past	**broke**	**knew**	**began**	**went**
past participle	**broken**	**known**	**begun**	**gone**

- Somebody **broke** this window last night. *(simple past)*
- Somebody **has broken** this window. *(past participle – present perfect)*
- This window **was broken** last night. *(past participle – past passive)*

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

25.1 Write the simple past / past participle of these verbs. (The simple past and past participle are the same for all the verbs in this exercise.)

1. make	made	6. enjoy		11. hear	
2. cut	cut	7. buy		12. put	
3. say		8. sit		13. catch	
4. bring		9. leave		14. watch	
5. pay		10. happen		15. understand	

25.2 Write the simple past and past participle of these verbs.

1. break	broke	broken	8. come		
2. begin			9. know		
3. eat			10. take		
4. drink			11. go		
5. drive			12. give		
6. speak			13. throw		
7. write			14. get		

25.3 Put the verb in the right form.

1. I *washed* my hands because they were dirty. (wash)
2. Somebody has *broken* this window. (break)
3. I feel good. I _____ very well last night. (sleep)
4. We _____ a really good movie yesterday. (see)
5. It _____ a lot while we were on vacation. (rain)
6. I've _____ my bag. (lose) Have you _____ it? (see)
7. Rosa's bicycle was _____ last week. (steal)
8. I _____ to bed early because I was tired. (go)
9. Have you _____ your work yet? (finish)
10. The shopping mall was _____ about 20 years ago. (build)
11. Anna _____ to drive when she was 16. (learn)
12. I've never _____ a horse. (ride)
13. Julia is a good friend of mine. I've _____ her for a long time. (know)
14. Yesterday I _____ and _____ my leg. (fall / hurt)
15. My brother _____ in the Boston Marathon last year. Have you ever _____ in a marathon? (run / run)

25.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb into the correct form.

cost	**drive**	**fly**	~~**make**~~	**meet**	**sell**
speak	**swim**	**tell**	**think**	**wake up**	**win**

1. I have *made* some coffee. Would you like some?
2. Have you _____ John about your new job?
3. We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well, but we _____ the game.
4. I know Gary, but I've never _____ his wife.
5. We were _____ by loud music in the middle of the night.
6. Stephanie jumped into the river and _____ to the other side.
7. "Did you like the movie?" "Yes, I _____ it was very good."
8. Many different languages are _____ in the Philippines.
9. Our vacation _____ a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel.
10. Have you ever _____ a very fast car?
11. All the tickets for the concert were _____ very quickly.
12. A bird _____ in through the open window while we were having our dinner.

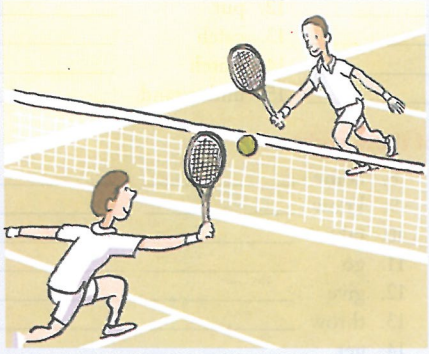
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

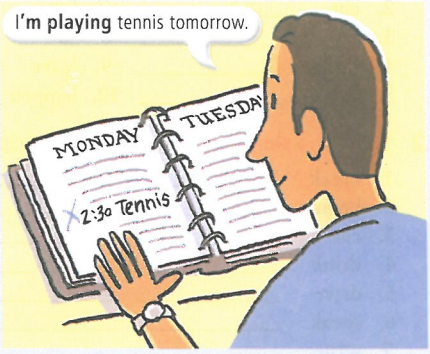
UNIT 26 What are you doing tomorrow?

A

today is Sunday



They **are playing** tennis (**now**).



He **is playing** tennis **tomorrow**.

We use **am/is/are + -ing** *(present continuous)* for something happening now:

- "Where are Sue and Amanda?" "They**'re playing** tennis in the park."
- Please be quiet. I**'m working**.

We also use **am/is/are + -ing** for the *future* (tomorrow / next week, etc.):

- Andrew **is playing** tennis tomorrow.
- I**'m** not **working** next week.

B

I am doing something tomorrow = I have arranged to do it, I have a plan to do it:

- Sophie **is going** to the dentist on Friday.
  (= she has an appointment with the dentist)
- We**'re having** a party next weekend.
- **Are** you **meeting** your friends tonight?
- What **are** you **doing** tomorrow night?
- I**'m** not **going** out tonight. I**'m staying** at home.

You can also say, "I**'m going** to do something." (→ Unit 27).



C

Be careful! Do not use the *simple present* (**I stay** / **do you go**, etc.) to say what somebody has arranged to do:

- I**'m staying** at home this evening. (*not* I stay)
- **Are** you **going** out tonight? (*not* Do you go)
- Lisa **isn't coming** to the party next week. (*not* Lisa doesn't come)

But we use the simple present for schedules (buses, movies, classes, etc.):

- The plane **arrives** in New York at 7:30 tomorrow morning.
- What time **does** the movie **end** tonight?

Compare:

Present continuous (usually for people)	*Simple present* (for schedules)
■ I**'m going** to a concert tomorrow.	■ The concert **starts** at 7:30.
■ What time **are** you **leaving**?	■ What time **does** your plane **leave**?

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

present continuous → Units 3–4, simple present → Units 5–7, I'm going to . . . → Unit 27

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

26.1 Look at the pictures. What are these people doing next Friday?



1. *Andrew is playing tennis on Friday.*
2. Richard _____ to the movies.
3. Rachel _____
4. _____ lunch with Ken.
5. _____

26.2 Write questions. All the sentences are future.

1. (you / go / out / tonight?) *Are you going out tonight?*
2. (you / work / next week?) _____
3. (what / you / do / tomorrow night?) _____
4. (what time / your friends / come?) _____
5. (when / Liz / go / on vacation?) _____

26.3 Write sentences about yourself. What are you doing in the next few days?

1. *I'm staying at home tonight.*
2. *I'm going to the theater on Monday.*
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

26.4 Put the verb in the present continuous (***he is leaving***, etc.) or simple present (***the train leaves***, etc.).

1. "*Are you going*_ (you / go) out tonight?" "No, I'm too tired."
2. *We're going* (we / go) to a concert tonight. *It starts* (it / start) at 7:30.
3. Listen to this! _____ (Karen / get) married next month!
4. *A:* My parents _____ (go) on vacation next week.
   B: Oh, that's nice. Where _____ (they / go)?
5. Silvia is taking an English course this semester. The course _____ (end) on Friday.
6. There's a party tomorrow night, but _____ (I / not / go).
7. _____ (I / go) out with some friends tonight. Why don't you come, too? _____ (we / meet) at John's house at 8:00.
8. *A:* How _____ (you / get) home after the party tomorrow? By taxi?
   B: No, I can go by bus. The last bus _____ (leave) at midnight.
9. *A:* Do you want to go to the movies tonight?
   B: Yes, what time _____ (the movie / begin)?
10. *A:* What _____ (you / do) tomorrow afternoon?
    B: _____ (I / work).

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 27

I'm going to . . .

A I'm going to do something



She **is going to watch** TV tonight.

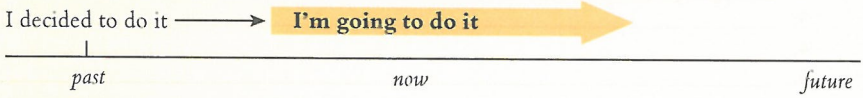
We use **am/is/are going to . . .** for the *future*:

I **am**		do . . .
he/she/it **is**	(not) **going to**	drink . . .
we/you/they **are**		watch . . .

am I		buy . . . ?
is he/she/it	**going to**	eat . . . ?
are we/you/they		wear . . . ?

B

I am going to do something = I have decided to do it, my intention is to do it:



- **I'm going to buy** some books tomorrow.
- Sarah **is going to sell** her car.
- **I'm not going to have** breakfast this morning. I'm not hungry.
- What **are** you **going to wear** to the wedding next week?
- "Your hands are dirty." "Yes, I know. **I'm going to wash** them."
- **Are** you **going to invite** Martin to your party?

We also use the present continuous (**I am doing**) for the future, usually for arrangements (→ Unit 26):

- I **am playing** tennis with Julia tomorrow.

C Something is going to happen

Something **is going to happen** = we can see *now* that it is sure to happen:

- Look at the sky! **It's going to rain.**
  (black clouds *now* → rain)
- Oh, no! It's 9:00 and I'm not ready.
  I'm going to be late.
  (9:00 *now* and not ready → late)



www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

27.1 What are these people saying?

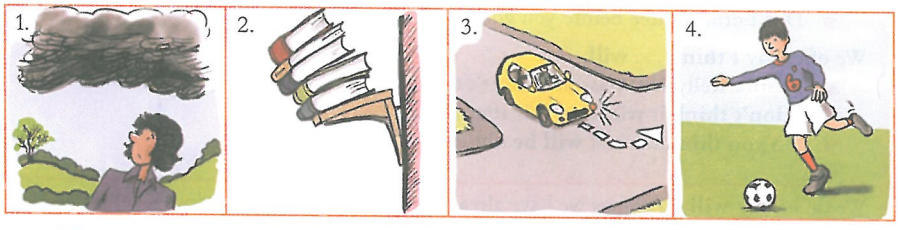


27.2 Complete the sentences. Use *going to* + these verbs:

do eat give lie down stay walk ~~wash~~ watch ~~wear~~

1. My hands are dirty. *I'm going to wash* them.
2. What *are you going to wear* to the party tonight?
3. It's a nice day. I don't want to take the bus. I _____.
4. Steve is going to San Diego next week. He _____ with some friends.
5. I'm hungry. I _____ this sandwich.
6. It's Sharon's birthday next week. We _____ her a present.
7. Sue says she's feeling very tired. She _____ for an hour.
8. The president's speech is on television tonight. _____ you _____ it?
9. What _____ Rachel _____ when she finishes school?

27.3 Look at the pictures. What is going to happen?



1. *It's going to rain.*
2. The shelf _____
3. The car _____
4. He _____

27.4 What are you going to do today or tomorrow? Write three sentences.

1. I'm _____
2. _____
3. _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 28

will 1

A



Sarah

Sarah goes to work every day. She is always there from 8:30 until 4:30.

It is 11:00 now. Sarah **is** at work.

At 11:00 yesterday, she **was** at work.

At 11:00 tomorrow, she **will be** at work.

will + *base form* (**will be** / **will win** / **will come**, etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**will** ('ll) **will not** (**won't**)	**be** **win** **eat** **come**, etc.

will	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**be**? **win**? **eat**? **come**?, etc.

'll = **will**: I**'ll** (I will) / you**'ll** / she**'ll**, etc.

won't = **will not**: I **won't** (= I will not) / you **won't** / she **won't**, etc.

B

We use **will** for the *future* (tomorrow / next week, etc.):

- Sue travels a lot. Today she is in Los Angeles. Tomorrow she**'ll be** in Mexico City. Next week she**'ll be** in New York.
- You can call me tonight. I**'ll be** at home.
- Leave the old bread in the yard. The birds **will eat** it.
- We**'ll** probably **go** out tonight.
- **Will** you **be** at home tonight?
- I **won't be** here tomorrow. (= I will not be here)
- Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You **won't sleep**.

We often say **I think** . . . **will** . . . :

- **I think** Kelly **will pass** her driver's test.
- **I don't think** it **will rain** this afternoon.
- **Do you think** the test **will be** difficult?

C

We do *not* use **will** for things we have already arranged or decided to do (→ Units 26–27):

- We**'re going** to the movies on Saturday. Do you want to come with us? (*not* We will go)
- I**'m** not **working** tomorrow. (*not* I won't work)
- **Are** you **going to take** your driver's test tomorrow? (*not* Will you take)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

28.1 Helen is traveling in South America. Complete the sentences with ***she was, she's,*** or ***she'll be.***

1. Yesterday *she was* in Rio de Janeiro.
2. Tomorrow _____ in Bogotá.
3. Last week _____ in Santiago.
4. Next week _____ in Caracas.
5. Right now _____ in Lima.
6. Three days ago _____ in Buenos Aires.
7. At the end of her trip _____ very tired.



Helen

28.2 Where will you be? Write sentences about yourself. Use: ***I'll be . . .*** or ***I'll probably be . . .*** or ***I don't know where I'll be.***

1. (at 10:00 tomorrow) *I'll be at work.* ***or*** *I'll probably be at the beach.*
2. (one hour from now) _____
3. (at midnight tonight) _____
4. (at 3:00 tomorrow afternoon) _____
5. (two years from now) _____

28.3 Put in ***will ('ll)*** or ***won't.***

1. Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You *won't* sleep.
2. "Are you ready yet?" "Not yet. I _____ be ready in five minutes."
3. I'm going away for a few days. I'm leaving tonight, so I _____ be at home tomorrow.
4. It _____ rain, so you don't need to take an umbrella.
5. *A:* I don't feel very well tonight.
   B: Well, go to bed early and you _____ feel better in the morning.
6. It's Bill's birthday next Monday. He _____ be 25.
7. I'm sorry I was late this morning. It _____ happen again.

28.4 Write sentences with ***I think . . .*** or ***I don't think . . . .***

1. (Kelly will pass the driver's test) *I think Kelly will pass the driver's test.*
2. (Kelly won't pass the driver's test) *I don't think Kelly will pass the driver's test.*
3. (we'll win the game) I _____
4. (I won't be here tomorrow) _____
5. (Sue will like her present) _____
6. (they won't get married) _____
7. (you won't like the movie) _____

28.5 Which is right? (Study Unit 26 before you do this exercise.)

1. ~~We'll go~~ / We're going to the theater tonight. We've got tickets. (*We're going* is right)
2. "What will you do / are you doing tomorrow night?" "Nothing. I'm free."
3. They'll leave / They're leaving tomorrow morning. Their train is at 8:40.
4. I'm sure your aunt will lend / is lending us some money. She's very rich.
5. "Why are you putting on your coat?" "I'll go / I'm going out."
6. Do you think Claire will call / is calling us tonight?
7. Steve can't meet us on Saturday. He'll work / He's working.
8. Let's fly to Miami instead of driving. It won't take / isn't taking as long.
9. *A:* What are your plans for the weekend?
   B: Some friends will come / are coming to stay with us.

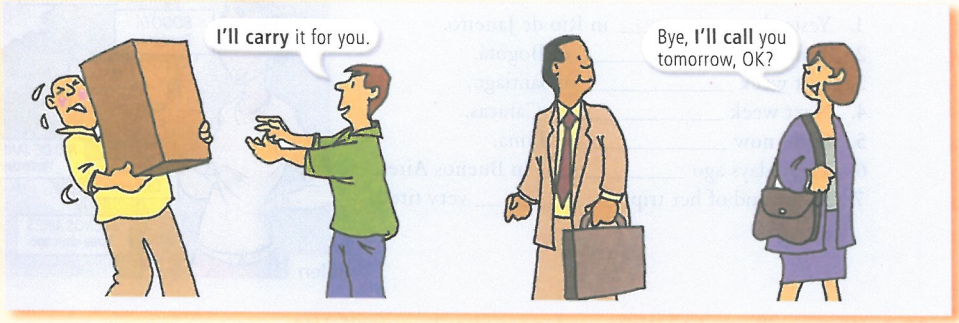
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 29

will 2

A



You can use **I'll . . .** (**I will**) when you offer something or decide to do something:

"My suitcase is very heavy." "**I'll carry** it for you."
"**I'll call** you tomorrow, OK?" "OK, bye."

We often say **I think I'll . . .** / **I don't think I'll . . .** when we decide to do something:

I'm tired. **I think I'll go** to bed early tonight.
It's a nice day. **I think I'll sit** outside.
It's raining. **I don't think I'll go** out.

Do not use the simple present (**I go** / **I call**, etc.) in sentences like these:

I'll call you tomorrow, OK? (*not* I call you)
I think I'**ll go** to bed early. (*not* I go to bed)

B

Do not use **I'll . . .** for something you decided before (→ Units 26–27):

I'm working tomorrow. (*not* I'll work)
There's a good program on TV tonight. **I'm going to watch** it. (*not* I'll watch)
What **are** you **doing** this weekend? (*not* What will you do)

C

Shall I . . . ? Shall we . . . ?



Shall I / **Shall we . . . ?** = Do you think this is a good thing to do? Do you think this is a good idea?

It's very warm in this room. **Shall I open** the window?
"**Shall I call** you tonight?" "OK."
It's a nice day. **Shall we go** for a walk?
What **shall we have** for dinner?

We use **should** in the same way.

"**Should I call** you tonight?" "OK."
It's a nice day. **Should we go** for a walk?
What **should we have** for dinner?

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

What are you doing tomorrow? → Unit 26 , I'm going to . . . → Unit 27 , will 1 → Unit 28 , should → Unit 33

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

29.1 Complete the sentences. Use *I'll (I will)* + these verbs:

~~carry~~ do eat send show sit stay

1.	My suitcase is very heavy.	*I'll carry* it for you.
2.	Enjoy your vacation.	Thank you. _____ you a postcard.
3.	I don't want this banana.	Well, I'm hungry. _____ it.
4.	Do you want a chair?	No, it's OK. _____ on the floor.
5.	Did you call Jenny?	Oh no, I forgot. _____ it now.
6.	Are you coming with me?	No, I don't think so. _____ here.
7.	How do you use this camera?	Give it to me and _____ you.

29.2 Complete the sentences. Use *I think I'll . . .* or *I don't think I'll . . .* + these verbs:

buy buy ~~go~~ have play

1. It's cold today. *I don't think I'll go* out.
2. I'm hungry. I _____ something to eat.
3. I feel very tired. _____ tennis.
4. I like this hat. _____ it.
5. This camera is too expensive. _____ it.

29.3 Which is right?

1. ~~I call~~ / I'll call you tomorrow, OK? (*I'll call* is right)
2. I haven't done the shopping yet. I do / I'll do it later.
3. I like sports. I watch / I'll watch a lot of sports on TV.
4. I need some exercise. I think I go / I'll go for a walk.
5. Gerry is going to buy / will buy a new car. He told me last week.
6. "This letter is for Rose." "OK. I give / I'll give / I'm going to give it to her."
7. *A:* Are you doing / Will you do anything this evening?
   B: Yes, I'm going / I'll go out with some friends.
8. I can't go out with you tomorrow night. I work / I'm working / I'll work.
9. I like this hat. I think I buy / I'll buy it.

29.4 What does Anne say to Kathy? Find the right answers.



Kathy



Anne

1.	It's very warm in this room.	*d*	a)	If you want. Where should we go?
2.	This TV program isn't very good.	_____	b)	Yes, who shall we invite?
3.	Should we have a party?	_____	c)	No, shall I go and get some?
4.	It's dark in this room.	_____	d)	Shall I open the window?
5.	Should I go to the store?	_____	e)	Should I turn on the light?
6.	Shall we go out?	_____	f)	OK, how many shall we buy?
7.	Shall I wait here?	_____	g)	Should I turn it off?
8.	Do we have any bread?	_____	h)	No, come with me.
9.	Should we get some lottery tickets?	_____	i)	No, it's OK. I'll go.

→ Additional exercises 28–31 (pages 256–258)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 30

might

A



He **might go** to Costa Rica.
(= it is possible that he will go to Costa Rica)



It **might rain**.
(= it is possible that it will rain)

might + *base form* (**might go** / **might be** / **might rain**, etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**might** (not)	**be** **go** **play** **come**, etc.

B

I might = it is possible that I will:

- I **might go** to the movies tonight, but I'm not sure. (= it is possible that I will go)
- *A:* When is Rebecca going to call you?
  B: I don't know. She **might call** this afternoon.
- Take an umbrella with you. It **might rain**.
- Buy a lottery ticket. You **might be** lucky. (= perhaps you will be lucky)
- "Are you going out tonight?" "**I might**." (= I might go out)

Study the difference:

- **I'm playing** tennis tomorrow. *(sure)*
  I might play tennis tomorrow. *(possible)*
- Rebecca **is going to call** later. *(sure)*
  Rebecca **might call** later. *(possible)*

C

I might not = it is possible that I will not:

- I **might not go** to work tomorrow. (= it is possible that I will not go)
- Sue **might not come** to the party. (= it is possible that she will not come)

D

May

You can use **may** in the same way. **I may** = **I might**:

- I **may go** to the movies tonight. (= I might go)
- Sue **may not come** to the party. (= Sue might not come)

May I . . . ? = Is it OK to . . . ? / Can I . . . ?:

- **May I** ask a question? (= is it OK to ask / can I ask?)
- "**May I** sit here?" "Sure."

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

will → Units 28–29 can → Unit 31

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

30.1 Write sentences with ***might***.

1. (it's possible that I'll go to the movies) *I might go to the movies.*
2. (it's possible that I'll see you tomorrow) I _____
3. (it's possible that Sarah will forget to call) _____
4. (it's possible that it will snow today) _____
5. (it's possible that I'll be late tonight) _____

Write sentences with ***might not***.

6. (it's possible that Mark will not be here next week) _____
7. (it's possible that I won't have time to go out) _____

30.2 Somebody is asking you about your plans. You have some ideas, but you are not sure. Choose from the list and write sentences with ***I might***.

fish ~~**Italy**~~ **Monday** **a new car** **take a trip** **take a taxi**

1.	Where are you going for your vacation?	I'm not sure. *I might go to Italy.*
2.	What are you doing this weekend?	I don't know. I _____
3.	When will you see Kate again?	I'm not sure. _____
4.	What are you going to have for dinner?	I don't know. _____
5.	How are you going to get home tonight?	I'm not sure. _____
6.	I hear you won some money. What are you going to do with it?	I haven't decided yet. _____
		_____

30.3 You ask Bill questions about his plans for tomorrow. Sometimes he is sure, but usually he is not sure.

1.	Are you playing tennis tomorrow?	Yes, in the afternoon.
2.	Are you going out tomorrow evening?	Possibly.
3.	Are you going to get up early?	Maybe.
4.	Are you working tomorrow?	No, I'm not.
5.	Will you be at home tomorrow morning?	Maybe.
6.	Are you going to watch television?	I might.
7.	Are you going out in the afternoon?	Yes, I am.
8.	Are you going shopping?	Perhaps. I'm not sure.



Bill

Now write about Bill. Use ***might*** where necessary.

1. *He's playing tennis tomorrow afternoon.*
2. *He might go out tomorrow evening.*
3. He _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____

30.4 Write three things that you might do tomorrow.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 31

can and could

A



He **can play** the piano.

can + *base form* (**can do** / **can play** / **can come**, etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**can** **can't (cannot)**	**do** **play** **see** **come**, etc.

can	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**do?** **play?** **see?** **come?**, etc.

B

I can do something = I *know how* to do it, or *it is possible* for me to do it:

- I **can play** the piano. My brother **can play** the piano, too.
- Sarah **can speak** Italian, but she **can't speak** Spanish.
- "**Can** you **swim**?" "Yes, but I'm not a very good swimmer."
- "**Can** you **change** a twenty-dollar bill?" "I'm sorry, I **can't**."
- I'm having a party next week, but Paul and Rachel **can't come**.

C

For the *past* (**yesterday** / **last week**, etc.), we use **could/couldn't**:

- When I was young, I **could run** very fast.
- Before Maria came to the United States, she **couldn't understand** much English. Now she **can understand** everything.
- I was tired last night, but I **couldn't sleep**.
- I had a party last week, but Paul and Rachel **couldn't come**.

D

Can you . . . ? **Could you . . . ?** **Can I . . . ?** **Could I . . . ?**

We use **Can you . . . ?** or **Could you . . . ?** when we ask people to do things:

- **Can you** open the door, please? *or* **Could you** open the door, please?
- **Can you** wait a minute, please? *or* **Could you** wait . . . ?

We use **Can I have . . . ?** or **Could I have . . . ?** to ask for something:

- *(in a store)* **Can I have** change for a dollar, please? *or* **Could I have . . . ?**

Can I . . . ? or **Could I . . . ?** = is it OK to do something?:

- Tom, **can I** borrow your umbrella? *or* Tom, **could I** borrow your umbrella?
- *(on the phone)* Hello, **can I** speak to Gary, please? *or* . . . **could I** speak . . . ?

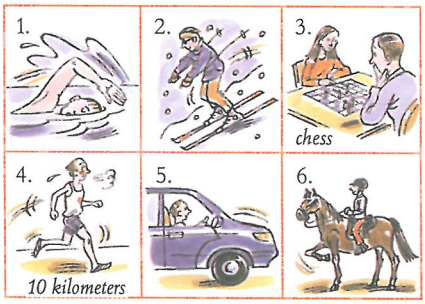
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

May I . . . ? → Unit 30

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

31.1 Ask Steve if he can do these things:





You — Steve

1. Can you swim?
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

Can you do these things? Write sentences about yourself. Use *I can* or *I can't*.

7. I _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____

31.2 Complete these sentences. Use ***can*** or ***can't*** + one of these verbs:

~~come~~ **find hear see speak**

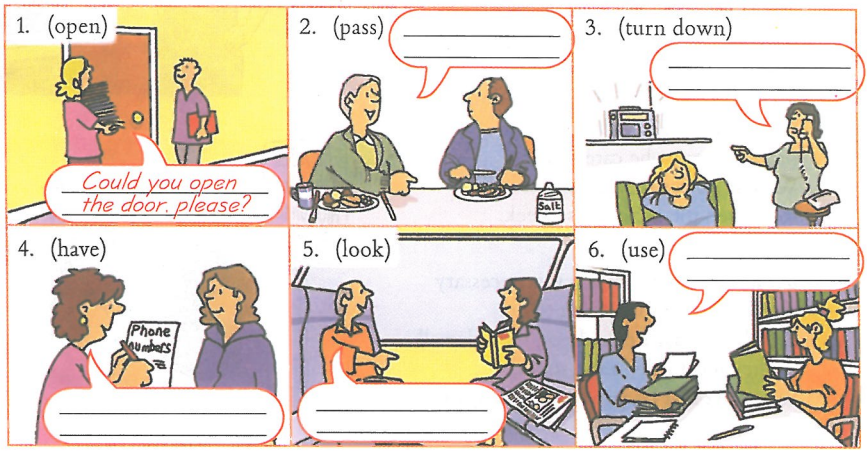
1. I'm sorry, but we *can't come* to your party next Saturday.
2. I like this hotel room. You _____ the mountains from the window.
3. You are speaking very quietly. I _____ you.
4. Have you seen my suitcase? I _____ it.
5. Catherine got the job because she _____ five languages.

31.3 Complete these sentences. Use ***can't*** or ***couldn't*** + one of these verbs:

decide eat find go go ~~sleep~~

1. I was tired, but I *couldn't sleep* .
2. I wasn't hungry yesterday. I _____ my dinner.
3. Kate doesn't know what to do. She _____ .
4. I wanted to speak to Martin yesterday, but I _____ him.
5. James _____ to the concert next Saturday. He has to work.
6. Paula _____ to the meeting last week. She was sick.

31.4 What do you say in these situations? Use ***can*** or ***could***.



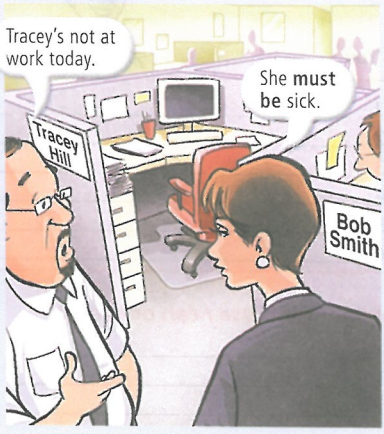
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 32

must

A



She **must be** sick = I am sure she is sick; it is clear that she is sick.
must + base form (**must be** / **must know**, etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**must (not)**	**be** **know** **have** **live**, etc.

We use **must** when we believe that something is true.

- You worked 10 hours today. You **must be** tired.
- My brother has worked at your company for years. You **must know** him.
- My friends have the same zip code as you. They **must live** near you.
- *(on the telephone)* This isn't the Smiths'? I'm sorry. I **must have** the wrong number.

We use **must not** when we believe that something is *not* true.

- The phone rang eight times and Karen didn't answer. She **must not be** at home.
- Carlos takes the bus everywhere. He **must not have** a car.
- The Silvas are always home on Fridays. They **must not work** then.

B

Must has another meaning. You **must do** something = it is necessary to do it.

- You **must be** careful with this knife. It's very sharp.
- Workers **must wear** safety glasses at this machine.
- In the United States, you **must be** 18 to vote.



For the *past* (**yesterday**, **last week**, etc.), we use **had to** . . . (*not* must).

- They were in a dangerous situation. They **had to be** careful. (*not* They must be careful.)
- We **had to wear** safety glasses when we visited the factory last week. (*not* We must wear)

You **must not do** something = it is necessary *not* to do it; it is the wrong thing to do.

- Bicyclists **must not ride** on the sidewalk. (= they must ride in the street)
- You **must not be** late for school again!



I have to . . . → Unit 34

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

32.1 Complete the sentences. Use *must be* + these verbs:

for you good hungry in the kitchen ~~tired~~ very happy

1. Silvia worked 10 hours today. She *must be tired* .
2. It's evening, and you haven't eaten anything all day. You _____ .
3. It's the most popular restaurant in town, so the food _____ .
4. "I got the job." "You did? You _____ ."
5. The phone's ringing. I know it's not for me. It _____ .
6. My keys aren't in the living room, so they _____ .

32.2 Complete the sentences. Use *must* + these verbs:

drink have ~~know~~ like work

1. My brother has worked at your company for years. You *must know* him.
2. Marilyn wears something blue every day. She _____ the color blue.
3. The Hills have six children and three dogs. They _____ a big house.
4. Mrs. Lee bought three gallons of milk at the store. Her children _____ a lot of milk.
5. I know Mrs. Romo has a job, but she's always home during the day. She _____ at night.

32.3 Write *must* or *must not*.

1. *(on the telephone)* This isn't the Smiths'? I *must* have the wrong number.
2. Carlos takes the bus everywhere. He *must not* have a car.
3. Brandon is very thin. He _____ eat very much.
4. I never see my neighbor in the morning. He _____ leave for work very early.
5. I always have to repeat things when I talk to Kelly. She _____ hear very well.
6. Jim wears the same clothes every day. He _____ have many clothes.
7. You have a cold and a fever? Poor thing! You _____ feel awful.

32.4 Complete the sentences. Use *must* + these verbs:

~~be~~ be get know take wear

1. In most of the United States, you *must be* at least 16 to get a driver's license.
2. For this job, you _____ both Spanish and German.
3. People in the front seat of a car _____ a seat belt.
4. High school students who want to go to college _____ good grades.
5. This highway is closed. Drivers _____ another road.
6. A tennis player _____ very good to play professionally.

32.5 Write *must*, *mustn't*, or *had to*.

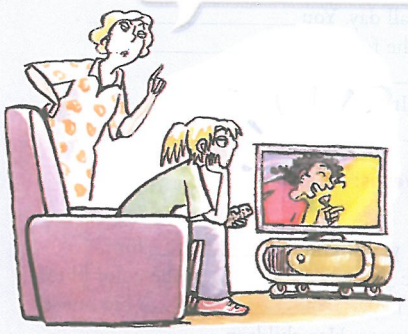
1. We *mustn't* forget to send Sam a birthday card.
2. We *had to* wear safety glasses when we visited the factory.
3. I _____ hurry or I'll be late.
4. "Why were you so late?" "I _____ wait half an hour for the bus."
5. Keep these papers in a safe place. You _____ lose them.
6. Bicyclists _____ follow the same traffic rules as drivers.
7. We _____ forget to turn off the lights when we leave.
8. I don't usually work on Saturdays, but last Saturday I _____ work.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 33 should

A



should + *base form*
(**should do** / **should watch**, etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**should** **shouldn't**	**do** **stop** **go** **watch**, etc.

B

You **should do** something = it is a good thing to do; it is the right thing to do:

- Tom doesn't study enough. He **should study** harder.
- It's a good movie. You **should go** and see it.
- When you play tennis, you **should** always **watch** the ball.

Should I/we **do** something? = is it a good thing to do?

- **Should** I **invite** Karen to dinner?
- **Should** we **make** something special for dinner?

C

You **shouldn't do** something = it is not a good thing to do (**shouldn't** = should not):

- Tom **shouldn't go** to bed so late.
- You watch TV all the time. You **shouldn't watch** TV so much.

D

We often say **I think . . . should . . .** :

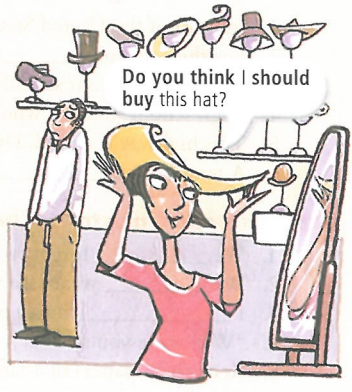
- **I think** Lisa **should buy** some new clothes.
  (= I think it is a good idea.)
- It's late. **I think** I **should go** home now.
- *A:* Shall I buy this coat?
  B: Yes, **I think** you **should**.

I don't think . . . should . . . :

- **I don't think** you **should work** so hard.
  (= I don't think it is a good idea.)
- **I don't think** we **should go** yet. It's too early.

Do you think . . . should . . . ?:

- **Do you think** I **should buy** this hat?
- What time **do you think** we **should go** home?



E

Should is different from **have to**.

- I **should** study tonight, but I think I'll go to the movies.
- I **have to** study tonight. I can't go to the movies.

F

Another way to say **should** is **ought to**:

- I **ought to study** tonight, but I think I'll go to the movies. (= I should study)
- I think Lisa **ought to buy** some new clothes. (= Lisa should buy)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

shall/should → Unit 29 · must → Unit 30 · have to → Unit 34

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

33.1 Complete the sentences. Use ***you should*** + these verbs:

eat go read visit ~~watch~~ wear

1. When you play tennis *you should watch* the ball.
2. It's late, and you're very tired. _____ to bed.
3. _____ plenty of fruit and vegetables.
4. If you have time, _____ the Science Museum. It's very interesting.
5. When you're driving, _____ a seat belt.
6. It's a very good book. _____ it.

33.2 Write about the people in the pictures. Use ***He/She shouldn't . . . so . . . .***



1. *She shouldn't watch TV so much.*
2. He _____.
3. _____ hard.
4. _____

33.3 You are not sure what to do, so you ask a friend. Write questions with ***Do you think I should . . . ?***

1. You are in a store. You are trying on a jacket. (buy?)
   You ask your friend: *Do you think I should buy this jacket?*
2. You can't drive. (learn?)
   You ask your friend: Do you think _____
3. You don't like your job. (get another job?)
   You ask your friend: _____
4. You are going to have a party. (invite Gary?)
   You ask your friend: _____

33.4 Write sentences with ***I think . . . should . . .*** and ***I don't think . . . should . . . .***

1. We have to get up early tomorrow. (go home now) *I think we should go home now.*
2. That coat is too big for you. (buy it) *I don't think you should buy it.*
3. You don't need your car. (sell it) _____
4. Karen needs a change. (take a trip) _____
5. Sally and Dan are too young. (get married) _____
6. You're still sick. (go to work) _____
7. James isn't feeling well today. (go to the doctor) _____
8. The hotel is too expensive for us. (stay there) _____

33.5 What do you think? Write sentences with ***should***.

1. I think *everybody should learn another language.*
2. I think everybody _____
3. I think _____
4. I don't think _____
5. I think I _____

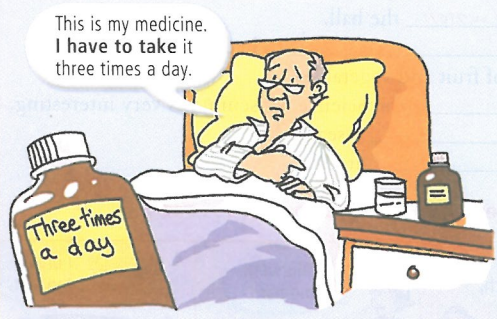
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 34

I have to . . .

A



I have to do something = it is necessary for me to do it; I am obliged to do it.

I/we/you/they	**have**	**to do** **to work** **to go** **to wear**, etc.
he/she/it	**has**	

- I'll be late for work tomorrow. I **have to go** to the dentist.
- Jane starts work at 7:00, so she **has to get up** at 6:00.
- You **have to pass** a test before you can get a driver's license.

B

The *past* (**yesterday** / **last week**, etc.) is **had to** . . . :

- I was late for work yesterday. I **had to go** to the dentist.
- We **had to walk** home last night. There were no buses.

C

In questions and negatives we use **do**/**does** (present) and **did** (past):

Present

do	I/we/you/they	**have to . . . ?**	I/we/you/they	**don't**	**have to . . .**
does	he/she/it		he/she/it	**doesn't**	

Past

did	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**have to . . . ?**	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**didn't have to . . .**

- What time **do you have to go** to the dentist tomorrow?
- **Does** Jane **have to work** on Saturdays?
- Why **did** they **have to leave** the party early?

I **don't have to** (do something) = it is not necessary to do it:

- I'm not working tomorrow, so I **don't have to get** up early.
- Mike **doesn't have to work** very hard. He's got an easy job.
- We didn't **have to wait** very long for the bus – it came in a few minutes.

D

must

You can also use **must** to say it is necessary to do something.

- You **must** pass a test before you can get a driver's license.
- In many countries, men **must** do military service.

We use **have to** more often than **must**, especially in spoken English.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

must → Unit 32

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

34.1 Complete the sentences. Use ***have to*** or ***has to*** + these verbs:

hit read speak take travel ~~wear~~

1. My eyes are not very good. I *have to wear* glasses.
2. At the end of the course all the students _____ a test.
3. Sarah is studying literature. She _____ a lot of books.
4. Alberto doesn't understand much English. You _____ very slowly to him.
5. Kate is not at home much. She _____ a lot for her job.
6. In tennis you _____ the ball over the net.

34.2 Complete the sentences. Use ***have to*** or ***had to*** + these verbs:

answer buy change go take wake ~~walk~~

1. We *had to walk* home last night. There were no buses.
2. It's late. I _____ now. I'll see you tomorrow.
3. I went to the store after work yesterday. I _____ some food.
4. This train doesn't go all the way downtown. You _____ at First Avenue.
5. We took a test yesterday. We _____ six questions out of ten.
6. I'm going to bed. I _____ up early tomorrow.
7. Amy and her cousin can't go out with us tonight. They _____ care of Amy's little brother.

34.3 Complete the questions. Some are present and some are past.

1.	I have to get up early tomorrow.	What time *do you have to get up* ?
2.	George had to wait a long time.	How long _____ ?
3.	Liz has to go somewhere.	Where _____ ?
4.	We had to pay a lot of money.	How much _____ ?
5.	I have to do some work.	What exactly _____ ?
6.	They had to leave early.	Why _____ ?
7.	Paul has to go to Moscow.	When _____ ?

34.4 Write sentences with ***don't/doesn't/didn't have to . . . .***

1. Why are you going out? You *don't have to go* out.
2. Why is Sue waiting? She _____ .
3. Why did you get up early? You _____ .
4. Why is Paul working so hard? He _____ .
5. Why do you want to leave now? We _____ .
6. Why did they tell me something I already know? They _____ .

34.5 Write some things that you (or your friends or family) ***have to do*** or ***had to do***.

1. (every day) *I have to drive 50 miles to work every day.*
2. (every day) _____
3. (yesterday) _____
4. (tomorrow) _____
5. (last week) _____
6. (when I was younger) _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 35

Would you like . . . ? I'd like . . .

A

Would you like . . . ? = Do you want . . . ?

We use **Would you like . . . ?** to offer things:

- *A:* **Would you like** some coffee?
  B: No, thank you.
- *A:* **Would you like** a piece of candy?
  B: Yes, thanks.
- *A:* Which **would you like**, tea or coffee?
  B: Tea, please.



We use **Would you like to . . . ?** to invite somebody:

- **Would you like to go** for a walk?
- *A:* **Would you like to have** dinner with us on Sunday?
  B: Yes, **I'd love to.** (= I would love to have dinner with you)
- What **would you like to do** tonight?

B

I'd like . . . is a polite way to say "I want." (**I'd** like = **I would** like)

- I'm thirsty. **I'd like** a drink.
- *(in a tourist office)* **I'd like** some information about hotels, please.
- I'm feeling tired. **I'd like to stay** home tonight.

C

Would you like . . . ? and **Do you like . . . ?**

Would you like . . . ? / I'd like . . .



Would you like some coffee? = Do you want some coffee?

- *A:* **Would you like** to go to the movies tonight? (= do you want to go *tonight*?)
  B: Yes, I'd love to.
- **I'd like** an orange, please. (= can I have an orange?)
- What **would you like** to do next weekend?

Do you like . . . ? / I like . . .



Do you like coffee? = Do you think coffee is good?

- *A:* **Do you like** to go to the movies? *(in general)*
  B: Yes, I go to the movies a lot.
- **I like** oranges. *(in general)*
- What **do you like** to do on weekends?

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

35.1 What are the people in the pictures saying? Use *Would you like . . . ?*



35.2 What do you say to Sue in these situations? Use *Would you like to . . . ?*

1. You want to go to the movies tonight. Perhaps Sue will go with you. (go)
   You say: *Would you like to go to the movies tonight?*
2. You want to play tennis tomorrow. Perhaps Sue will play, too. (play)
   You say: _____
3. You have an extra ticket for a concert next week. Perhaps Sue will come. (come)
   You say: _____
4. It's raining and Sue is going out. She doesn't have an umbrella, but you have one. (borrow)
   You say: _____

35.3 Which is right?

1. ~~"Do you like /~~ Would you like a piece of candy?" "Yes, thanks." (*Would you like* is right)
2. "Do you like / Would you like bananas?" "Yes, I love them."
3. "Do you like / Would you like some ice cream?" "No, thank you."
4. "What do you like / would you like to drink?" "A glass of water, please."
5. "Do you like / Would you like to go out for a walk?" "Not now. Maybe later."
6. I like / I'd like tomatoes, but I don't eat them very often.
7. What time do you like / would you like to have dinner tonight?
8. "Do you like / Would you like something to eat?" "No, thanks. I'm not hungry."
9. "Do you like / Would you like your new job?" "Yes, I'm enjoying it."
10. I'm tired. I like / I'd like to go to bed now.
11. "I like / I'd like a sandwich, please." "Sure. What kind of sandwich?"
12. "What kind of music do you like / would you like?" "All kinds."

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 36

I'd rather . . .

A



Ann likes to sit on the floor. She doesn't want to sit on a chair. So she says:

I'd rather sit on the floor. (= I would prefer to sit on the floor.)

I'd rather . . . = I **would** rather . . .

I **would rather** do something = I would prefer to do something:

Positive		*Negative*		*Question*	
I'd rather (I **would rather**)	do stay have be	**I'd rather not** (I **would rather not**)	do stay have be	**would** you **rather**	do . . . ? stay . . . ? have . . . ? be . . . ?

- I don't really want to go out. **I'd rather stay** home. (= I'd prefer to stay home)
- "Should we go now?" "No, not yet. **I'd rather wait** until later."
- I'd like to go now, but Tom **would rather wait** until later.
- I don't like to be late. **I'd rather be** early.

- I'm feeling tired. **I'd rather not go out** tonight. (= I'd prefer not to go out)
- Sue is feeling tired. She**'d rather not go out** tonight.
- We're not hungry. We**'d rather not eat** yet.
- "Would you like to go out tonight?" "**I'd rather not**." (= I'd rather not go out)

- "**Would** you **rather have** milk or juice?" "Juice, please."
- Which **would** you **rather do** – go to the movies or watch a DVD at home?

B

We say "**I'd rather do** something" (*not* to do something):

- **I'd rather sit** on the floor. (*not* I'd rather to sit)
- Sue **would rather** not **go** out. (*not* would rather not to go)

But we say "**I'd prefer to do** something":

- **I'd prefer to sit** on the floor.
- Sue **would prefer** not **to go** out.

C

You can say "**I'd rather** . . . **than** . . . ":

- **I'd rather** go out **than** stay home.
- **I'd rather** have a dog **than** a cat.
- We**'d rather** go to the movies **than** watch a DVD at home.
- **I'd rather** be at home right now **than** here.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

36.1 Look at the pictures and complete B's sentences. Use ***I'd rather . . . .***

	A		B
1.	Would you like to sit here?		No, thanks. *I'd rather sit* on the floor.
2.	Don't you want to watch TV?		No, I _____ my book.
3.	Would you like some tea?		Well, _____ coffee if you have some.
4.	Should we go out now?		_____ until it stops raining.

36.2 Complete these questions. Use ***would you rather . . . .***

1. Do you want to go out, or *would you rather stay* home?
2. Should we have dinner now, or _____ later?
3. Would you like a glass of juice, or _____ water?
4. Do you want to go to the movies, or _____ TV?
5. Should we call your brother tonight, or _____ tomorrow morning?

36.3 Complete the sentences with a verb. Sometimes you need ***to***.

1. I'd rather *stay* home tonight. I'd prefer not *to go* out.
2. Should we walk home, or would you rather _____ a taxi?
3. Do you want me to come with you, or would you prefer _____ alone?
4. Mary doesn't want to go to college. She'd rather _____ a job.
5. "Can I help you with your suitcase?" "No, thank you. I'd rather _____ it myself."
6. I'd rather not _____ him. I'd prefer _____ him a letter.

36.4 Answer these questions about yourself. Use ***I'd rather . . . than.***

1. Which would you prefer to be – a bus driver or an airplane pilot?
   I'd rather be a bus driver than an airplane pilot.
2. Which would you prefer to be – a journalist or a school teacher?
   _____
3. Where would you prefer to live – in a big city or a small town?
   _____
4. Which would you prefer to have – a small house or a big one?
   _____
5. Which would you prefer to study – electronics or philosophy?
   _____
6. Which would you prefer to watch – a soccer game or a movie?
   _____

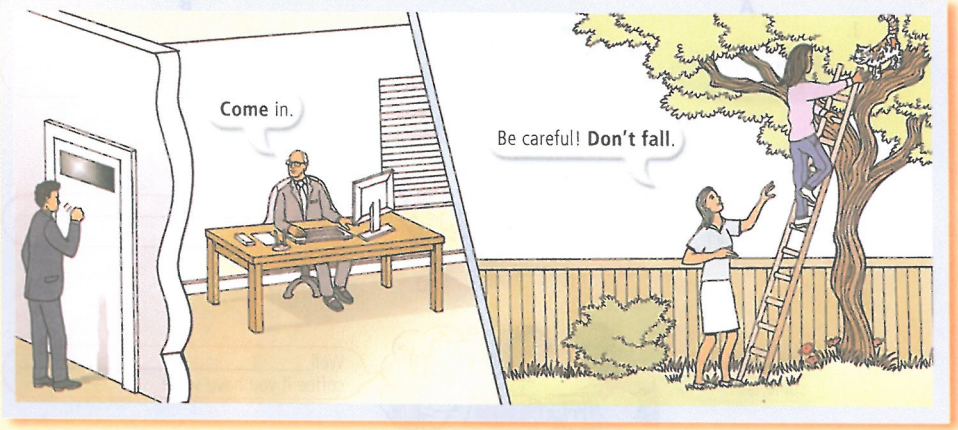
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 37

Do this! Don't do that! Let's do this!

A



We use **come/look/go/wait/do/be**, etc. when we tell somebody to do something:

- "**Come** here and **look** at this." "What is it?"
- I don't want to talk to you. **Go** away!
- I'm not ready yet. Please **wait** for me.
- Please **be** quiet. I'm working.

also

- Bye! **Have** a good trip! / **Have** a nice time! / **Have** a good flight! / **Have** fun!
  (= I hope you have a good trip, etc.)
- "**Have** some candy." "Oh, thanks."
  (= would you like some candy?)

B

We use **don't** . . . when we tell somebody not to do something:

- Be careful! **Don't fall**.
- Please **don't go**. Stay here with me.
- Be here on time. **Don't be** late.

C

You can say **Let's** . . . when you want people to do things with you. (**let's** = let us)

- It's a nice day. **Let's go** out.
  (= you and I can go out)
- Come on! **Let's go**
  (= you and I can go out)
- Are you ready? **Let's go**.
- **Let's have** fish for dinner tonight.
- *A:* Should we go out tonight?
  B: No, I'm tired. **Let's stay** home.



The negative is **Let's not** . . . :

- It's cold. **Let's not** go out. Let's stay home.
- **Let's not** have fish for dinner tonight. Let's have chicken.
- I'm tired of arguing. **Let's not** do it any more.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

37.1 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying? Some sentences are positive (***buy/come***, etc.) and some are negative (***don't buy / don't come***, etc.). Use these verbs:

be buy ~~come~~ ~~drink~~ drop forget have sit sleep smile



37.2 Complete the sentences. Use ***let's*** with:

~~go for a swim~~ go to a restaurant take the bus wait a little watch TV

1.	Would you like to play tennis?	No, *let's go for a swim*.
2.	Do you want to walk home?	No, _____.
3.	Shall I put a CD on?	No, _____.
4.	Should we have dinner at home?	No, _____.
5.	Would you like to go now?	No, _____.

37.3 Answer with ***No, don't . . .*** or ***No, let's not . . . .***

1.	Shall I wait for you?	*No, don't wait for me.*
2.	Should we go home now?	*No, let's not go home yet.*
3.	Shall we go out?	_____
4.	Do you want me to close the window?	_____
5.	Should I call you tonight?	_____
6.	Do you think we should wait for Andy?	_____
7.	Do you want me to turn on the light?	_____
8.	Should we take a taxi?	_____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 38

there is there are

A



There's a man on the roof.



There's a train at 10:30.



There are seven days in a week.

Singular

there is . . .	(there's)
is there . . . ?	
there is not . . .	(there isn't *or* there's not)

- **There's** a big tree in the yard.
- **There's** nothing on TV tonight.
- *A:* Do you have any money?
  B: Yes, **there's** some in my wallet.
- *A:* Excuse me, **is there** a hotel near here?
  B: Yes, **there is**. / No, **there isn't**.
- We can't go skiing. **There isn't** any snow.

Plural

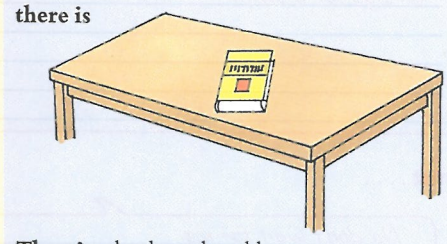
there are . . .	
are there . . . ?	
there are not . . .	(there aren't)

- **There are** some big trees in the yard.
- **There are** a lot of accidents on this road.
- *A:* **Are there** any restaurants near here?
  B: Yes, **there are**. / No, **there aren't**.
- This restaurant is very quiet. **There aren't** many people here.
- How many players **are there** on a soccer team?
- **There are** 11 players on a soccer team.

B

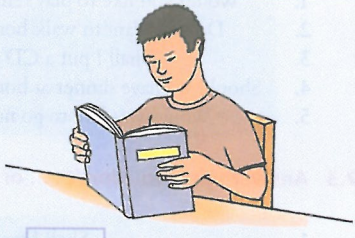
There is and **it is**

there is



There's a book on the table.
(*not* It's a book on the table.)

it is



I like this book . **It's** interesting.
(**it** = this book)

Compare:

- "What's **that noise**?" "**It's** a train." (**It** = that noise)
  There's a train at 10:30. **It's** a fast train. (**It** = the 10:30 train)
- **There's** a lot of salt in this soup.
  I don't like **this soup**. **It's** too salty. (**It** = this soup)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین رایگان دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

38.1 Springfield is a small town. Look at the information in the box and write sentences about Springfield with ***There is/are*** or ***There isn't/aren't***.

1.	a golf course?	No
2.	any restaurants?	Yes (a lot)
3.	a hospital?	Yes
4.	a swimming pool?	No
5.	any movie theaters?	Yes (two)
6.	a university?	No
7.	any big hotels?	No

1. *There isn't a golf course.*
2. *There are a lot of restaurants.*
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____

38.2 Write sentences about your town (or a town that you know). Use ***There is/are*** or ***There isn't/aren't***.

1. *There are a few restaurants.*
2. *There's a big park.*
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

38.3 Write ***there is / there isn't / is there*** or ***there are / there aren't / are there***.

1. Springfield isn't an old town. *There aren't* any old buildings.
2. Look! _____ a photograph of your brother in the newspaper!
3. "Excuse me, _____ a bank near here?" "Yes, at the end of the block."
4. _____ five people in my family: my parents, my two sisters, and me.
5. "How many students _____ in the class?" "Twenty."
6. The road is usually very quiet. _____ much traffic.
7. "_____ a bus from downtown to the airport?" "Yes, every 20 minutes."
8. "_____ any problems?" "No, everything is OK."
9. _____ nowhere to sit down. _____ any chairs.

38.4 Write sentences with ***There are . . . .*** Choose from the boxes.

five	twenty-six	letters	~~days~~	September	the solar system
~~seven~~	thirty	players	days	the United States	~~a week~~
eight	fifty	planets	states	a basketball team	the English alphabet

1. *There are seven days in a week.*
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

38.5 Write ***there's / is there*** or ***it's / is it***.

1. "*There's* a flight at 10:30." "*Is it* a nonstop flight?"
2. I'm not going to buy this shirt. _____ too expensive.
3. "What's wrong?" "_____ something in my eye."
4. _____ a red car outside your house. _____ yours?
5. "_____ anything good on TV tonight?" "Yes, _____ a movie at 8:00."
6. "What's that building?" "_____ a school."
7. "_____ a restaurant in this hotel?" "No, I'm afraid not."

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 39

there was/were there has/have been there will be

A There was / there were *(past)*



There is a train every hour.

The time now is 11:15.
There was a train at 11:00.

Compare:

there is/are *(present)*

- **There is** a good nature program on TV tonight.
- We are staying at a very big hotel. **There are** 1,250 rooms.
- **Are there** any phone messages for me this morning?
- I'm hungry, but **there isn't** anything to eat.

there was/were *(past)*

- **There was** a good nature program on TV last night.
- We stayed at a very big hotel. **There were** 1,250 rooms.
- **Were there** any phone messages for me yesterday?
- I was hungry when I got home, but **there wasn't** anything to eat.

B There has been / there have been *(present perfect)*



- Look! **There's been** an accident. (**there's been** = there **has** been)
- This road is very dangerous. **There have been** many accidents on it.

Compare **there was** *(past)*:

- **There was** an accident **last night**. (*not* There has been an accident last night.)

For simple past and present perfect, see Unit 21.

C There will be



- Do you think **there will be** a lot of people at the party on Saturday?
- The manager of the company is leaving, so **there will be** a new manager soon.
- I'm going out of town tomorrow. I'm packing my things today because **there won't be** time tomorrow. (**there won't be** = there **will not** be)

was/were → Unit 10 has/have been → Units 16–17 will → Unit 28 there is/are → Unit 38
there and it → Units 38–40 some and any → Unit 37

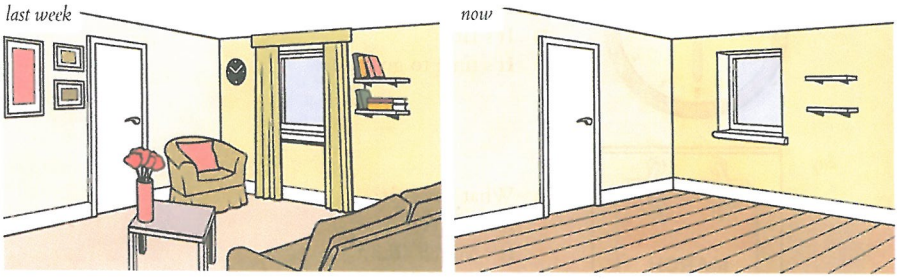
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

39.1 Look at the two pictures. Now the room is empty, but what was in the room last week? Choose from the box and write sentences with ***There was . . .*** or ***There were . . . .***

an armchair	a carpet	some flowers	a sofa
some books	~~a clock~~	three pictures	a small table



1. *There was a clock* on the wall near the window.
2. _____ on the floor.
3. _____ on the wall near the door.
4. _____ in the middle of the room.
5. _____ on the table.
6. _____ on the shelves.
7. _____ in the corner near the door.
8. _____ opposite the armchair.

39.2 Write ***there was / there wasn't / was there*** or ***there were / there weren't / were there.***

1. I was hungry, but *there wasn't* anything to eat.
2. *Were there* any phone messages for me yesterday?
3. I opened the envelope, but it was empty. _____ nothing in it.
4. "We stayed at a very nice hotel." "Really? _____ a swimming pool?"
5. "Did you buy any cherries?" "No, _____ any at the store."
6. The wallet was empty. _____ any money in it.
7. "_____ many people at the meeting?" "No, very few."
8. We didn't visit the museum. _____ enough time.
9. I'm sorry I'm late. _____ a lot of traffic.
10. Twenty years ago _____ many tourists here. Now there are a lot.

39.3 Write ***there + is / are / was / were / has been / have been / will be.***

1. *There was* a good program on TV last night.
2. _____ 24 hours in a day.
3. _____ a party at work last Friday, but I didn't go.
4. "Where can I buy a newspaper?" "_____ a drugstore at the end of the block."
5. "Why are the police outside the bank?" "_____ a robbery."
6. When we got to the theater, _____ a long line outside.
7. When you arrive tomorrow, _____ somebody at the airport to meet you.
8. Ten years ago _____ 500 children in the school. Now _____ more than a thousand.
9. Last week I went back to the town where I was born. It's very different now. _____ a lot of changes.
10. I think everything will be OK. I don't think _____ any problems.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 40

It . . .

A

We use **it** for time/day/distance/weather:

time



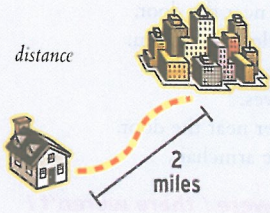
- What time is **it**?
- **It**'s half past 10.
- **It**'s late.
- **It**'s time to go home.

day



- What day is **it**?
- **It**'s Thursday.
- **It**'s March 16th.
- **It** was my birthday yesterday.

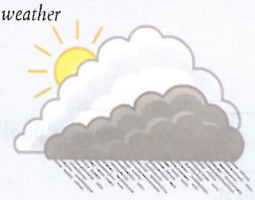
distance



- **It**'s two miles from our house to downtown.
- How far is **it** from New York to Los Angeles?
- **It**'s a long way from here to the airport.
- We can walk home. **It** isn't far.

We use **far** in questions (**is it far**?) and negatives (**it isn't far**).
In positive sentences, we use **a long way** (**it's a long way**).

weather



- **It**'s raining. **It** isn't raining. **Is** it snowing?
- **It** rains a lot here. **It** didn't rain yesterday.
  Does **it** snow very often?
- **It**'s warm/hot/cold/nice/cloudy/windy/sunny/clear/dry/humid/foggy/dark, etc.
- **It**'s a nice day today.

Compare **it** and **there**:

- **It rains** a lot in the winter.
  It's very **rainy** in the winter.
  There is **a lot of rain** in the winter.
- **It** was very **windy** yesterday.
  There was **a strong wind** yesterday.

B

It's nice to . . ., etc.

It's	easy / difficult / impossible / dangerous / safe expensive / interesting / nice / wonderful / terrible, etc.	**to . . .**

- **It**'s nice **to see you again**.
- **It**'s impossible **to understand her**.
- **It** wasn't easy **to find your house**.

C

Don't forget **it**:

- **It**'s raining again. (*not* Is raining again)
- Is **it** true that you're moving to Dallas? (*not* Is true that . . .)

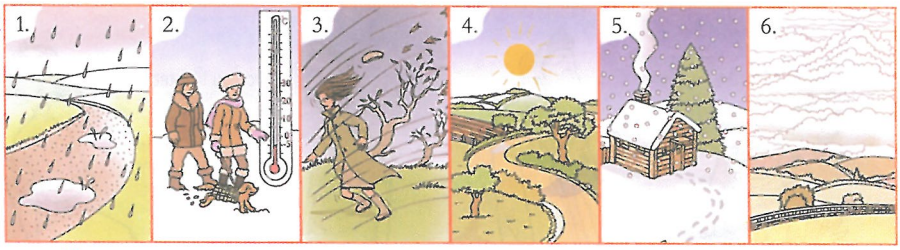
there is → Units 38–39

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

40.1 Write about the weather in the pictures. Use *It's . . . .*



1. *It's raining.*
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

40.2 Write *it is* (*it's*) or *is it*.

1. What time *is it* ?
2. We have to go now. _____ very late.
3. _____ true that Bill can fly a helicopter?
4. "What day _____ today? Tuesday?" "No, _____ Wednesday."
5. _____ 10 kilometers from downtown to the airport.
6. _____ OK to call you at the office?
7. "Do you want to walk to the hotel?" "I don't know. How far _____ ?"
8. _____ Lisa's birthday today. She's 27.
9. I don't believe it! _____ impossible.

40.3 Write questions with *How far . . . ?*

1. (here / the station) *How far is it from here to the station?*
2. (the hotel / the beach) *How* _____
3. (New York / Washington) _____
4. (your house / the airport) _____

40.4 Write *it* or *there*.

1. The weather isn't so nice today. *It* 's cloudy.
2. *There* was a strong wind yesterday.
3. _____ 's hot in this room. Open a window.
4. _____ was a nice day yesterday. _____ was warm and sunny.
5. _____ was a storm last night. Did you hear it?
6. I was afraid because _____ was very dark.
7. _____ 's often cold here, but _____ isn't much rain.
8. _____ 's a long way from here to the nearest gas station.

40.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

it's	easy	dangerous	to	work in this office	~~get up early~~
	~~difficult~~	nice		visit different places	go out alone
	impossible	interesting		see you again	make friends

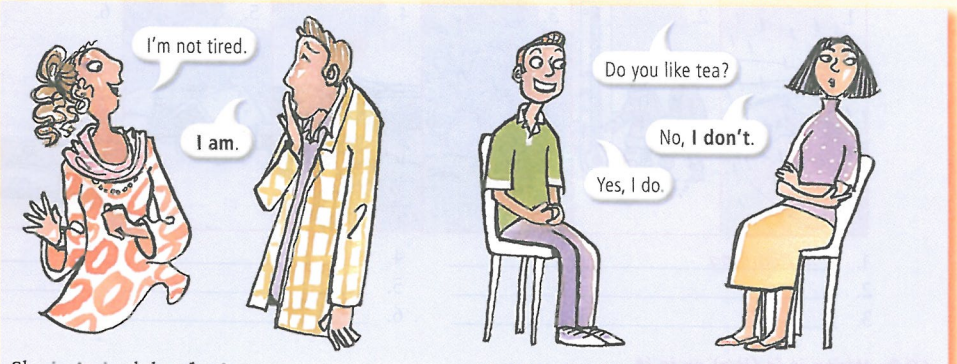
1. If you go to bed late, *it's difficult to get up early* in the morning.
2. Hello, Jane. _____ . How are you?
3. _____ . There is too much noise.
4. Everybody is very nice at work. _____ .
5. I like traveling. _____ .
6. Some cities are not safe. _____ at night.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 41 I am, I don't, etc.

A



She isn't tired, but **he is**.
(**he is** = he is tired)

He likes tea, but **she doesn't**.
(**she doesn't** = she doesn't like tea)

In these examples, it is not necessary to repeat some words ("he is *tired*," "she doesn't *like tea*").

You can use these verbs in the same way:

am/is/are
was/were
have/has
do/does/did
can
will
might
should

- I haven't seen the movie, but my sister **has**. (= my sister has seen the movie)
- *A:* Please help me.
  B: I'm sorry. I **can't**. (= I can't help you)
- *A:* Are you tired?
  B: I **was**, but I'**m not** now. (= I was tired, but I'm not tired now)
- *A:* Do you think Jane will call tonight?
  B: She **might**. (= she might call)
- *A:* Are you going to study tonight?
  B: I **should**, but I probably **won't**. (= I should study, but I probably won't study)

You *cannot* use **'m/'s/'ve**, etc. *(short forms)* in this way. You must use **am/is/have**, etc.:

- She isn't tired, but he **is**. (*not* . . . but he's)

But you *can* use **isn't / haven't / won't**, etc. *(negative short forms)*:

- My sister has seen the movie, but I **haven't**.
- "Are you and Jane working tomorrow?" "I am, but Jane **isn't**."

B

You can use **I am / I'm not**, etc. after **Yes** and **No**:

- "Are you tired?" "Yes, I **am**. / No, I'**m not**."
- "Will Bill be here tomorrow?" "Yes, he **will**. / No, he **won't**."
- "Is there a bus to the airport?" "Yes, there **is**. / No, there **isn't**."

C

We use **do/does** for the *simple present* (see Units 6–7):

- I don't like hot weather, but Sue **does**. (= Sue likes hot weather)
- Sue works hard, but I **don't**. (= I don't work hard)
- "Do you enjoy your work?" "Yes, I **do**."

We use **did** for the *simple past* (see Unit 12):

- *A:* Did you and Chris like the movie?
- *B:* I **did**, but Chris **didn't**. (= I liked it, but Chris didn't like it)
- "I had a good time." "I **did**, too." (= I had a good time, too)
- "Did it rain yesterday?" "No, it **didn't**."

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

You have? / Have you?, etc. → Unit 42 I am / neither do I, etc. → Unit 43

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

41.1 Complete these sentences. Use only one verb (*is/have/can*, etc.) each time.

1. Kate wasn't hungry, but we *were* .
2. I'm not married, but my brother _____ .
3. Bill can't help you, but I _____ .
4. I haven't read the book, but Tom _____ .
5. Karen won't be here, but Chris _____ .
6. You weren't late, but I _____ .

41.2 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (*isn't/haven't/can't*, etc.).

1. My sister can play the piano, but I *can't* .
2. Sam is working today, but I _____ .
3. I was working, but my friends _____ .
4. Mark has been to China, but I _____ .
5. I'm ready to go, but Tom _____ .
6. I've seen the movie, but Kim _____ .

41.3 Complete these sentences with *do/does/did* or *don't/doesn't/didn't*.

1. I don't like hot weather, but Sue *does* .
2. Sue likes hot weather, but I *don't* .
3. My mother wears glasses, but my father _____ .
4. You don't know Paul very well, but I _____ .
5. I didn't enjoy the party, but my friends _____ .
6. I don't watch TV much, but Peter _____ .
7. Kate lives in Canada, but her parents _____ .
8. You had breakfast this morning, but I _____ .

41.4 Complete the sentences. Write about yourself and other people.

1. I didn't _____
2. I like _____ , but _____
3. I don't _____ , but _____
4. I'm _____
5. I haven't _____

41.5 Put in a verb, positive or negative.

1. "Are you tired?" "I *was* earlier, but I'm not now."
2. Steve is happy today, but he _____ yesterday.
3. The stores aren't open yet, but the post office _____ .
4. I don't have a telescope, but I know somebody who _____ .
5. I would like to help you, but I'm sorry I _____ .
6. I don't usually drive to work, but I _____ yesterday.
7. *A:* Have you ever been to Costa Rica?
   B: No, but Sandra _____ . She went there on vacation last year.
8. "Do you and Luke watch TV a lot?" "I _____ , but Luke doesn't."
9. I've been invited to Sam's wedding, but Kate _____ .
10. "Do you think Sarah will pass her driving test?" "Yes, I'm sure she _____ ."
11. "Are you going out tonight?" "I _____ . I don't know for sure."

41.6 Answer these questions about yourself. Use *Yes, I have.* / *No, I'm not.*, etc.

1. Are you Brazilian? *No, I'm not.*
2. Do you have a car? _____
3. Do you feel OK? _____
4. Is it snowing? _____
5. Are you hungry? _____
6. Do you like classical music? _____
7. Will you be in Boston tomorrow? _____
8. Have you ever broken your arm? _____
9. Did you buy anything yesterday? _____
10. Were you asleep at 3:00 a.m.? _____

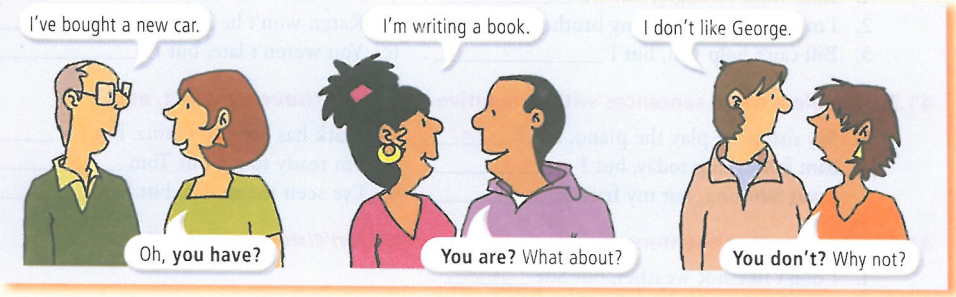
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 42

You have? Have you? You are? Are you?, etc.

A



You can say **you have? / it is? / he can't?**, etc. to show that you are interested or surprised:

- "**You're** late." "**I am?** I'm sorry."
- "**I was** sick last week." "**You were?** I didn't know that."
- "**It's** raining again." "**It is?** It was sunny 10 minutes ago."
- "**There's** a letter for you." "**There is?** Where is it?"
- "**Bill can't** drive." "**He can't?** I didn't know that."
- "**I'm not** hungry." "**You aren't?** I am."
- "**Sue isn't** at work today." "**She isn't?** Is she sick?"

Use **do/does** for the *simple present* and **did** for the *simple past*:

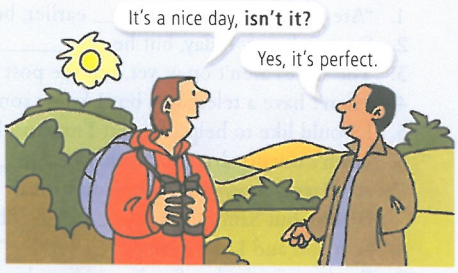
- "**I speak** four languages." "**You do?** Which ones?"
- "**Tim doesn't** eat meat." "**He doesn't?** Does he eat fish?"
- "**Nicole got** married last week." "**She did?** Really?"

B

Tag questions

You can use **have you? / is it? / can't she?**, etc. at the end of a sentence.

These "mini questions" are *tag questions*.



Positive sentence → *Negative* tag question

It's a nice day,	**isn't it?**	Yes, it's perfect.
Sally lives in Portland,	**doesn't she?**	Yes, that's right.
You closed the window,	**didn't you?**	Yes, I think so.
Those shoes are nice,	**aren't they?**	Yes, very nice.
Tom will be here soon,	**won't he?**	Yes, probably.

Negative sentence → *Positive* tag question

That isn't your car,	**is it?**	No, it's my mother's.
You haven't met my mother,	**have you?**	No, I haven't.
Sally doesn't go out much,	**does she?**	No, she doesn't.
You won't be late,	**will you?**	No, I'm never late.

I am, I don't, etc. → Unit 41

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

42.1 Answer with ***You do?*** / ***She doesn't?*** / ***They did?***, etc.

1.	I speak four languages.	You do ? Which ones?
2.	I work in a bank.	_____ ? I work in a bank, too.
3.	I didn't go to work yesterday.	_____ ? Were you sick?
4.	Jane doesn't like me.	_____ ? Why not?
5.	You look tired.	_____ ? I feel fine.
6.	Kate called me last night.	_____ ? What did she say?

42.2 Answer with ***You have?*** / ***You haven't?*** / ***She did?*** / ***She didn't?***, etc.

1.	I've bought a new car.	You have ? What kind is it?
2.	Tim doesn't eat meat.	He doesn't ? Does he eat fish?
3.	I've lost my key.	_____ ? When did you have it last?
4.	Sue can't drive.	_____ ? She should learn.
5.	I was born in Italy.	_____ ? I didn't know that.
6.	I didn't sleep well last night.	_____ ? Was the bed uncomfortable?
7.	There's a football game on TV tonight.	_____ ? Are you going to watch it?
8.	I'm not happy.	_____ ? Why not?
9.	I saw Paula last week.	_____ ? How is she?
10.	Maria works in a factory.	_____ ? What kind of factory?
11.	I won't be here next week.	_____ ? Where will you be?
12.	The clock isn't working.	_____ ? It was working yesterday.

42.3 Complete these sentences with a tag question (***isn't it?*** / ***haven't you?***, etc.).

1.	It's a nice day, isn't it ?	Yes, it's beautiful.
2.	These flowers are nice, _____ ?	Yes, what kind are they?
3.	Jane was at the party, _____ ?	Yes, but I didn't speak to her.
4.	You've been to Chile, _____ ?	Yes, many times.
5.	You speak Thai, _____ ?	Yes, but not very well.
6.	Bill looks tired, _____ ?	Yes, he works very hard.
7.	You'll help me, _____ ?	Yes, of course I will.

42.4 Complete these sentences with a tag question, positive (***is it?*** / ***do you?***, etc.) or negative (***isn't it?*** / ***don't you?***, etc.).

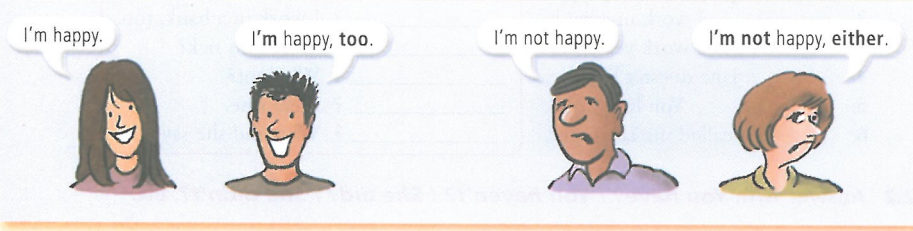
1.	You haven't eaten yet, have you ?	No, I'm not hungry.
2.	You aren't tired, _____ ?	No, I feel fine.
3.	Lisa is a very nice person, _____ ?	Yes, everybody likes her.
4.	You can play the piano, _____ ?	Yes, but I'm not very good.
5.	You don't know Mike's sister, _____ ?	No, I've never met her.
6.	Sarah went to college, _____ ?	Yes, she studied psychology.
7.	The movie wasn't very good, _____ ?	No, it was terrible.
8.	Anna lives near you, _____ ?	Yes, just a few blocks away.
9.	You won't tell anybody what I said, _____ ?	No, of course not.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 43 too/either so am I / neither do I, etc.

A Too and either



We use **too** and **either** at the end of a sentence.

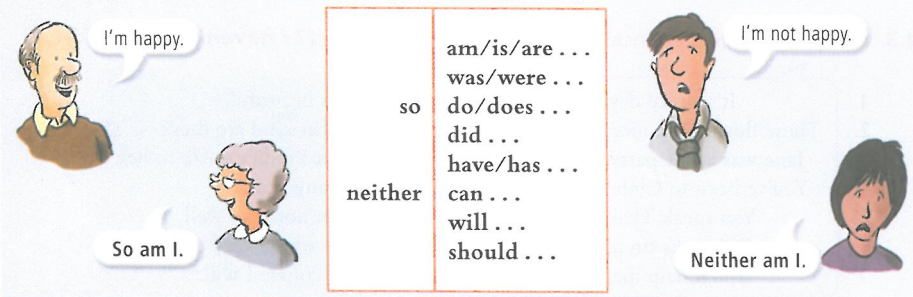
We use **too** after a *positive* verb:

- *A:* I'm happy.
  B: **I'm** happy, **too**.
- *A:* I liked the movie.
  B: I **liked** it, **too**.
- Jane is a doctor. Her husband **is** a doctor, **too**.

We use **either** after a *negative* verb:

- *A:* I'm not happy.
  B: **I'm not** happy, **either**.
  (*not* I'm not . . ., too.)
- *A:* I can't cook.
  B: I **can't**, **either**. (*not* I can't, too)
- Bill doesn't watch TV. He **doesn't** read newspapers, **either**.

B so am I / neither do I, etc.



so	am/is/are . . . was/were . . . do/does . . . did . . . have/has . . . can . . . will . . . should . . .
neither	

so am I = I am, too
so have I = I have, too (etc.):

- *A:* **I'm** working.
  B: **So am I.** (= I'm working, too)
- *A:* **I was** late for work today.
  B: **So was Sam.** (= Sam was late, too)
- *A:* **I work** in a bank.
  B: **So do I.**
- *A:* **We went** to the movies last night.
  B: You did? **So did we.**
- *A:* **I'd** like to go to Australia.
  B: **So would I.**

neither am I = I'm not, either
neither can I = I can't, either (etc.):

- *A:* **I haven't** been to China.
  B: **Neither have I.** (= I haven't, either)
- *A:* **Kate can't** cook.
  B: **Neither can Tom.**
  (= Tom can't, either)
- *A:* **I won't** (= will not) be here tomorrow.
  B: **Neither will I.**
- *A:* **I never go** to the movies.
  B: **Neither do I.**

Remember: So **am I** (*not* So I am), Neither **have I** (*not* Neither I have).

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

I am, I don't, etc. → Unit 41

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

43.1 Write ***too*** or ***either***.

1. I'm happy. — I'm happy, *too* .
2. I'm not hungry. — I'm not hungry, _____ .
3. I'm going out. — I'm going out, _____ .
4. It rained on Saturday. — It rained on Sunday, _____ .
5. Jenny can't drive a car. — She can't ride a bicycle, _____ .
6. I don't like to go shopping. — I don't like to go shopping, _____ .
7. Linda's mother is a teacher. — Her father is a teacher, _____ .

43.2 Answer with ***So . . . I*** (***So am I*** / ***So do I*** / ***So can I***, etc.).

1. I went to bed late last night. — *So did I.*
2. I'm thirsty. — _____
3. I've already read this book. — _____
4. I need a vacation. — _____
5. I'll be late tomorrow. — _____
6. I was very tired this morning. — _____

Answer with ***Neither . . . I***.

7. I can't go to the party. — _____
8. I didn't call Alex last night. — _____
9. I haven't eaten lunch yet. — _____
10. I'm not going out tonight. — _____
11. I don't know what to do. — _____

43.3 You are talking to Maria. Write sentences about yourself. Where possible, use ***So . . . I*** or ***Neither . . . I***. Look at these examples carefully:



Maria

I'm tired today. — You can answer: *So am I.* OR *I'm not.*

I don't work hard. — You can answer: *Neither do I.* OR *I do.*

You

1. I'm studying English. — _____
2. I can ride a bicycle. — _____
3. I'm not American. — _____
4. I like to cook. — _____
5. I don't like cold weather. — _____
6. I slept well last night. — _____
7. I've never been to India. — _____
8. I don't use my phone much. — _____
9. I'm going out tomorrow night. — _____
10. I wasn't sick last week. — _____
11. I didn't watch TV last night. — _____
12. I go to the movies a lot. — _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 44

isn't, haven't, don't, etc. (negatives)

A

We use **not** (**n't**) in negative sentences:

Positive	*Negative*
am	**am not** (**'m not**)
is	**is not** (**isn't** *or* **'s not**)
are	**are not** (**aren't** *or* **'re not**)
was	**was not** (**wasn't**)
were	**were not** (**weren't**)
have	**have not** (**haven't**)
has	**has not** (**hasn't**)
will	**will not** (**won't**)
can	**cannot** (**can't**)
could	**could not** (**couldn't**)
should	**should not** (**shouldn't**)
would	**would not** (**wouldn't**)
must	**must not**

- **I'm not** tired.
- It **isn't** (*or* It's **not**) raining.
- They **aren't** (*or* They**'re not**) here.
- Brian **wasn't** hungry.
- The stores **weren't** open.
- I **haven't** finished my work.
- Sue **hasn't** been to Mexico.
- We **won't** be here tomorrow.
- George **can't** drive.
- I **couldn't** sleep last night.
- You **shouldn't** work so hard.
- I **wouldn't** like to be an actor.
- They **must not** have a car.

B

don't / doesn't / didn't

Simple present negative	I/we/you/they	**do not (don't)**	**work/live/go**, etc.
	he/she/it	**does not (doesn't)**	
Simple past negative	I/they/he/she, etc.	**did not (didn't)**	

Positive		*Negative*
I **want** to go out.	→	I **don't want** to go out.
They **work** hard.	→	They **don't work** hard.
Liz **plays** the guitar.	→	Liz **doesn't play** the guitar.
My father **likes** his job.	→	My father **doesn't like** his job.
I **got** up early this morning.	→	I **didn't get** up early this morning.
They **worked** hard yesterday.	→	They **didn't work** hard yesterday.
We **played** tennis.	→	We **didn't play** tennis.
Diane **had** dinner with us.	→	Diane **didn't have** dinner with us.

Don't . . .

Look!	→	**Don't look!**
Wait for me.	→	**Don't wait** for me.

Sometimes **do** is the main verb (**don't do / doesn't do / didn't do**):

Do something!	→	**Don't do** anything!
Sue **does** a lot on weekends.	→	Sue **doesn't do** much on weekends.
I **did** what you said.	→	I **didn't do** what you said.

simple present negative → Unit 6 simple past negative → Unit 17 don't look / don't wait, etc. → Unit 37
Why isn't/don't . . . ? → Unit 45

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

44.1 Make these sentences negative.

1. He's gone out. *He hasn't gone out.*
2. They're married. _____
3. I've had dinner. _____
4. It's cold today. _____
5. We'll be late. _____
6. You should go. _____

44.2 Make these sentences negative. Use *don't/doesn't/didn't*.

1. She saw me. *She didn't see me.*
2. I like cheese. _____
3. They understood. _____
4. He lives here. _____
5. Go away! _____
6. I did the dishes. _____

44.3 Make these sentences negative.

1. She can swim. *She can't swim.*
2. They've arrived. _____
3. I went to the bank. _____
4. He speaks Japanese. _____
5. We were angry. _____
6. He'll be happy. _____
7. Call me tonight. _____
8. It rained yesterday. _____
9. I could hear them. _____
10. I believe you. _____

44.4 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (*isn't/haven't/don't*, etc.).

1. They aren't rich. They *don't* have much money.
2. "Would you like something to eat?" "No, thank you. I _____ hungry."
3. I _____ find my glasses. Have you seen them?
4. Steve _____ use e-mail much. He'd rather talk on the phone.
5. We can walk to the station from here. It _____ very far.
6. "Where's Jane?" "I _____ know. I _____ seen her today."
7. Be careful! _____ fall!
8. We went to the movies last night. I _____ like the movie very much.
9. I've been to Japan many times, but I _____ been to South Korea.
10. Julia _____ be here tomorrow. She'll be out of town.
11. "Who broke that window?" "Not me. I _____ do it."
12. We didn't see what happened. We _____ looking at the time.
13. Lisa bought a new coat a few days ago, but she _____ worn it yet.
14. You _____ drive so fast. It's dangerous.

44.5 You ask Gary some questions. He answers "Yes" or "No." Write sentences about Gary, positive or negative.



You		Gary
Are you married?	No.	1. *He isn't married.*
Do you live in Los Angeles?	Yes.	2. *He lives in Los Angeles.*
Were you born in Los Angeles?	No.	3. _____
Do you like Los Angeles?	No.	4. _____
Would you like to live someplace else?	Yes.	5. _____
Can you drive?	Yes.	6. _____
Have you traveled abroad?	No.	7. _____
Do you read the newspaper?	No.	8. _____
Are you interested in politics?	No.	9. _____
Do you usually watch TV at night?	Yes.	10. _____
Did you watch TV last night?	No.	11. _____
Did you go out last night?	Yes.	12. _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 45

is it . . . ? have you . . . ? do they . . . ?, etc. (questions 1)

A

Positive	you	are	**You are** eating.
Question	are	you	**Are you** eating? What **are you** eating?

In questions, the first verb (**is/are/have**, etc.) is before the subject:

Postive *subject + verb*			*Question* *verb + subject*	
I	**am** late.	→	**Am**	**I** late?
That seat	**is** free.	→	**Is**	**that seat** free?
She	**was** angry.	→	Why **was**	**she** angry?
David	**has** gone.	→	Where **has**	**David** gone?
You	**have** been to Japan.	→	**Have**	**you** been to Japan?
They	**will** be here soon.	→	When **will**	**they** be here?
Paula	**can** swim.	→	**Can**	**Paula** swim?

Remember: the subject is after the first verb.

- Where **has David** gone? (*not* Where has gone David?)
- **Are those people** waiting for something? (*not* Are waiting . . . ?)
- When **was the telephone** invented? (*not* When was invented . . . ?)

B

do . . . ? / does . . . ? / did . . . ?

Simple present questions	**do**	I/we/you/they	**work/live/go**, etc. . . . ?
	does	he/she/it	
Simple past questions	**did**	I/they/he/she, etc.	

Positive		*Question*
They **work** hard.	→	**Do** they **work** hard?
You **watch** television.	→	How often **do** you **watch** television?
Chris **has** a car.	→	**Does** Chris **have** a car?
She **gets up** early.	→	What time **does** she **get** up?
They **worked** hard.	→	**Did** they **work** hard?
You **had** dinner.	→	What **did** you **have** for dinner?
She **got** up early.	→	What time **did** she **get** up?

Sometimes **do** is the main verb (do you **do** / did he **do**, etc.):

- What **do** you usually **do** on weekends?
- "What **does** your brother **do**?" "He works in a bank."
- "I broke my finger last week." "How **did** you **do** that?" (*not* How did you that?)

C

Why isn't . . . ? / Why don't . . . ?, etc. (**Why** + *negative*):

- Where's John? **Why isn't he** here? (*not* Why he isn't here?)
- **Why can't Paula** come to the meeting tomorrow? (*not* Why Paula can't . . . ?)
- **Why didn't you** call me last night?

simple present questions → Unit 7 simple past questions → Unit 12 questions 2–3 → Units 46–47
what/which/how → Units 48–49

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

45.1 Write questions.

1. I can swim. (and you?) *Can you swim?*
2. I work hard. (and Jack?) *Does Jack work hard?*
3. I was late this morning. (and you?)
4. I've seen that movie. (and Kate?)
5. I'll be here tomorrow. (and you?)
6. I'm going out tonight. (and Paul?)
7. I like my job. (and you?)
8. I live near here. (and Nicole?)
9. I enjoyed the movie. (and you?)
10. I had a good vacation. (and you?)

45.2 You are talking to a friend about driving. Write the full questions.



You

1. (have / a car?) *Do you have a car?*
2. (use / a lot?) _____ it
3. (use / yesterday?)
4. (enjoy driving?)
5. (a good driver?)
6. (ever / have / an accident?)

Yes, I do.
Yes, almost every day.
Yes, to go to work.
Not very much.
I think I am.
No, never.

45.3 Make questions with these words. Put the words in the right order.

1. (has / gone / where / David?) *Where has David gone?*
2. (working / Rachel / is / today?) *Is Rachel working today?*
3. (the children / what / are / doing?) What
4. (made / is / how / cheese?)
5. (to the party / coming / is / your sister?)
6. (you / the truth / tell / don't / why?)
7. (your guests / have / yet / arrived?)
8. (leave / what time / your plane / does?)
9. (to work / Jenny / why / go / didn't?)
10. (your car / in the accident / was / damaged?)

45.4 Complete the questions.

1. I want to go out. Where *do you want to go?*
2. Kate and Paul aren't going to the party. Why *aren't they going?*
3. I'm reading. What
4. Sue went to bed early. What time
5. My parents are going on vacation. When
6. I saw Tom a few days ago. Where
7. I can't come to the party. Why
8. Tina has moved. Where
9. I need some money. How much
10. Angela doesn't like me. Why
11. It rains sometimes. How often
12. I did the shopping. When

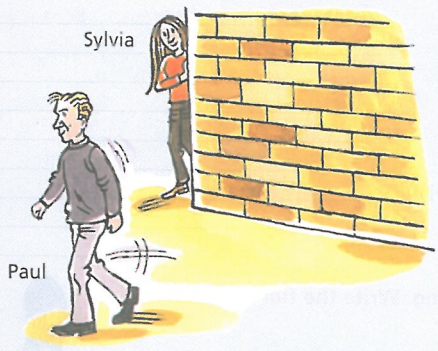
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 46

Who saw you? Who did you see? (questions 2)

A



Sylvia saw Paul.

Who **saw** Paul?
Sylvia. (Sylvia saw him.)

Who **did** Sylvia **see**?
Paul. (She saw Paul.)

Sylvia saw Paul

Subject

Somebody saw Paul.

Who saw Paul?
Sylvia. (Sylvia saw him.)
who is the *subject*
Paul is the *object*

Object

Sylvia saw somebody.

Who did Sylvia see?
Paul. (She saw Paul.)
who is the *object*
Sylvia is the *subject*

B

In these questions, **who/what** is the *subject*:

- **Who lives** in this house? (= somebody lives in it – who?)
  (*not* Who does live?)
- **What happened**? (= something happened – what?)
  (*not* What did happen?)
- **What's happening**? (What's = What **is**)
- **Who's got** my keys? (Who's = Who **has**)

In these questions, **who/what** is the *object*:

- Who did **you** meet yesterday? (= **you** met somebody – who?)
- What did **Paul** say? (= **Paul** said something – what?)
- Who are **you** calling?
- What was **Sylvia** wearing?

Compare:

- George likes oranges. → **Who likes** oranges? – George.
  What does George like? – Oranges.
- Jane won a new car. → **Who won** a new car? – Jane.
  What did Jane win? – A new car.

C

Use **who** for people (somebody). Use **what** for things, ideas, etc. (something):

- **Who** is your favorite **singer**?
- **What** is your favorite **song**?

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

questions → Units 45–47 what/which/how → Unit 48

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

46.1 Make questions with ***who*** or ***what***. In these questions, ***who/what*** is the subject.

1. Somebody broke the window.
2. Something fell off the shelf.
3. Somebody wants to see you.
4. Somebody took my umbrella.
5. Something made me sick.
6. Somebody is coming.

Who broke the window?
What _____
_____ me?

46.2 Make questions with ***who*** or ***what*** (subject or object).

1. I bought something.
2. Somebody lives in this house.
3. I called somebody.
4. Something happened last night.
5. Somebody knows the answer.
6. Somebody did the dishes.
7. Jane did something.
8. Something woke me up.
9. Somebody saw the accident.
10. I saw somebody.
11. Somebody has my pen.
12. This word means something.

What did you buy?
Who lives in this house?

46.3 You want the missing information (**XXXXX**). Write questions with ***who*** or ***what***.

1. I lost **XXXXX** yesterday, but fortunately **XXXXX** found it and gave it back to me.
2. **XXXXX** called me last night. She wanted **XXXXX**.
3. I needed some advice, so I asked **XXXXX**. He said **XXXXX**.
4. I hear that **XXXXX** got married last week. **XXXXX** told me.
5. I met **XXXXX** on my way home tonight. She told me **XXXXX**.
6. Steve and I played tennis yesterday. **XXXXX** won. After the game, we **XXXXX**.
7. It was my birthday last week and I got some presents. **XXXXX** gave me a book, and Catherine gave me **XXXXX**.

What did you lose?
Who found it?
Who _____
What _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 47

Who is she talking to? What is it like? (questions 3)

A



Julia

Julia is talking to somebody.

Who is she talking to?

In questions beginning **Who** . . . ? / **What** . . . ? / **Where** . . . ? / **Which** . . . ?, prepositions (**to**/**from**/**with**, etc.) usually go at the end:

- "**Where** are you **from**?" "I'm from Thailand."
- "Jack was afraid." "**What** was he afraid **of**?"
- "**Who** do these books belong **to**?" "They're mine."
- "Tom's father is in the hospital." "**Which hospital** is he **in**?"
- "Kate is going on vacation." "**Who with**?" / "**Who** is she going **with**?"
- "Can we talk?" "Sure. **What** do you want to talk **about**?"

B

What's it like? / What are they like?, etc.



What's it like? = What **is** it like?

What's it like? = tell me something about it – is it good or bad, big or small, old or new, etc.?

When we say "**What is it like?**," **like** is a *preposition*. It is not the verb **like** (**Do** you **like** your new house?).

- *A:* There's a new restaurant near my house.
  B: **What's** it **like**? Is it good?
  A: I don't know. I haven't eaten there yet.
- *A:* **What's** your new teacher **like**?
  B: She's very good. We learn a lot.
- *A:* I met Nicole's parents yesterday.
  B: You did? **What** are they **like**?
  A: They're very nice.
- *A:* Did you have a good vacation? **What** was the weather **like**?
  B: It was great. It was sunny every day.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

47.1 You want the missing information (XXXXX). Write questions with ***who*** or ***what***.

1. The letter is from **XXXXX**. — *Who is the letter from?*
2. I'm looking for a **XXXXX**. — What _____ you _____?
3. I went to the movies with **XXXXX**. — _____?
4. The movie was about **XXXXX**. — _____?
5. I gave the money to **XXXXX**. — _____?
6. The book was written by **XXXXX**. — _____?

47.2 Write questions about the people in the pictures. Use these verbs + a preposition:

go listen look ~~talk~~ talk wait



1. *Who is she talking to?*
2. What _____?
3. Which restaurant _____?
4. What _____?
5. What _____?
6. Which bus _____?

47.3 Write questions with ***Which . . . ?***

1. Tom's father is in the hospital. — *Which hospital is he in?*
2. We stayed at a hotel. — _____ you _____?
3. Jack plays for a football team. — _____?
4. I went to school in this town. — _____?

47.4 You want some information about another country. You ask somebody who has been there. Ask questions with ***What is/are . . . like?***

1. (the roads) *What are the roads like?*
2. (the food) _____?
3. (the people) _____?
4. (the weather) _____?

47.5 Ask questions with ***What was/were . . . like?***

1. Your friend has just come back from a trip. Ask about the weather.
   What was the weather like?
2. Your friend has just come back from the movies. Ask about the movie.
   _____?
3. Your friend has just finished a computer course. Ask about the classes.
   _____?
4. Your friend has just come back from a business trip. Ask about the hotel.
   _____?

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 48

What . . . ? Which . . . ? How . . . ? (questions 4)

A

What + *noun* (**What color** . . . ? / **What kind** . . . ?, etc.)

- **What color** is your car?
- **What size** is this shirt?
- **What time** is it?
- **What kind** of job do you want? (*or* **What type** of job . . . ? / **What sort** of job . . . ?)

What color are your eyes?
What nationality is she?
What day is it today?

What without a noun:

- **What's** your favorite color?
- **What** do you want to do tonight?

B

Which + *noun* (things or people):

- **Which train** did you catch – the 9:50 or the 10:30?
- **Which doctor** did you see – Doctor Lopez, Doctor Gray, or Doctor Hill?

We use **which** without a noun for things, not people:

- **Which** is bigger – Canada or Australia?

We use **who** for people (without a noun):

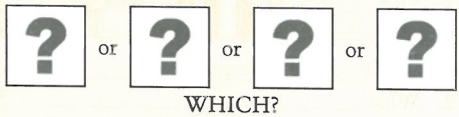
- **Who** is taller – Joe or Gary? (*not* Which is taller?)

C

What or **which**?

We use **which** when we are thinking about a small number of possibilities (perhaps 2, 3, or 4):

- We can go this way or that way.
  Which way should we go?
- There are four umbrellas here.
  Which is yours?



WHICH?

What is more general:

- **What's** the capital of Argentina? (of all the cities in Argentina)
- **What kind** of music do you like? (of all kinds of music)

Compare:

- **What color** are his eyes? (*not* Which color?)
  Which color do you prefer, **pink or yellow**?
- **What** is the longest river in the world?
  Which is the longest river – **the Mississippi, the Amazon, or the Nile**?

D

How . . . ?

- "**How** was the party last night?" "It was great."
- "**How** do you get to work?" "By bus."

You can use **how** + *adjective/adverb* (**how tall** / **how old** / **how often**, etc.):

"How	**tall** are you?" "I'm five feet 10." (5 feet 10 inches *or* 1.78 meters) **big** is the house?" "Not very big." **old** is your mother?" "She's 45." **far** is it from here to the airport?" "Ten miles." (about 16 kilometers) **often** do you use your car?" "Every day." **long** have they been married?" "Ten years." **much** was the taxi?" "Ten dollars."

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

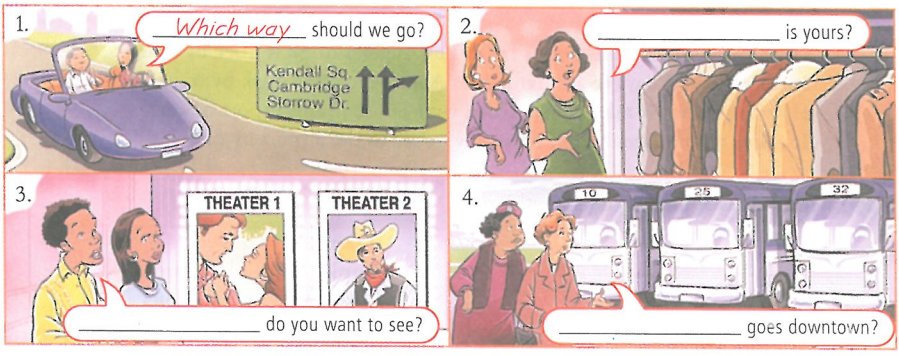
مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

48.1 Write questions with *What . . . ?*

1.	This shirt is nice.	(size?) *What size is it?*
2.	I want a job.	(kind?) *What kind of job do you want?*
3.	I have a new sweater.	(color?) What _____
4.	I got up early this morning.	(time?) _____ get up?
5.	I like music.	(type?) _____
6.	I want to buy a car.	(kind?) _____

48.2 Complete the questions. Use *Which . . . ?*



48.3 Write *What*/*Which*/*Who*.

1. *What* is that man's name?
2. *Which* way should we go? Left or right?
3. You can have tea or coffee. _____ do you prefer?
4. "_____ day is it today?" "Friday."
5. _____ is your favorite sport?
6. This is a nice office. _____ desk is yours?
7. _____ is more expensive, meat or fish?
8. _____ is older, Liz or Steve?
9. _____ kind of camera do you have?
10. *A:* I've got three cameras.
    B: _____ camera do you use most?

48.4 Complete the questions with *How* + adjective or adverb (*high*/*long*, etc.).

1.	*How high* is Mount Everest?	Over 29,000 feet.
2.	_____ is it to the station?	Almost two miles.
3.	_____ is Helen?	She's 26.
4.	_____ do the buses run?	Every 10 minutes.
5.	_____ is the water in the pool?	Seven feet.
6.	_____ have you lived here?	Almost three years.

48.5 Write questions with *How . . . ?*

1. Are you five feet nine? Five feet 10? Five feet 11? *How tall are you?*
2. Is this box one kilogram? Two? Three? _____
3. Are you 20 years old? 22? 25? _____
4. Did you spend $20? $30? $50? _____
5. Do you watch TV every day? Once a week? Never? _____
6. Is it 2,000 miles from New York to Los Angeles? 2,500? 3,000? _____

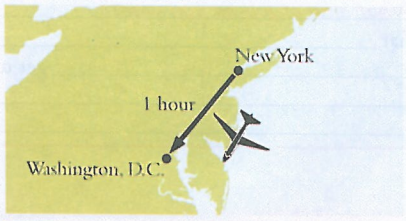
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 49

How long does it take . . . ?

A How long does it take to get from . . . to . . . ?



How long **does it take to get** from New York to Washington, D.C., by plane?
It takes an hour.

- How long **does it take to get from** Los Angeles to New York by train?
- **It takes** several days **to get from** Los Angeles to New York by train.
- How long **does it take to get from** your house to the airport by car?
- **It takes** ten minutes **to get from** my house to the airport by car.

B How long does it take to do something?

How long	does did will	it take to . . . ?

It	takes took will take		a week a long time three hours	to . . .
	doesn't didn't won't	take	long	

- How long **does it take to cross** the Atlantic by ship?
- "I came by train." "You did? How long **did it take (to get** here)?"
- How long **will it take to get** from here to the hotel?

- **It takes** a long time **to learn** a language.
- **It doesn't take** long **to make** an omelet.
- **It won't take** long **to fix** the computer.

C How long does it take you to do something?



I started reading the book on Monday.
I finished it on Wednesday evening.
It **took me** three days **to read** it.

How long	does did will	it take	you Tom them	to . . . ?

It	takes took will take	me Tom them	a week a long time three hours	to . . .

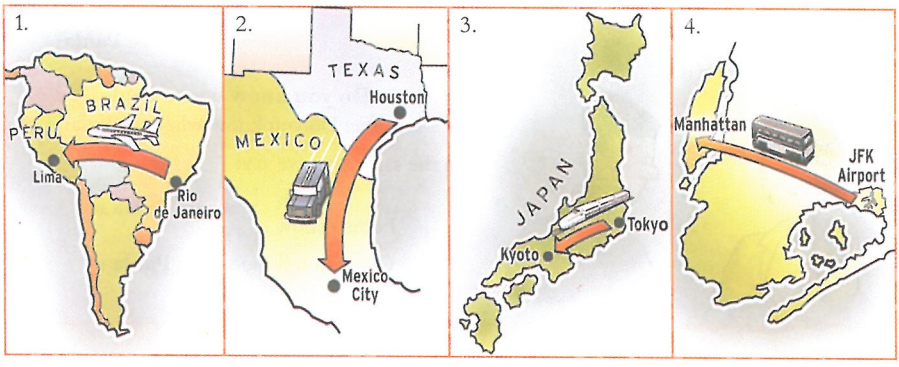
- How long **will it take me to learn** to drive?
- **It takes Tom** 20 minutes **to get** to work in the morning.
- **It took us** an hour **to do** the shopping.
- **Did it take you** a long time **to find** a job?
- **It will take me** an hour **to cook** dinner.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

49.1 Look at the pictures and write questions with ***How long . . . ?***



1. *How long does it take to get from Rio de Janeiro to Lima by plane?*
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____

49.2 How long does it take to do these things? Write full sentences.

1. fly from your city/country to Los Angeles
   It takes about 11 hours to fly from Seoul to Los Angeles.
2. fly from your city/country to Australia
   _____
3. become a doctor in your country
   _____
4. walk from your home to the nearest supermarket
   _____
5. get from your house to the nearest airport
   _____

49.3 Write questions with ***How long did it take . . . ?***

1. (Jane found a job.) *How long did it take her to find a job?*
2. (I walked to the station.) _____ you _____
3. (Tom painted the bathroom.) _____
4. (I learned to ski.) _____
5. (They repaired the computer.) _____

49.4 Read the situations and write sentences with ***It took . . . .***

1. I read a book last week. I started reading it on Monday. I finished it three days later.
   It took me three days to read the book.
2. We walked home last night. We left at 10:00, and we got home at 10:20.
   _____
3. I learned to drive last year. I had my first driving lesson in January. I passed my driving test six months later.
   _____
4. Mark drove to Houston yesterday. He left home at 7:00 and got to Houston at 10:00.
   _____
5. Lisa began looking for a job a long time ago. She got a job last week.
   _____
6. *Write a sentence about yourself.*
   _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 50 Do you know where . . . ? I don't know what . . . , etc.

A



We say: Where **is Paula**?

but **Do you know** where **Paula is** ?
(*not* Do you know where is Paula?)

In the same way we say:

I know / I don't know } where **Paula is**.

Can you tell me where **Paula is**?

Compare:

Who **are those people**?
How old **is Nicole**?
What time **is it**?
Where **can I** go?
How much **is this camera**?
When **are you** leaving town?
Where **have they** gone?
What **was Jenny** wearing?

but

Do you know / **Can you tell me**	who **those people are**	?
	how old **Nicole is**	
	what time **it is**	
	where **I can** go	
I know / **I don't know** / **I don't remember**	how much **this camera is**	.
	when **you're** leaving town	
	where **they have** gone	
	what **Jenny was** wearing	

B

Questions with **do/does/did** *(simple present and simple past)*

Where **does he live** ?

but **Do you know** where **he lives** ? (*not* Do you know where does he live?)

Compare:

How **do airplanes** fly?
What **does Jane** want?
Why **did she** go home?
Where **did I** put the key?

but

Do you know	how **airplanes fly**	?
I don't know	what **Jane wants**	.
I don't remember	why **she went** home	
I know	where **I put** the key	

C

Questions beginning **Is . . . ? / Do . . . ? / Can . . . ?**, etc. (yes/no questions)

Compare:

Is Jack at home?
Have they got a car?
Can Brian swim?
Do they live near here?
Did anybody see you?

but

Do you know	**if** *or* **whether**	**Jack is** at home	?
		they've got a car	
I don't know		**Brian can** swim	.
		they live near here	
		anybody saw you	

You can use **if** *or* **whether** in these sentences:

- Do you know **if** they've got a car? *or* Do you know **whether** they've got a car?
- I don't know **if** anybody saw me. *or* I don't know **whether** anybody saw me.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

50.1 Answer these questions with ***I don't know where/when/why . . .***, etc.

1.	Have your friends gone home?	(where) *I don't know where they've gone*
2.	Is Sue in her office?	(where) I don't know _____
3.	Is the building very old?	(how old) _____
4.	Will Paul be here soon?	(when) _____
5.	Was he angry because I was late?	(why) _____
6.	Has Donna lived here a long time?	(how long) _____

50.2 Complete the sentences.

1. (How do airplanes fly?) Do you know *how airplanes fly* ?
2. (Where does Susan work?) I don't know _____ .
3. (What did Peter say?) Do you remember _____ ?
4. (Why did he go home early?) I don't know _____ .
5. (What time does the meeting begin?) Do you know _____ ?
6. (How did the accident happen?) I don't remember _____ .

50.3 Which is right?

1. Do you know what time ~~is it /~~ it is? (*it is* is right)
2. Why are you / you are leaving?
3. I don't know where are they / they are going.
4. Can you tell me where is the museum / the museum is?
5. Where do you want / you want to go for vacation?
6. Do you know what do elephants eat / elephants eat?
7. I don't know how far is it / it is from the hotel to the station.

50.4 Write questions with ***Do you know if . . . ?***

1. (Do they have a car?) *Do you know if they have a car?*
2. (Are they married?) Do you know _____
3. (Does Sue know Bill?) _____
4. (Will Gary be here tomorrow?) _____
5. (Did he pass his exam?) _____

50.5 Write questions beginning ***Do you know . . . ?***

1. (What does Laura want?) *Do you know what Laura wants?*
2. (Where is Paula?) Do _____
3. (Is she working today?) _____
4. (What time does she start work?) _____
5. (Are the banks open tomorrow?) _____
6. (Where do Sarah and Tim live?) _____
7. (Did they go to Jane's party?) _____

50.6 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. Do you know why *the bus was late* ?
2. Do you know what time _____ ?
3. Excuse me, can you tell me where _____ ?
4. I don't know what _____ .
5. Do you know if _____ ?
6. Do you know how much _____ ?

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 51

She said that . . . He told me that . . .

A

Last week you went to a party. A lot of your friends were there. Here are some things they said to you:

Today you meet Paul. You tell him about the party. You tell Paul what your friends said:







		Present		Past	
Diane	I'm enjoying my job. / My father isn't very happy.	am / is	→	was	■ Diane said that **she was** enjoying her new job. ■ She said that **her father wasn't** very happy.
Sarah, Tim	We're going to buy a house.	are	→	were	■ Sarah and Tim said that **they were** going to buy a house.
Peter	I have to leave early. / My sister has gone to Australia.	have / has	→	had	■ Peter said that **he had** to leave early. ■ He said that **his sister had** gone to Australia.
Kate	I can't find a job.	can	→	could	■ Kate said that **she couldn't** find a job.
Steve	I'll call you.	will	→	would	■ Steve said that **he would** call me.
Rachel	I don't like my job. / My son doesn't like school.	do / does	→	did	■ Rachel said that **she didn't** like her job. ■ She said that **her son didn't** like school.
Mike	You look tired. / I feel fine.	look / feel / etc.	→	looked / felt / etc.	■ Mike said that **I looked** tired. ■ I said that **I felt** fine.









B

say and **tell**

say (→ said)	tell (→ told)
■ He **said** that he was tired. (*not* He said me)	■ He **told me** that he was tired. (*not* He told that)
■ What did she **say to** you? (*not* say you)	■ What did she **tell you**? (*not* tell to you)
We say **he said to me, I said to Ann**, etc. *but not* "he said me," "I said Ann."	We say **he told me, I told Ann**, etc. *but not* "he told to me," "I told to Ann."

C

You can say:

- He said **that** he was tired. *or* He said he was tired. (*without* that)
- Kate told me **that** she couldn't find a job. *or* Kate told me she couldn't find a job.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

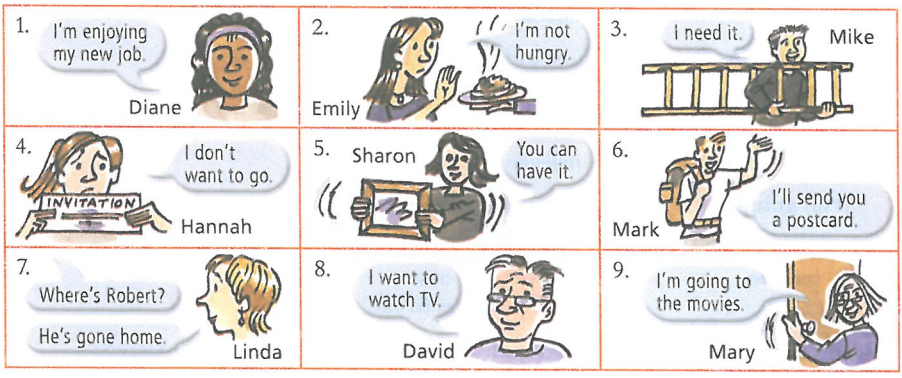
مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

51.1 Read what these people say and write sentences with *He/She/They said (that)* . . . .

1.  I've lost my watch.
   He said he had lost his watch.
2.  I'm very busy.
3.  I can't go to the party.
4.  I have to go out.
5.  I'm learning Russian.
6.  I don't feel very well.
7.  We'll be home late.
8.  I've just gotten back from vacation.
9.  I'm going to buy a new computer.
10.  We don't have a key.

51.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences.



1. I met Diane last week. She said *she was enjoying her new job*.
2. Emily didn't want anything to eat. She said _____.
3. I wanted to borrow Mike's ladder, but he said _____.
4. Hannah was invited to the party, but she said _____.
5. Sharon told me she didn't want the picture. She said _____.
6. Mark just left on vacation. He said _____.
7. I was looking for Robert. Linda said _____.
8. "Why did David stay at home?" "He said _____."
9. "Has Mary gone out?" "I think so. She said _____."

51.3 Write *say/said* or *tell/told*.

1. He *said* he was tired.
2. What did she *tell* you?
3. Anna _____ she didn't like Peter.
4. Jack _____ me that you were sick.
5. Please don't _____ Dan what happened.
6. Did Lucy _____ she would be late?
7. The woman _____ she was a reporter.
8. The woman _____ us she was a reporter.
9. They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't _____ them anything.
10. They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't _____ anything.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 52 work/working go/going do/doing

A Work/go/be, etc. *(base form)*

We use the base form with **will/can/must**, etc.:

will	Anna **will be** here soon.	→ Units 28–29
shall	**Shall I open** the window?	
might	I **might call** you later.	→ Unit 30
may	**May** I **sit** here?	
can	I **can't meet** you tomorrow.	→ Unit 31
could	**Could** you **pass** the salt, please?	
must	It's late. You **must be** tired.	→ Unit 32
should	You **shouldn't work** so hard.	→ Unit 33
would	**Would** you **like** some coffee?	→ Unit 35

We use the base form with **do/does/did**:

do/does *(simple present)*	**Do** you **work**?	→ Units 6–7
	They **don't work** very hard.	
	Helen **doesn't know** many people.	
	How much **does** it **cost**?	
did *(simple past)*	What time **did** the train **leave**?	→ Unit 12
	We **didn't sleep** well.	

B to work / to go / to be, etc. *(infinitive)*

(I'm) **going to** . . .	**I'm going to play** tennis tomorrow.	→ Unit 27
	What **are** you **going to do**?	
(I) **have to** . . .	I **have to go** now.	→ Unit 34
	Everybody **has to eat**.	
(I) **want to** . . .	Do you **want to go** out?	→ Unit 53
	They don't **want to come** with us.	
(I) **would like to** . . .	**I'd like to talk** to you.	→ Unit 35
	Would you **like to go** out?	
(I) **used to** . . .	Dave **used to work** in a factory.	→ Unit 15

C working/going/playing, etc.

am/is/are + -ing *(present continuous)*	Please be quiet. **I'm working**.	→ Units 3–4, 8, 26
	Tom **isn't working** today.	
	What time **are** you **going** out?	
was/were + -ing *(past continuous)*	It **was raining**, so we didn't go out.	→ Units 13–14
	What **were** you **doing** when the phone rang?	

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین آرشیو دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

52.1 Complete the sentences. Write: . . . ***call Paul*** or . . . ***to call Paul***.

1. I'll *call Paul* .
2. I'm going *to call Paul* .
3. Can you _____ Paul?
4. Shall I _____ ?
5. I'd like _____ .
6. Do you have _____ ?
7. You should _____ .
8. I want _____ .
9. I might _____ .
10. Could you _____ ?

52.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box. Sometimes you need the base form (***work/go***, etc.) and sometimes you need ***-ing*** (***working/going***, etc.).

do/doing	**eat/eating**	**fly/flying**	**get/getting**
go/going	**listen/listening**	~~**sleep/sleeping**~~	**stay/staying**
wait/waiting	**watch/watching**	**wear/wearing**	~~**work/working**~~

1. Please be quiet. I'm *working* .
2. I feel tired today. I didn't *sleep* very well last night.
3. What time do you usually _____ up in the morning?
4. "Where are you _____ ?" "To the bank."
5. Did you _____ television last night?
6. Look at that plane! It's _____ very low.
7. You can turn off the radio. I'm not _____ to it.
8. They didn't _____ anything because they weren't hungry.
9. My friends were _____ for me when I arrived.
10. "Does Susan always _____ glasses?" "No, only for reading."
11. "What are you _____ tonight?" "I'm _____ home."

52.3 Put the verb in the correct form. Choose from:

the base form (*work/go*, etc.) or
the infinitive (*to work/to go*, etc.) or
***-ing* (*working/going*, etc.)**

1. Should I *open* the window? (open)
2. It's late. I have *to go* now. (go)
3. Amanda isn't *working* this week. She's on vacation. (work)
4. I'm tired. I don't want _____ out. (go)
5. It might _____ , so take an umbrella with you. (rain)
6. What time do you have _____ tomorrow morning? (leave)
7. I'm sorry I can't _____ you. (help)
8. My brother is a student. He's _____ physics. (study)
9. Would you like _____ on a trip around the world? (go)
10. When you saw Maria, what was she _____ ? (wear)
11. When you go to London, where are you going _____ ? (stay)
12. "Where's Gary?" "He's _____ a bath." (take)
13. I used _____ a car, but I sold it last year. (have)
14. He spoke very quietly. I couldn't _____ him. (hear)
15. You don't look well. I don't think you should _____ to work today. (go)
16. I don't know what he said. I wasn't _____ to him. (listen)
17. I'm sorry I'm late. I had _____ a phone call. (make)
18. I want _____ a doctor. (be) Medical students must _____ courses in biology and chemistry. (take)
19. May I please _____ your phone? (use)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 53 to . . . (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)

A

verbs + **to . . . (I want to do)**

want	**plan**	**decide**	**try**
hope	**expect**	**offer**	**forget**
need	**promise**	**refuse**	**learn**

+ **to . . . (to do / to work / to be**, etc.)

- What do you **want to do** tonight?
- It's not very late. We don't **need to go** home yet.
- Tina has **decided to sell** her car.
- You **forgot to turn** off the light when you went out.
- My brother is **learning to drive**.
- I **tried to read** my book, but I was too tired.

B

verbs + **-ing (I enjoy doing)**

enjoy	**stop**	**suggest**
mind	**finish**	

+ **-ing (doing/working/being**, etc.)

- I don't **mind getting** up early.
- Has it **stopped raining**?
- Sonia **suggested going** to the movies.

C

verbs + **-ing** *or* **to . . .**

like	**love**	**start**	**continue**
prefer	**hate**	**begin**	

+ **-ing (doing**, etc.) *or* **to . . . (to do**, etc.)

- Do you **like getting** up early? *or* Do you **like to get** up early?
- I **prefer traveling** by car. *or* I **prefer to travel** by car.
- I **hate being** late. *or* I **hate to be** late.
- It **started raining**. *or* It **started to rain**.

D

would like to . . ., etc.

would like	**would** love
would prefer	**would** hate

+ **to . . . (to do / to work / to be**, etc.)

- Julia **would like to meet** you.
- **I'd love to go** to Australia. (**I'd** = I **would**)
- "**Would** you **like to sit** down?" "No, **I'd prefer to stand**, thank you."
- I like this city very much. I **wouldn't like to move**.
- **I'd hate to lose** my cell phone.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

53.1 Put the verb in the right form, *to* . . . or *-ing*.

1. What do you want *to do* tonight? (do)
2. Good-bye! I hope _____ you again soon. (see)
3. I learned _____ when I was five years old. (swim)
4. Have you finished _____ the kitchen? (clean)
5. Where's Anna? I need _____ her something. (ask)
6. Do you enjoy _____ other countries? (visit)
7. The weather was nice, so I suggested _____ for a walk by the river. (go)
8. Where's Bill? He promised _____ here on time. (be)
9. I'm not in a hurry. I don't mind _____ . (wait)
10. What have you decided _____ ? (do)
11. Gary was very angry and refused _____ to me. (speak)
12. I'm tired. I want _____ to bed. (go)
13. I was very upset and started _____ . (cry)
14. I'm trying _____ . (work) Please stop _____ . (talk)

53.2 Complete the sentences using *to* . . . or *-ing*. Use these verbs:

go go help lose rain read see send wait watch

1. "Have you ever been to Australia?" "No, but I'd love *to go* ."
2. Jane had a lot to do, so I offered _____ her.
3. I'm surprised that you're here. I didn't expect _____ you.
4. Nicole has a lot of books. She enjoys _____ .
5. This ring was my grandmother's. I'd hate _____ it.
6. Don't forget _____ us a postcard when you're on vacation.
7. I'm not going out until it stops _____ .
8. What should we do this afternoon? Would you like _____ to the beach?
9. When I'm tired in the evening, I like _____ television.
10. "Do you want to go now?" "No, I'd prefer _____ a few minutes."

53.3 Complete the answers to the questions.





1.	Do you usually get up early?	Yes, I like *to get up early* .
2.	Do you ever go to museums?	Yes, I love _____ .
3.	Would you like to go to a museum now?	No, I'm hungry. I'd prefer _____ to a restaurant.
4.	Do you write e-mails often?	No, I don't like _____ .
5.	Have you ever been to Rome?	No, but I'd love _____ one day.
6.	Do you ever travel by train?	Yes, I enjoy _____ .
7.	Do you want to walk home or take a taxi?	I don't mind _____ , but a taxi would be quicker.

53.4 Complete these sentences. Write about yourself. Use *to* . . . or *-ing*.

1. I enjoy _____
2. I don't like _____
3. If it's a nice day tomorrow, I'd like _____
4. When I'm on vacation, I like _____
5. I don't mind _____ , but _____
6. I wouldn't like _____

→ Additional exercise 32 (page 260)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 54

I want you to . . . I told you to . . .

A I want you to



The woman **wants to leave**.
The man **doesn't want** the woman to leave.
He **wants** her **to stay**.

We say:

I want	**you** **somebody** **Sarah**	**to do** something

- I **want you to be** happy. (*not* I want that you are happy)
- They didn't **want anybody to know** their secret.
- Do you **want me to lend** you some money?

We use **would like** in the same way:

- **Would** you **like me to lend** you some money?

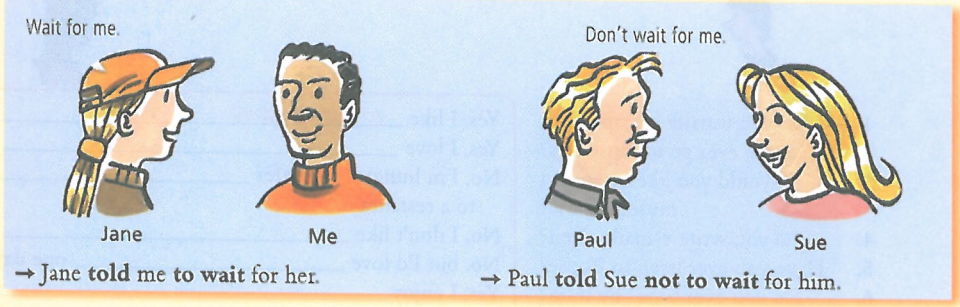
B

We also use this structure (*verb* + somebody + **to** . . .) with:

ask
tell
advise
expect
persuade
teach

	verb	+	somebody +	**to** . . .	
Sue	**asked**		a friend	**to lend**	her some money.
I	**told**		you	**to be**	careful.
What do you	**advise**		me	**to do?**	
I didn't	**expect**		them	**to be**	here.
We	**persuaded**		Gary	**to come**	with us.
I	**am teaching**		my brother	**to swim.**	

C I told you to . . . / I told you not to . . .



D make and let

After **make** and **let**, we do *not* use **to**:

- He's very funny. He **makes** me **laugh**. (*not* makes me to laugh)
- At school our teacher **made** us **work** very hard.
- Sue **let** me **use** her computer because mine wasn't working. (*not* let me to use)

You can say **Let's** . . . (= **Let us**) when you want people to do things with you:

- Are you ready? **Let's go**.
- "Do you want to go out tonight?" "No, I'm tired. **Let's stay** home."

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

Let's . . . → Unit 37 He told me that . . . → Unit 37

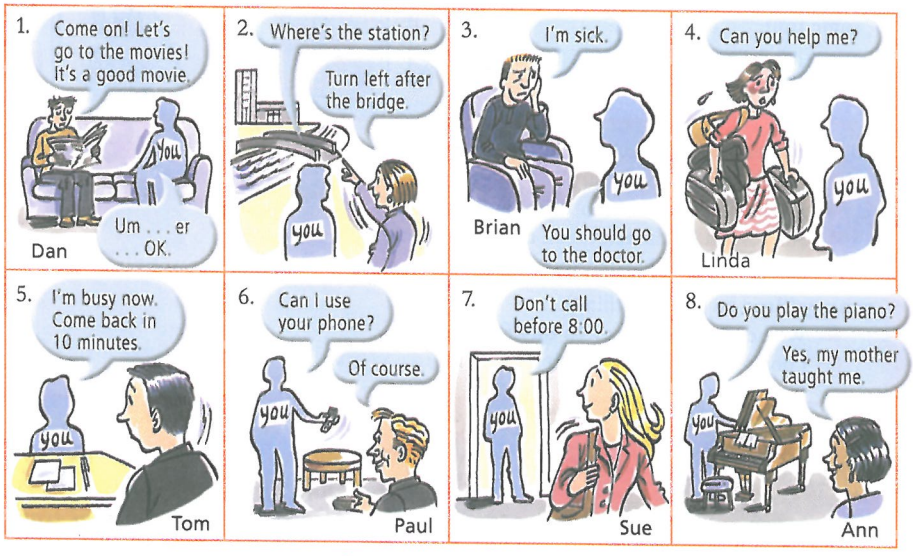
مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

54.1 Write sentences beginning ***I want you . . . / I don't want you . . . / Do you want me . . . ?***

1. (you have to come with me) *I want you to come with me.*
2. (listen carefully) I want _____
3. (please don't be angry) I don't _____
4. (should I wait for you?) Do you _____
5. (don't call me tonight) _____
6. (you should meet Sarah) _____

54.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



1. Dan persuaded *me to go to the movies.*
2. I wanted to get to the station. A woman told _____
3. Brian was sick. I advised _____
4. Linda had a lot of luggage. She asked _____
5. I was too busy to talk to Tom. I told _____
6. I wanted to make a phone call. Paul let _____
7. Sue is going to call me later. I told _____
8. Ann's mother taught _____

54.3 Complete these sentences with the verbs in the list. Sometimes ***to*** is necessary (***to go / to wait***, etc.); sometimes ***to*** is not necessary (***go/wait***, etc.).

arrive borrow get go ~~leave~~ make repeat tell think wait

1. Please stay here. I don't want you *to leave* yet.
2. I didn't hear what she said, so I asked her _____ it.
3. "Should we begin?" "No, let's _____ a few minutes."
4. Are they already here? I expected them _____ much later.
5. Kevin's parents didn't want him _____ married.
6. I want to stay here. You can't make me _____ with you.
7. "Is that your bicycle?" "No, it's John's. He let me _____ it."
8. Rachel can't come to the party. She told me _____ you.
9. Would you like something to drink? Would you like me _____ some coffee?
10. "Kate doesn't like me." "What makes you _____ that?"

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 55

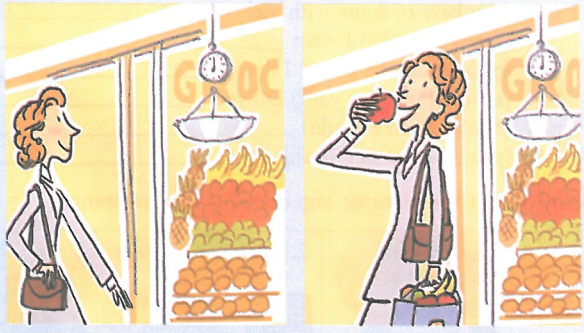
I went to the store to . . .

A

Paula wanted some fruit, so she went to the store.

Why did she go to the store? **To get** some fruit.

She went to the store **to get** some fruit.



to . . . (**to get** / **to see**, etc.) tells us *why* a person does something:

- "Why are you going out?" "**To get** some bread."
- Amy went to the station **to meet** her friend.
- Sue turned on the television **to watch** the news.
- I'd like to go to Mexico **to learn** Spanish.

money/time to (do something):

- We need some **money to buy** food.
- I don't have **time to watch** television.

B

to . . . and for . . .

to + *verb* (**to get** / **to see**, etc.)	**for** + *noun* (**for food** / **for a newspaper**, etc.)
I went to the store **to get** some fruit. (*not* for get)	I went to the store **for some fruit**.
They're going to Brazil **to see** their friends.	They're going to Brazil **for a vacation**.
We need some money **to buy** food.	We need some money **for food**.

C

wait for . . . :

- Please **wait for** me.
- Are you **waiting for** the bus?

wait to (do something):

- I'm **waiting to talk** to the manager.
- Are you **waiting to see** the doctor?

wait for (somebody/something) **to . . . :**

- I can't leave yet. I'm **waiting for John to call**.
- Are you **waiting for the mail to come**?



go to . . . and go for . . . → Unit 56
enough + to/for . . . → Unit 82, Unit 83
something to eat, nothing to do, etc. → Unit 80

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

55.1 Write sentences beginning *I went to* . . . . Choose from the boxes.

a coffee shop	the drugstore	+	buy some food	get some medicine
~~the post office~~	the supermarket		~~get some stamps~~	meet a friend

1. *I went to the post office to get some stamps.*
2. I went _____
3. _____
4. _____

55.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

to get some fresh air	to open this door	to read the newspaper
to see who it was	to wake him up	~~to watch the news~~

1. I turned on the television *to watch the news* .
2. Alice sat down in an armchair _____ .
3. Do I need a key _____ ?
4. I went for a walk by the river _____ .
5. I knocked on the door of David's room _____ .
6. The doorbell rang, so I looked out of the window _____ .

55.3 Use your own ideas to finish these sentences. Use *to* . . . .

1. I went to the store *to get some fruit* .
2. I'm very busy. I don't have time _____ .
3. I called Ann _____ .
4. I'm going out _____ .
5. I borrowed some money _____ .

55.4 Write *to* or *for*.

1. I went to the store *to* get some bread.
2. We went to a restaurant _____ have dinner.
3. Robert wants to go to college _____ study economics.
4. I'm going to Boston _____ an interview next week.
5. I'm going to Toronto _____ visit some friends of mine.
6. Do you have time _____ a cup of coffee?
7. I got up late this morning. I didn't have time _____ comb my hair.
8. Everybody needs money _____ live.
9. We didn't have any money _____ a taxi, so we walked home.
10. The office is very small. There's only enough room _____ a desk and chair.
11. *A:* Excuse me, are you waiting _____ use the phone?
    B: No, I'm waiting _____ somebody.

55.5 Complete these sentences. Choose from:

~~John / call~~ it / to arrive you / tell me the movie / begin

1. I can't go out yet. I'm waiting *for John to call* .
2. I sat down in the movie theater and waited _____ .
3. We called an ambulance and waited _____ .
4. "Do you know what to do?" "No, I'm waiting _____ ."

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

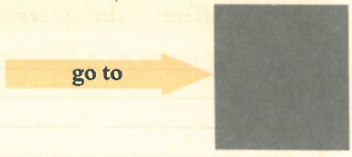
UNIT 56

go to . . . go on . . . go for . . . go -ing

A

go to . . . (**go to work** / **go to San Francisco** / **go to a concert**, etc.)

- What time do you usually **go to work**?
- I'm **going to China** next week.
- Jean didn't want to **go to the concert**.
- What time did you **go to bed** last night?
- I **went to the dentist** yesterday.



go to sleep = start to sleep:

- I was very tired and **went to sleep** quickly.

go home (without **to**)

- I'm **going home** now. (*not* going to home)

B

go on . . .

go on	vacation a trip a tour an excursion a cruise strike

- We're **going on vacation** next week.
- Children often **go on school trips**.
- When we were in Egypt, we **went on a tour** of the Pyramids.
- Workers at the airport have **gone on strike**. (= they are refusing to work)

C

go for . . .

go (somewhere) **for**	a walk a run a swim lunch dinner, etc.

- "Where's Joan?" "She **went for a walk**."
- Do you **go for a run** every morning?
- The water looks nice. I'm **going for a swim**.
- Should we **go** out **for dinner**? I know a good restaurant.

D

go + -ing

We use **go** + **-ing** for many sports (**swimming**/**skiing**, etc.) and also **shopping**.

	shopping
I **go**	**swimming**
he is **going**	**fishing**
we **went**	**sailing**
they have **gone**	**skiing**
she wants to **go**	**jogging**
	running, etc.



- Are you **going shopping** this afternoon?
- It's a nice day. Let's **go swimming**. (*or* Let's **go for a** swim.)
- Richard has a small boat, and he often **goes sailing**.
- I **went jogging** before breakfast this morning.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

56.1 Write *to/on/for* where necessary.

1. I'm going *to* China next week.
2. Richard often goes – sailing. *(no preposition)*
3. Sue went _____ Mexico last year.
4. Would you like to go _____ the movies tonight?
5. Jack goes _____ jogging every morning.
6. I'm going out _____ a walk. Do you want to come?
7. I'm tired because I went _____ bed very late last night.
8. Jim is going _____ a trip _____ Turkey next week.
9. The weather was warm and the river was clean, so we went _____ a swim.
10. The taxi drivers went _____ strike when I was in New York.
11. I need some stamps, so I'm going _____ the post office.
12. It's late. I have to go _____ home now.
13. Would you like to go _____ a tour of the city?
14. Do you want to go out _____ dinner this evening?
15. My parents are going _____ a cruise this summer.

56.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences. Use *go/goes/going/went* + *-ing*.



1. Richard has a boat. He often *goes sailing*.
2. Last Saturday Diane went _____.
3. Gary _____ every day.
4. Nicole is going to Colorado next winter. She is _____.
5. Peter is going out later. He has to _____.
6. Sarah _____ after work yesterday.

56.3 Complete the sentences. Use the words in the box. Use *to/on/for* if necessary.

~~a swim~~	vacation	Hawaii	shopping	bed
a walk	home	riding	skiing	college

1. The water looks nice. Let's go *for a swim*.
2. After finishing high school, Tina went _____, where she studied psychology.
3. I'm going _____ now. I have to buy a few things.
4. I was very tired last night. I went _____ early.
5. I wasn't enjoying the party, so I went _____ early.
6. We live near the mountains. In winter we go _____ almost every weekend.
7. Richard has a horse. He goes _____ a lot.
8. It's a beautiful day! Would you like to go _____ in the park?
9. *A:* Are you going _____ soon?
   B: Yes, next month. We're going _____. We've never been there before.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 57

get

A

get a letter / get a job, etc. (**get** + *noun*) = receive/buy/find:

you **don't have** something → you **get** it → you **have** it

"Did you **get** my postcard?" "Yes, I **got** it yesterday." (= receive)
I like your sweater. Where did you **get** it? (= buy)
Is it difficult to **get** a job at the moment? (= find)
(on the phone) "Hello, can I speak to Lisa, please?" "Sure. I'll **get** her."

B

get hungry / get cold / get tired, etc. (**get** + *adjective*) = become:

you're **not hungry** → you **get hungry** → you **are hungry**

If you don't eat, you **get hungry**.
Drink your coffee. It's **getting cold**.
I'm sorry your mother is sick. I hope she **gets better** soon.
It was raining very hard. We didn't have an umbrella, so we **got** very **wet**.

also
get married — Nicole and Frank are **getting married** soon.
get dressed (= put your clothes on) — I got up and **got dressed** quickly.
get lost (= lose your way) — We didn't have a map, so we **got lost**.

C

get to a place = arrive:
I usually **get to work** before 8:30. (= arrive at work)
We left Boston at 10:15 and **got to Ottawa** at 11:45.



get here/there (without **to**):
How did you **get here**? By bus?

get home (without **to**):
What time did you **get home** last night?

D

get in/out/on/off



get in (a car) | **get out** (**of** a car) | **get on** (a bus / a train / a plane) | **get off**

Kate **got in the car** and drove away. (You can also say: Kate got **into** the car and . . .)
A car stopped and a man **got out**. (*but* A man got out **of the car**.)
We **got on the bus** outside the hotel and **got off** at Church Street.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

get to → Unit 109 in/out/on/off → Units 111, 113 get up → Unit 115

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

57.1 Complete these sentences. Use *get/gets* and choose from the box.

another one	a doctor	a lot of rain	~~my postcard~~	the job
a good salary	a new computer	a ticket	some milk	your jacket

1. Did you *get my postcard* ? I sent it a week ago.
2. Where did you _____ ? It's very nice.
3. Quick! This man is sick. We have to _____ .
4. I want to return this phone. It doesn't work. Can I _____ , please?
5. Tom has an interview tomorrow. I hope he _____ .
6. When you go out, can you _____ ?
7. "Are you going to the concert?" "Yes, if I can _____ ."
8. Margaret has a well-paid job. She _____ .
9. The weather is horrible here in winter. We _____ .
10. I'm going to _____ . The one I have is too slow.

57.2 Complete these sentences. Use *getting* + these words:

~~cold~~ dark late married ready

1. Drink your coffee. It's *getting cold* .
2. Turn on the light. It's _____ .
3. "I'm _____ next week." "Really? Congratulations!"
4. "Where's Karen?" "She's _____ to go out."
5. It's _____ . It's time to go home.

57.3 Complete the sentences. Use *get/gets/got* + these words:

angry better ~~hungry~~ lost married old wet

1. If you don't eat, you *get hungry* .
2. Don't go out in the rain. You'll _____ .
3. My brother _____ last year. His wife's name is Sarah.
4. Dan is always very calm. He never _____ .
5. We tried to find the hotel, but we _____ .
6. Everybody wants to stay young, but we all _____ .
7. Yesterday the weather wasn't so good at first, but it _____ during the day.

57.4 Write sentences with *I left . . .* and *got to . . .*

1. home / 7:30 → work / 8:15
   I left home at 7:30 and got to work at 8:15.
2. Toronto / 10:15 → New York / 12:00
   I left Toronto at 10:15 and _____
3. the party / 11:15 → home / midnight
   _____
4. *Write a sentence about yourself.*
   I left _____

57.5 Write *got in / got out of / got on / got off.*

1. Kate *got in* the car and drove away.
2. I _____ the bus and walked to my house from the bus stop.
3. Lisa _____ the car, locked the doors, and went into a store.
4. I made a stupid mistake. I _____ the wrong train.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 58

do and make

A

Do is a general word for actions:

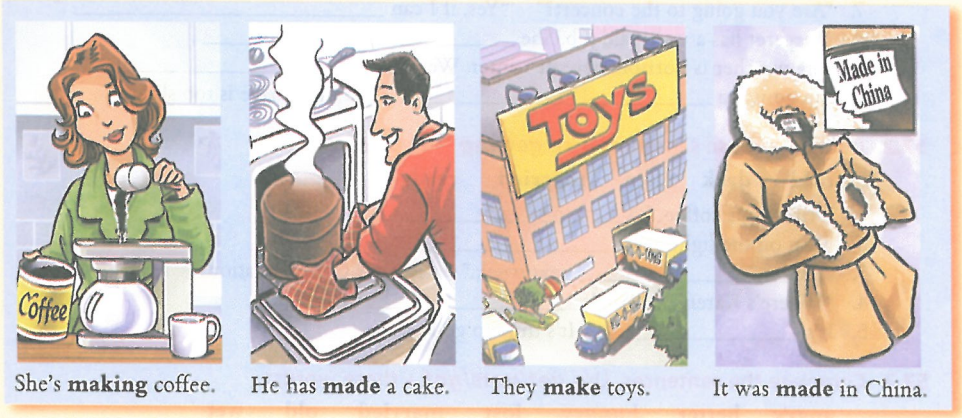
- What are you **doing** tonight? (*not* What are you making?)
- "Shall I open the window?" "No, it's OK. I'll **do** it."
- Linda's job is very boring. She **does** the same thing every day.
- I **did** a lot of things yesterday.

What do you do? = What's your job?:

- "What do you **do**?" "I work in a bank."

B

Make = produce/create. For example:



She's **making** coffee. He has **made** a cake. They **make** toys. It was **made** in China.

Compare **do** and **make**:

- I **did** a lot yesterday. I **cleaned** my room, I **wrote** some letters, and I **made** a cake.
- *A:* What do you **do** in your free time? Read? Play sports?
  B: I **make** clothes. I **make** dresses and jackets. I also **make** toys for my children.

C

Expressions with **do**

do	homework
	housework
	(somebody) a favor
	an exercise
	(your) best
	the laundry
	the dishes

- Have the children **done their homework**?
- I hate **doing housework**, especially cleaning.
- Barbara, could you **do me a favor**?
- I have to **do four exercises** for homework tonight.
- I **did my best**, but I didn't win the race.
- Tim usually **does the laundry** on Saturdays.
- I cooked, so you should **do the dishes**.

D

Expressions with **make**

make	a mistake
	an appointment
	a phone call
	a list
	(a) noise
	a bed

- I'm sorry, I **made a mistake**.
- I need to **make an appointment** to see the doctor.
- Excuse me, I have to **make a phone call**.
- Have you **made a shopping list**?
- It's late. Don't **make any noise**.
- Sometimes I forget to **make my bed** in the morning.

We say make a movie *but* take a picture:

- When was **this movie made**? *but* When was **this picture taken**?

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

58.1 Write *make/making/made* or *do/doing/did/done*.

1. "Shall I open the window?" "No, that's OK. I'll *do* it."
2. What did you _____ last weekend? Did you leave town?
3. Do you know how to _____ bread?
4. Paper is _____ from wood.
5. Richard didn't help me. He sat in an armchair and _____ nothing.
6. "What do you _____ ?" "I'm a doctor."
7. I asked you to clean the bathroom. Have you _____ it?
8. "What do they _____ in that factory?" "Shoes."
9. I'm _____ some coffee. Would you like some?
10. Why are you angry with me? I didn't _____ anything wrong.
11. "What are you _____ tomorrow afternoon?" "I'm working."

58.2 What are these people doing?



1. *He's making a cake.*
2. They _____
3. He _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

58.3 Write *make* or *do* in the correct form.

1. I hate *doing* housework, especially cleaning.
2. Why do you always _____ the same mistake?
3. "Can you _____ me a favor?" "It depends what it is."
4. "Have you _____ your homework?" "Not yet."
5. I need to see the dentist, but I haven't _____ an appointment.
6. Joe _____ his best, but he didn't pass his driver's test.
7. I painted the door, but I didn't _____ it very well.
8. How many phone calls did you _____ yesterday?
9. When you've finished Exercise 1, you can _____ Exercise 2.
10. There's something wrong with the car. The engine is _____ a strange noise.
11. It was a bad mistake. It was the worst mistake I've ever _____ .
12. Let's _____ a list of all the things we have to _____ today.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 59

have

A have and have got

I have (something) or **I've got** (something) = it is mine:

- I **have** a new car. *or* I**'ve got** a new car.
- Sue **has** long hair. *or* Sue **has got** long hair.
- **Do** they **have** any children? *or* **Have** they **got** any children?
- Tim **doesn't have** a job. *or* Tim **hasn't got** a job.
- How much time **do** you **have**? *or* How much time **have** you **got**?

also

I **have** / I**'ve got**	a headache / a toothache / a pain (in my leg, etc.) a cold / a cough / a sore throat / a fever / the flu, etc.

- I **have** a headache. *or* I**'ve got** a headache.
- **Do** you **have** a cold? *or* **Have** you **got** a cold?

The past is **I had** (without **got**) / **I didn't have** / **Did you have**?, etc.:

- When I first met Sue, she **had** short hair.
- He **didn't have** any money because he **didn't have** a job.
- **Did** you **have** enough time to do everything you wanted?

B have breakfast / have a good time, etc.

In these expressions **have** = eat or drink. You can't use "have got."

have	breakfast / lunch / dinner a meal / a sandwich / (a) pizza, etc. a cup of coffee / a glass of milk, etc. something to eat/drink

- "Where's Liz?" "She**'s having** lunch."
- I **don't** usually **have** breakfast.
- I **had** three cups of coffee this morning.
- "**Have** a cookie." "Oh, thank you."

We also use **have** (*not* have got) in these expressions:

have	a party / a meeting a nice time / a good trip / fun, etc. a (nice) day / a (nice) weekend / a (great) vacation a (good) flight / a safe trip a dream / an accident an argument / a discussion a baby

- We**'re having** a party next week. Please come.
- Enjoy your vacation. **Have** a good trip!
- I**'m having** a bad day. Everything is going wrong. I hope I **have** a better day tomorrow.
- We **have** a 12-hour flight to Lima tomorrow.
- Mark **had** an accident on his first day in Rome.
- Boss, can we **have** a discussion about my pay?
- Sandra **has** just **had** a baby. It's a boy.

C

Compare:

have got *or* **have**

- I**'ve got** / I **have** three cups of coffee for this office.

have (*not* **have got**)

- I **have** coffee with my breakfast every morning. (*not* I**'ve got** coffee every morning)
- *A:* Where's Paul?
  B: He's on break. He**'s having** a cup of coffee. (= he's drinking it now)



www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

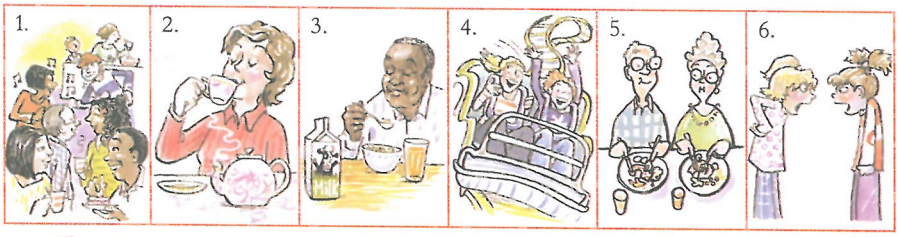
Exercises

59.1 Write the correct form of *have* or *have got*.

1. *I didn't have* time to do the shopping yesterday. (I / not / have)
2. " *Does Lisa have* OR *Has Lisa got* a car?" (Lisa / have?)
   "No, she can't drive."
3. He can't open the door. _____ a key. (he / not / have)
4. _____ a cold last week. He's better now. (Gary / have)
5. What's wrong? _____ a headache? (you / have?)
6. We wanted to go by taxi, but _____ enough money. (we / not / have)
7. Liz is very busy. _____ much free time. (she / not / have)
8. _____ any problems when you were on vacation? (you / have?)

59.2 What are these people doing? Choose from the list:

an argument **breakfast** **a cup of tea** **dinner** **fun** ~~**a party**~~



1. *They're having a party.*
2. She _____
3. He _____
4. They _____
5. _____
6. _____

59.3 What do you say in these situations? Use *have*.

1. Barbara is going on vacation. What do you say to her before she goes?
   Have a nice vacation!
2. You meet Claire at the airport. She has just gotten off her plane. Ask her about the flight.
   Did you have a good flight?
3. Tim is going on a long trip. What do you say to him before he leaves?
   _____
4. It's Monday morning. You are at work. Ask Paula about her weekend.
   _____
5. Paul has just come back from vacation. Ask him about his vacation.
   _____
6. Rachel is going out tonight. What do you say to her before she goes?
   _____
7. Sue's little boy will be one year old next week. Is there going to be a birthday party? Ask her.
   _____

59.4 Complete the sentences. Use *have/had* and choose from the list.

an accident **a glass of water** **a baby**
a bad dream ~~**a party**~~ **something to eat**

1. We *had a party* a few weeks ago. We invited 50 people.
2. "Should we _____ ?" "No, I'm not hungry."
3. I was thirsty, so I _____ .
4. I _____ last night. It woke me up.
5. Tina is a very good driver. She has never _____ .
6. Rachel is going to _____ . It will be her first child.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 60

I/me he/him they/them, etc.

A *People*

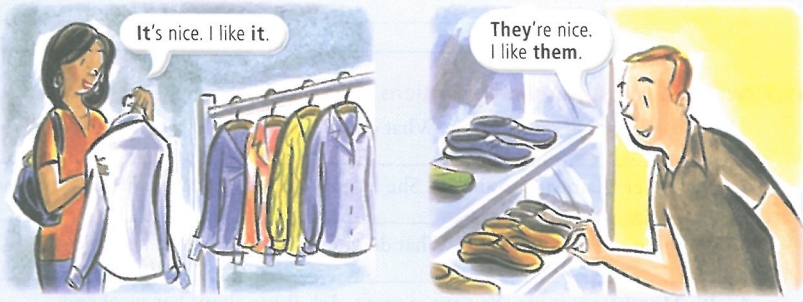


subject	I	we	you	he	she	they
object	me	us	you	him	her	them

subject	
I	I know Tom.
we	We know Tom.
you	You know Tom.
he	He knows Tom.
she	She knows Tom.
they	They know Tom.

	object
Tom knows **me**.	me
Tom knows **us**.	us
Tom knows **you**.	you
Tom knows **him**.	him
Tom knows **her**.	her
Tom knows **them**.	them

B *Things*



subject	it	they
object	it	them

- I don't want **this book**. You can have **it**.
- I don't want **these books**. You can have **them**.
- Diane never drinks **milk**. She doesn't like **it**.
- I never go to **parties**. I don't like **them**.

C

We use **me/her/them**, etc. (object) after a *preposition* (**for/to/with**, etc.):

- This letter isn't **for me**. It's **for you**.
- Who is that woman? Why are you looking **at her**?
- We're going to the movies. Do you want to come **with us**?
- Sue and Kevin are going to the movies. Do you want to go **with them**?
- "Where's the newspaper?" "You're sitting **on it**."

give it/them to . . . :

- I want that book. Please give **it to me**.
- Robert needs these books. Can you give **them to him**, please?

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین آرشه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

60.1 Complete the sentences with *him/her/them*.

1. I don't know those girls. Do you know *them* ?
2. I don't know that man. Do you know _____ ?
3. I don't know those people. Do you know _____ ?
4. I don't know David's wife. Do you know _____ ?
5. I don't know Mr. Stevens. Do you know _____ ?
6. I don't know Sarah's parents. Do you know _____ ?
7. I don't know the woman in the black coat. Do you know _____ ?

60.2 Complete the sentences. Use *I/me/you/she/her*, etc.

1. **I** want to see **her**, but *she* doesn't want to see *me* .
2. **They** want to see **me**, but _____ don't want to see _____ .
3. **She** wants to see **him**, but _____ doesn't want to see _____ .
4. **We** want to see **them**, but _____ don't want to see _____ .
5. **He** wants to see **us**, but _____ don't want to see _____ .
6. **They** want to see **her**, but _____ doesn't want to see _____ .
7. **I** want to see **them**, but _____ don't want to see _____ .
8. **You** want to see **her**, but _____ doesn't want to see _____ .

60.3 Write sentences beginning *I like . . .*, *I don't like . . .*, or *Do you like . . . ?*

1. I don't eat tomatoes. *I don't like them* .
2. George is a very nice man. I like _____ .
3. This jacket isn't very nice. I don't _____ .
4. This is my new car. Do _____ ?
5. Mrs. Clark is not very friendly. I _____ .
6. These are my new shoes. _____ ?

60.4 Complete the sentences. Use *I/me/he/him*, etc.

1. Who is that woman? Why are you looking at *her* ?
2. "Do you know that man?" "Yes, I work with _____ ."
3. Where are the tickets? I can't find _____ .
4. I can't find my keys. Where are _____ ?
5. We're going out. You can come with _____ .
6. I have a new computer. Do you want to see _____ ?
7. Maria likes music. _____ plays the piano.
8. I don't like dogs. I'm afraid of _____ .
9. I'm talking to you. Please listen to _____ .
10. Where is Anna? I want to talk to _____ .
11. You can have these DVDs. I don't want _____ .
12. My brother has a new job, but _____ doesn't like _____ very much.

60.5 Complete the sentences.

1. I need that book. Can you *give it to me* ?
2. He wants the key. Can you give _____ ?
3. She wants the keys. Can you _____ ?
4. I want that letter. Can you _____ ?
5. They want the money. Can you _____ ?
6. We want the photos. Can you _____ ?

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 61

my/his/their, etc.

A



I	→	**my**
we	→	**our**
you	→	**your**
he	→	**his**
she	→	**her**
they	→	**their**

I	like	**my**	house.
We	like	**our**	house.
You	like	**your**	house.
He	likes	**his**	house.
She	likes	**her**	house.
They	like	**their**	house.

it	→	**its**

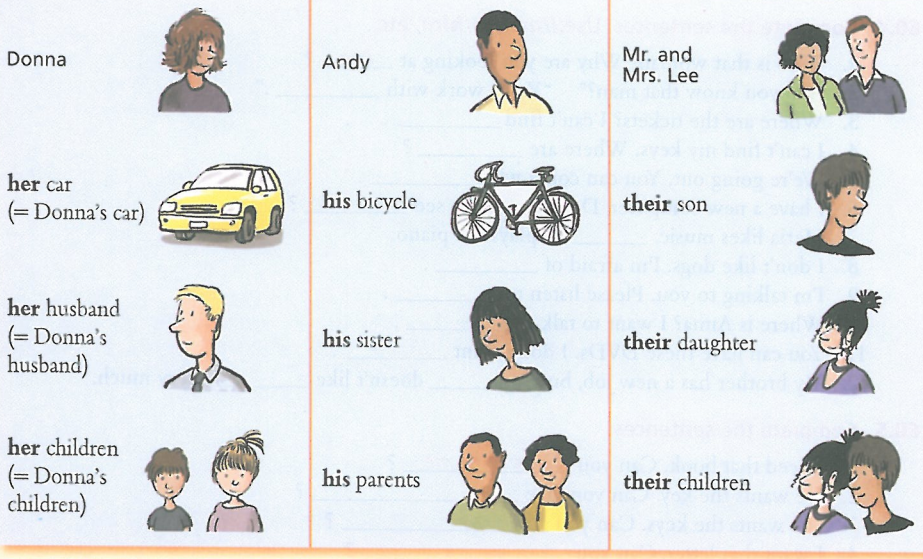
Hawaii (= **it**) is famous for **its** beaches.

We use **my/your/his**, etc. + *noun*:

my hands **his** new **car** **her parents**
our clothes **your** best **friend** **their room**

B

his/her/their



C

its and it's

its Hawaii is famous for **its** beaches.
it's (= it **is**) I like Hawaii. **It's** a beautiful place. (= It **is** a beautiful place.)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

mine/yours, etc. → Unit 62 I/me/my/mine → Unit 63

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

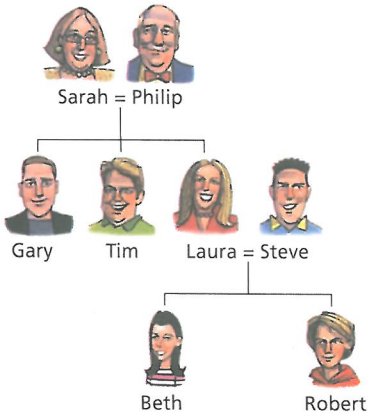
61.1 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1. I'm going to wash *my hands* .
2. She's going to wash _____ hands.
3. We're going to wash _____ .
4. He's going to wash _____ .
5. They're going to wash _____ .
6. Are you going to wash _____ ?

61.2 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1. He *lives with his parents* .
2. They live with _____ parents.
3. We _____ parents.
4. Jane lives _____ .
5. I _____ parents.
6. John _____ .
7. Do you live _____ ?
8. Most children _____ .

61.3 Look at the family tree, and complete the sentences with *his/her/their*.



1. I saw Sarah with *her* husband, Philip.
2. I saw Laura and Steve with _____ children.
3. I saw Steve with _____ wife, Laura.
4. I saw Gary with _____ brother, Tim.
5. I saw Laura with _____ brother, Tim.
6. I saw Sarah and Philip with _____ son, Tim.
7. I saw Laura with _____ parents.
8. I saw Beth and Robert with _____ parents.

61.4 Write *my/our/your/his/her/their/its*.

1. Do you like *your* job?
2. I know Mr. Watson, but I don't know _____ wife.
3. Alice and Tom live in San Francisco. _____ son lives in Mexico.
4. We're going to have a party. We're going to invite all _____ friends.
5. Anna is going out with _____ friends tonight.
6. I like tennis. It's _____ favorite sport.
7. "Is that _____ car?" "No, I don't have a car."
8. I want to call Maria. Do you know _____ phone number?
9. Do you think most people are happy with _____ jobs?
10. I'm going to wash _____ hair before I go out.
11. This is a beautiful tree. _____ leaves are a beautiful color.
12. John has a brother and a sister. _____ brother is 25, and _____ sister is 21.

61.5 Complete the sentences. Use *my/his/their*, etc. with these words:

coat homework house husband ~~job~~ key name

1. Jim doesn't like *his job* . It's not very interesting.
2. I can't get in. I don't have _____ .
3. Sally is married. _____ works in a bank.
4. Please take off _____ and sit down.
5. "What are the children doing?" "They're doing _____ ."
6. "Do you know that man?" "Yes, but I don't know _____ ."
7. We live on Main Street. _____ is on the corner of Main and First.

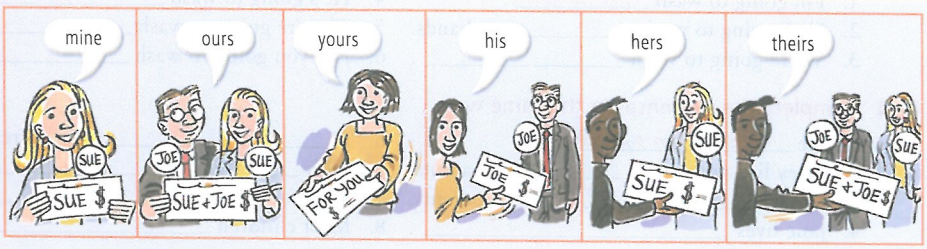
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 62

Whose is this? It's mine/yours/hers, etc.

A



I	→	**my**	→	**mine**
we	→	**our**	→	**ours**
you	→	**your**	→	**yours**
he	→	**his**	→	**his**
she	→	**her**	→	**hers**
they	→	**their**	→	**theirs**

It's **my** money.	It's **mine**.
It's **our** money.	It's **ours**.
It's **your** money.	It's **yours**.
It's **his** money.	It's **his**.
It's **her** money.	It's **hers**.
It's **their** money.	It's **theirs**.

B

We use **my/your**, etc. + *noun* (**my hands / your book**, etc.):

- **My hands** are cold.
- Is this **your book**?
- Helen gave me **her umbrella**.
- It's **their problem**, not **our problem**.

We use **mine/yours**, etc. without a noun:

- Is this book **mine** or **yours**? (= my book or your book)
- I didn't have an umbrella, so Helen gave me **hers**. (= her umbrella)
- It's their problem, not **ours**. (= not our problem)
- We went in our car, and they went in **theirs**. (= their car)

You can use **his** with or without a noun:

- "Is this **his camera** or **hers**?" "It's **his**."

C

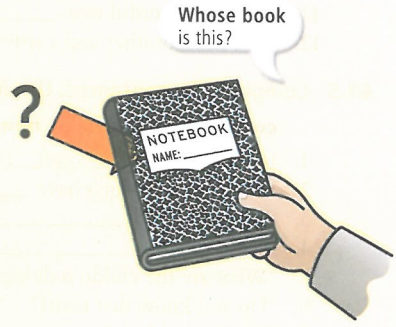
A friend **of mine** / a friend **of his** / some friends **of yours**, etc.

- I went to the movies with a friend **of mine**. (*not* a friend of me)
- Tom was in the restaurant with a friend **of his**. (*not* a friend of him)
- Are those people friends **of yours**? (*not* friends of you)

D

Whose . . . ?

- **Whose book** is this? (= Is it your book? his book? my book?, etc.)



You can use **whose** with or without a noun:

- **Whose money** is this? / **Whose** is this? } It's mine.
- **Whose shoes** are these? / **Whose** are these? } They're John's.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

my/his/their, etc. → Unit 61 I/me/my/mine → Unit 63 Kate's camera / my brother's car → Unit 65

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

62.1 Complete the sentences with *mine/yours*, etc.

1. It's your money. It's *yours*.
2. It's my bag. It's _____.
3. It's our car. It's _____.
4. They're her shoes. They're _____.
5. It's their house. It's _____.
6. They're your books. They're _____.
7. They're my glasses. They're _____.
8. It's his coat. It's _____.

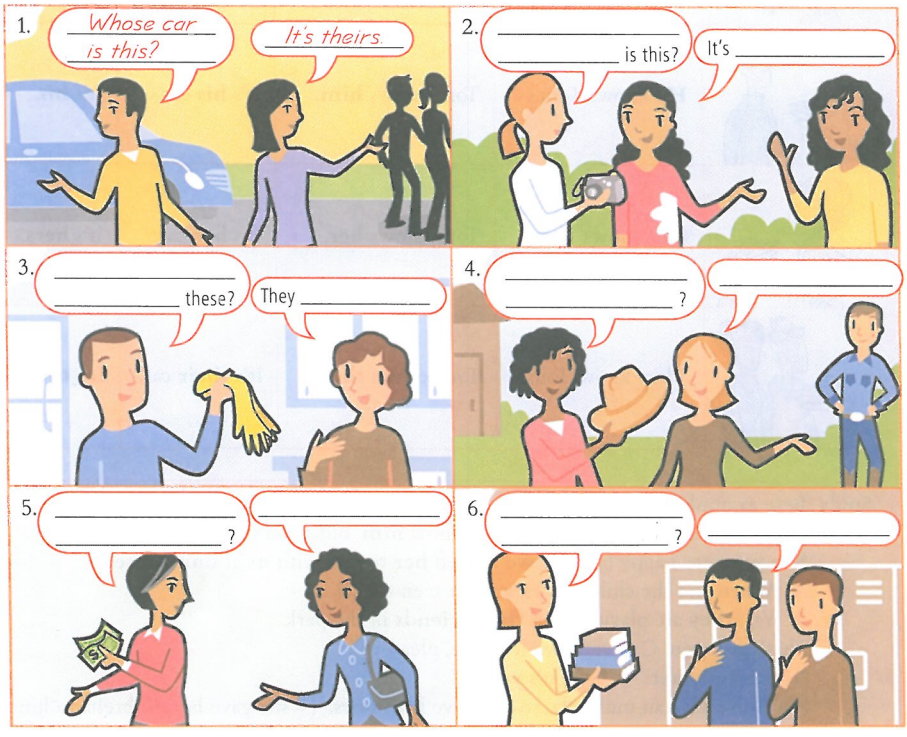
62.2 Choose the right word.

1. It's their/~~theirs~~ problem, not ~~our~~/ours. (*their* and *ours* are right)
2. This is a nice camera. Is it your/yours?
3. That's not my/mine umbrella. My/Mine is black.
4. Whose books are these? Your/Yours or my/mine?
5. Catherine is going out with her/hers friends tonight.
6. My/Mine room is bigger than her/hers.
7. They've got two children, but I don't know their/theirs names.
8. Can we use your washing machine? Our/Ours isn't working.

62.3 Complete these sentences. Use *friend(s) of mine/yours*, etc.

1. I went to the movies with a *friend of mine*.
2. They went on vacation with some *friends of theirs*.
3. She's going out with a _____.
4. We had dinner with some _____.
5. I played tennis with a _____.
6. Tom is going to meet a _____.
7. Do you know those people? Are they _____?

62.4 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying?



www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 63

I/me/my/mine

A



	I, etc. (→ Unit 60)	me, etc. (→ Unit 60)	my, etc. (→ Unit 61)	mine, etc. (→ Unit 62)
	I know Tom.	Tom knows **me**.	It's **my** car.	It's **mine**.
	**We** know Tom.	Tom knows **us**.	It's **our** car.	It's **ours**.
	**You** know Tom.	Tom knows **you**.	It's **your** car.	It's **yours**.
	**He** knows Tom.	Tom knows **him**.	It's **his** car.	It's **his**.
	**She** knows Tom.	Tom knows **her**.	It's **her** car.	It's **hers**.
	**They** know Tom.	Tom knows **them**.	It's **their** car.	It's **theirs**.

B

Study these examples:

- "Do **you** know that man?" "Yes, **I** know **him**, but **I** can't remember **his name**."
- **She** was very happy because **we** invited **her** to stay with **us** at **our house**.
- *A:* Where are the children? Have **you** seen them?
  B: Yes, **they** are playing with **their friends** in the park.
- That's **my pen**. Can you give it to **me**, please?
- "Is this **your hat**?" "No, it's **yours**."
- **He** didn't have an umbrella, so **she** gave **him hers**. (= she gave her umbrella to him)
- I'm going out with a friend of **mine** tonight. (*not* a friend of me)

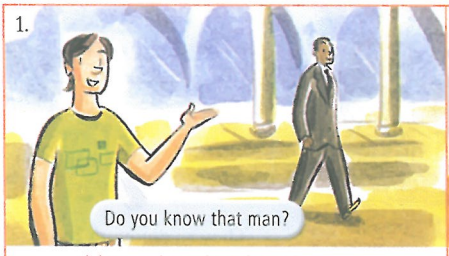
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

myself/yourself, etc. → Unit 64 Give me that book / Give it to me → Unit 97

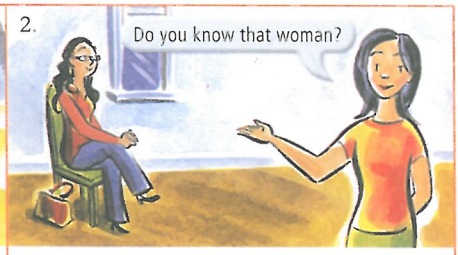
مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

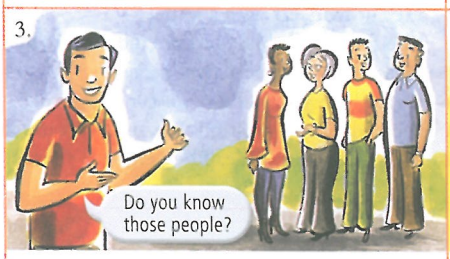
63.1 Answer the questions in the same way.



Yes, *I know him, but I can't remember his name*.



Yes, I know _____, but I can't remember _____.



Yes, I _____, but I _____ names.



Yes, I _____, but _____.

63.2 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1. We invited her *to stay with us at our house*.
2. He invited us to stay with _____ at his house.
3. They invited me to stay with _____ house.
4. I invited them to stay _____ house.
5. She invited us to stay _____ house.
6. Did you invite him _____ house?

63.3 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1. I gave him *my* address, and *he gave me his*.
2. I gave her *my* address, and she gave me _____.
3. He gave me *his* address, and I gave _____.
4. We gave them _____ address, and they gave _____.
5. She gave him _____ address, and he gave _____.
6. You gave us _____ address, and we gave _____.
7. They gave you _____ address, and you gave _____.

63.4 Write *him/her/yours*, etc.

1. Where's Amanda? Have you seen *her*?
2. Where are my keys? Where did I put _____?
3. This letter is for Bill. Can you give it to _____?
4. We don't see _____ neighbors much. They're not at home very often.
5. "I can't find my pen. Can I use _____?" "Sure."
6. We're going to the movies. Why don't you come with _____?
7. Did your sister pass _____ driver's test?
8. Some people talk about _____ jobs all the time.
9. Last night I went out for dinner with a friend of _____.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

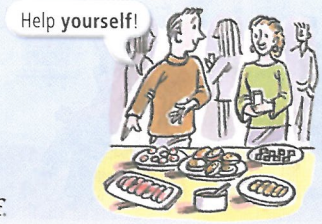
UNIT 64

myself/yourself/themselves, etc.

A



He's looking at **himself**.





They're enjoying **themselves**.

I	→	me	→	myself
he	→	him	→	himself
she	→	her	→	herself
you	→	you	→	yourself / yourselves
we	→	us	→	ourselves
they	→	them	→	themselves

- **I** looked at **myself** in the mirror.
- **He** cut **himself** with a knife.
- **She** fell off her bike, but she didn't hurt **herself**.
- Please help **yourself**. *(one person)*
- Please help **yourselves**. *(two or more people)*
- We had a good vacation. **We** enjoyed **ourselves**.
- They had a nice time. **They** enjoyed **themselves**.

B

Compare:

me/him/them, etc.



She is looking at **him**.

different people



- You never talk to **me**.
- I didn't pay for **them**.
- I'm sorry. Did I hurt **you**?

myself/himself/themselves, etc.



He is looking at **himself**.

the same person



- Sometimes I talk to **myself**.
- They paid for **themselves**.
- Be careful. Don't hurt **yourself**.

C

by myself / by yourself, etc. = alone:

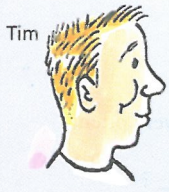
- I went on vacation **by myself**. (= I went alone)
- "Was she with friends?" "No, she was **by herself**."

D

each other

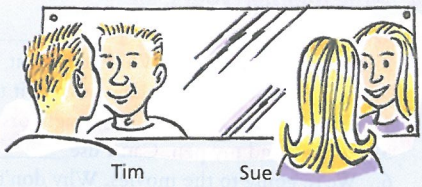
- Kate and Helen are good friends. They know **each other** well. (= Kate knows Helen / Helen knows Kate)
- Paul and I live near **each other**. (= he lives near me / I live near him)

Compare **each other** and **-selves**:





- Tim and Sue looked at **each other**. (= he looked at her, she looked at him)



- Tim and Sue looked at **themselves**. (= he looked at himself, she looked at herself)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

me/him/them, etc. → Unit 60

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

64.1 Complete the sentences with *myself/yourself*, etc.

1. He looked at *himself* in the mirror.
2. I'm not angry with you. I'm angry with _____ .
3. Karen had a good time in Brazil. She enjoyed _____ .
4. My friends had a good time in Brazil. They enjoyed _____ .
5. I picked up a very hot plate and burned _____ .
6. He never thinks about other people. He only thinks about _____ .
7. I want to know more about you. Tell me about _____ . *(one person)*
8. Good-bye! Have a good trip and take care of _____ ! *(two people)*

64.2 Write sentences with *by myself / by yourself*, etc.

1. I went on vacation alone. — *I went on vacation by myself.*
2. When I saw him, he was alone. — When I saw him, he _____
3. Don't go out alone. — Don't _____
4. I went to the movies alone. — I _____
5. My sister lives alone. — My sister _____
6. Many people live alone. — Many people _____

64.3 Write sentences with *each other*.



They like each other.

They can't _____

They _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

64.4 Complete the sentences. Use: *each other* or *ourselves/yourselves/themselves* or *us/you/them*

1. Paul and I live near *each other* .
2. Who are those people? Do you know *them* ?
3. You can help Tom, and Tom can help you. So you and Tom can help _____ .
4. There's food in the kitchen. If you and Chris are hungry, you can help _____ .
5. We didn't go to Linda's party. She didn't invite _____ .
6. When we go on vacation, we always enjoy _____ .
7. Mary and Jane went to school together, but they never see _____ now.
8. Diane and I are very good friends. We've known _____ for a long time.
9. "Did you see Sam and Laura at the party?" "Yes, but I didn't speak to _____ ."
10. Many people talk to _____ when they're alone.

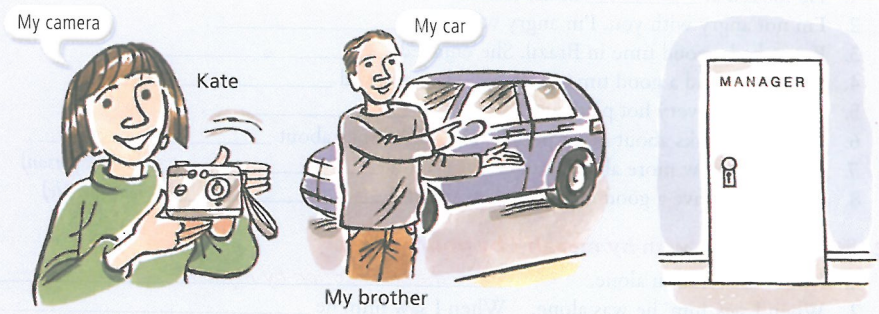
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 65

-'s (Kate's camera / my brother's car, etc.)

A



Kate's camera (**her** camera)

my brother's car (**his** car)

the manager's office (**his** *or* **her** office)

We normally use **-'s** for people:

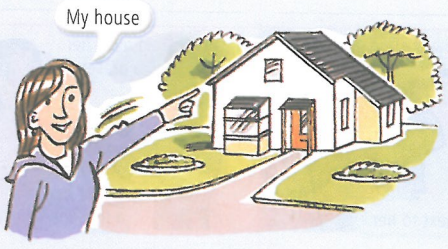
- I stayed at **my sister's** house. (*not* the house of my sister)
- Have you met **Mr. Black's** wife? (*not* the wife of Mr. Black)
- Are you going to **James's** party?
- Paul is **a man's** name. Paula is **a woman's** name.

You can use **-'s** without a noun after it:

- Sophie's hair is longer than **Kate's**. (= Kate's hair)
- "Whose umbrella is this?" "It's **my mother's**." (= my mother's umbrella)
- "Where were you last night?" "I was at **Paul's**." (= Paul's house)

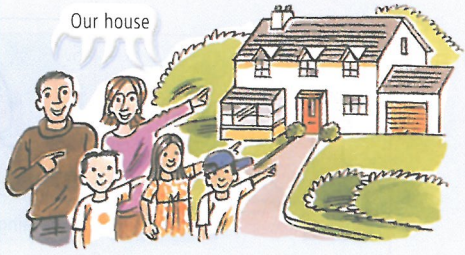
B

friend's and **friends'**



my **friend's** house = *one friend* (= **his** house or **her** house)

We write **'s** after **friend/student/mother**, etc. *(singular)*:
my mother's car *(one mother)*
my father's car *(one father)*



my **friends'** house = *two or more friends* (= **their** house)

We write **'** after friends/students/parents, etc. *(plural)*:
my parents' car *(two parents)*

C

We use **of** . . . for things, places, etc.:

- Look at the roof **of that building**. (*not* that building's roof)
- We didn't see the beginning **of the movie**. (*not* the movie's beginning)
- What's the name **of this town**?
- Do you know the cause **of the problem**?
- You can sit in the back **of the car**.
- Madrid is the capital **of Spain**.

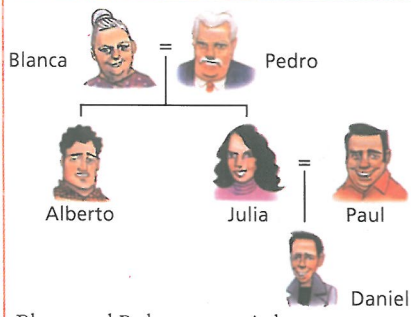
mine/yours, etc. → Unit 62 whose . . . ? Unit 62 's (he's / Kate's, etc.) = Appendix 4.5

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

65.1 Look at the family tree. Complete the sentences about the people in the fam



Blanca and Pedro are married.
They have a son, Alberto, and a daughter, Julia.
Julia is married to Paul.
Julia and Paul have a son, Daniel.

1. Pedro is *Blanca's* husband.
2. Julia is Daniel's *mother* .
3. Blanca is _____ wife.
4. Alberto is Julia's _____ .
5. Alberto is _____ uncle.
6. Julia is _____ wife.
7. Blanca is Daniel's _____ .
8. Julia is Alberto's _____ .
9. Paul is _____ husband.
10. Paul is Daniel's _____ .
11. Daniel is _____ nephew.

65.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use one word only.



1.  Whose is this? *Alice's*
2.  Whose is this? _____
3.  And this? _____
4.  And these? _____
5.  And this? _____
6.  And these? _____

65.3 Are these sentences OK? Change them where necessary.

1. I stayed at the house of my sister. *my sister's house*
2. What is the name of this village? *OK*
3. Do you like the color of this coat? _____
4. Do you know the phone number of Simon? _____
5. The job of my brother is very interesting. _____
6. Write your name at the top of the page. _____
7. For me, morning is the best part of the day. _____
8. The favorite color of Paula is blue. _____
9. When is the birthday of your mother? _____
10. The house of my parents isn't very big. _____
11. The walls of this house are very thin. _____
12. The car stopped at the end of the street. _____
13. Are you going to the party of Sylvia next week? _____
14. The manager of the hotel is not here right now. _____

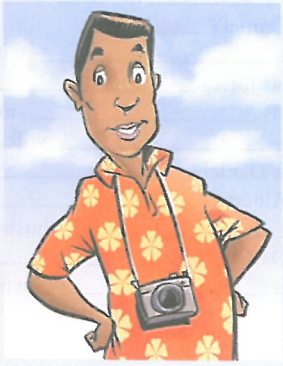
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 66

a/an . . .

A



He has a camera.



She's waiting for a taxi.



It's a beautiful day.

a . . . = one thing or person:

- Rachel works in **a bank**. (*not* in bank)
- Can I ask **a question**? (*not* ask question)
- I don't have **a computer**.
- There's **a woman** at the bus stop.

B

an (*not* a) before **a/e/i/o/u**:

- Do you want **an** apple or **a** banana?
- I'm going to buy **a** hat and **an** umbrella.
- There was **an** interesting program on TV last night.

also **an hour** (**h** is not pronounced: an ~~h~~our)
but **a university** (pronounced *yuniversity*)
a European country (pronounced *yuropean*)

another (= **an** + **other**) is one word:

- Can I have **another** cup of coffee?

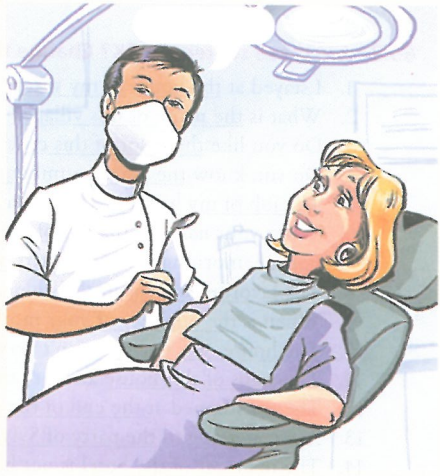
C

We use **a/an** . . . when we say what a thing or a person is. For example:

- The sun is **a star**.
- Football is **a game**.
- Dallas is **a city in Texas**.
- A mouse is **an animal**. It's **a small animal**.
- Joe is **a very nice person**.

We use **a/an** . . . for jobs, etc.:

- *A:* What do you do?
  B: I'm **a dentist**. (*not* I'm dentist)
- "What does Mark do?" "He's **an engineer**."
- Would you like to be **a teacher**?
- Beethoven was **a composer**.
- Picasso was **a famous painter**.
- Are you **a student**?



www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

66.1 Write *a* or *an*.

1. *an* old book
2. _____ window
3. _____ horse
4. _____ airport
5. _____ new airport
6. _____ organization
7. _____ university
8. _____ hour
9. _____ economic problem

66.2 What are these things? Choose from the box.

~~bird~~	flower	fruit	game	mountain
planet	river	tool	vegetable	musical instrument

1. A duck is *a bird*.
2. A carrot is _____.
3. Tennis is _____.
4. A hammer is _____.
5. Everest is _____.
6. Saturn is _____.
7. A banana is _____.
8. The Amazon is _____.
9. A rose is _____.
10. A trumpet is _____.

66.3 What are their jobs? Choose from the box and complete the sentences.

architect	~~dentist~~	electrician	nurse
photographer	sales clerk	taxi driver	



1. *She's a dentist.*
2. He's _____
3. She _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. And you? I'm _____

66.4 Write sentences. Choose from the two boxes. Use *a*/*an* where necessary.

~~I want to ask you~~	Rebecca works in		old house	artist
Tom never wears	Jane wants to learn	+	party	~~question~~
I can't ride	Mike lives in		office	foreign language
My brother is	Tonight I'm going to		hat	bicycle

1. *I want to ask you a question.*
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 67

train(s) bus(es) (singular and plural)

A

The plural of a noun is usually **-s**:

singular (= one)	→	*plural* (= two or more)
a flower	→	some **flowers**
a train	→	two **trains**
one week	→	a few **weeks**
a nice place	→	some nice **places**
this student	→	these **students**



a flower



some **flowers**

Spelling (see Appendix 5):

-s / -sh / -ch / -x →	**-es**	bus → buses dish → dishes church → churches box → boxes
	also	potato → potatoes tomato → tomatoes
-y →	**-ies**	baby → babies dictionary → dictionaries party → parties
but **-ay / -ey / -oy →**	**-ys**	day → days monkey → monkeys boy → boys
-f / -fe →	**-ves**	shelf → shelves knife → knives wife → wives

B

These things are plural in English:



scissors glasses pants jeans shorts tights pajamas

- Do you wear **glasses**?
- Where **are** the **scissors**? I need **them**.

You can also say **a pair of scissors** / **a pair of pants** / **a pair of pajamas**, etc.:

- I need **a** new **pair of jeans**. *or* I need **some** new **jeans**. (*not* a new jeans)

C

Some plurals do *not* end in **-s**:

this **man** → these **men**	one **foot** → two **feet**	that **sheep** → those **sheep**
a **woman** → some **women**	a **tooth** → all my **teeth**	a **fish** → a lot of **fish**
a **child** → many **children**	a **mouse** → some **mice**	

also a **person** → **two people** / **some people** / **a lot of people**, etc.:

- **She**'s a nice **person**.

but

- **They** are nice **people**. (*not* nice persons)

D

People is plural (= they), so we say **people are** / **people have**, etc.:

- **A lot of people speak** English. (*not* speaks)
- I like **the people** here. **They are** very friendly.

Police is plural:

- **The police want** to talk to anybody who saw the accident. (*not* The police wants)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

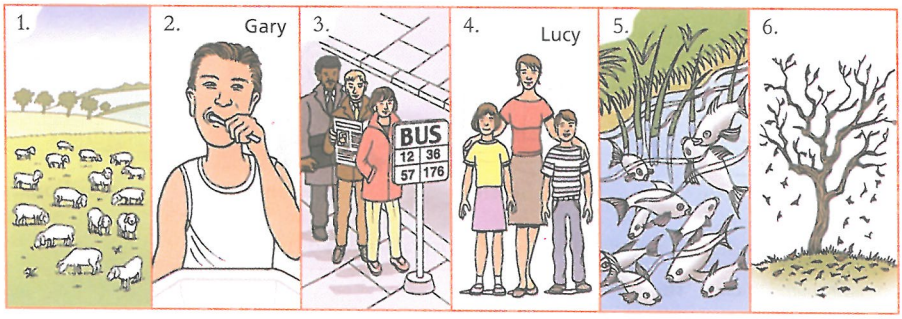
مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

67.1 Write the plural.

1. flower	*flowers*	5. umbrella		9. family	
2. boat		6. address		10. foot	
3. woman		7. knife		11. holiday	
4. city		8. sandwich		12. potato	

67.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



1. There are a lot of *sheep* in the field.
2. Gary is brushing his _____ .
3. There are three _____ at the bus stop.
4. Lucy has two _____ .
5. There are a lot of _____ in the river.
6. The _____ are falling from the tree.

67.3 Are these sentences OK? Change the sentences where necessary.

1. I'm going to buy some flowers. *OK*
2. I need a new jeans. *I need a new pair of jeans.* OR *I need some new jeans.*
3. It's a lovely park with a lot of beautiful tree. _____
4. There was a woman in the car with two mens. _____
5. Sheep eat grass. _____
6. David is married and has three childs. _____
7. Most of my friend are student. _____
8. He put on his pajama and went to bed. _____
9. We went fishing, but we didn't catch many fish. _____
10. Do you know many persons in this town? _____
11. I like your pant. Where did you get it? _____
12. Montreal is usually full of tourist. _____
13. I don't like mice. I'm afraid of them. _____
14. This scissor isn't very sharp. _____

67.4 Which is right? Complete the sentences.

1. It's a nice place. Many people *go* there on vacation.	**go** *or* **goes**?
2. Some people _____ always late.	**is** *or* **are**?
3. The new city hall is not a very beautiful building. Most people _____ like it.	**don't** *or* **doesn't**?
4. A lot of people _____ television every day.	**watch** *or* **watches**?
5. Three people _____ injured in the accident.	**was** *or* **were**?
6. How many people _____ in that house?	**live** *or* **lives**?
7. _____ the police know the cause of the explosion?	**Do** *or* **Does**?
8. The police _____ looking for the stolen car.	**is** *or* **are**?
9. I need my glasses, but I can't find _____ .	**it** *or* **them**?
10. I'm going to buy _____ new jeans today.	**a** *or* **some**?

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 68

a bottle / some water (countable/uncountable 1)

A

A noun can be *countable* or *uncountable*.

Countable nouns

For example: (a) **car** (a) **man** (a) **bottle** (a) **house** (a) **key** (an) **idea** (an) **accident**

You can use **one/two/three**, etc. + *countable nouns* (you can count them):



one **bottle**



two **bottles**



three **men**



four **houses**

Countable nouns can be *singular* (= one) or *plural* (= two or more):

Singular	**a car**	**the car**	**my car**, etc.		
Plural	**cars**	**two cars**	**the cars**	**some cars**	**many cars**, etc.

- I've got **a car**.
- New **cars** are very expensive.
- There aren't **many cars** in the parking lot.

You can't use the singular (**car/bottle/key**, etc.) alone. You need **a/an**:

- We can't get into the house without **a key**. (*not* without key)

B

Uncountable nouns

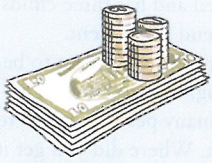
For example: **water** **air** **rice** **salt** **plastic** **money** **music** **tennis**



water



salt



money



music

You can't say **one/two/three**, etc. + these things: ~~one water~~ ~~two music~~

Uncountable nouns have only *one* form:

money the **money** my **money** some **money** much **money**, etc.

- I have **some money**.
- There isn't **much money** in the box.
- **Money** isn't everything.

You can't use **a/an** + *uncountable nouns*: ~~a money~~ ~~a music~~ ~~a water~~

But you can say **a piece of . . . / a bottle of . . .**, etc. + *uncountable noun*:

a bottle of water	**a carton of** milk	**a bar of** soap
a piece of cheese	**a bottle of** perfume	**a piece of** music
a bowl of rice	**a cup of** coffee	**a game of** tennis

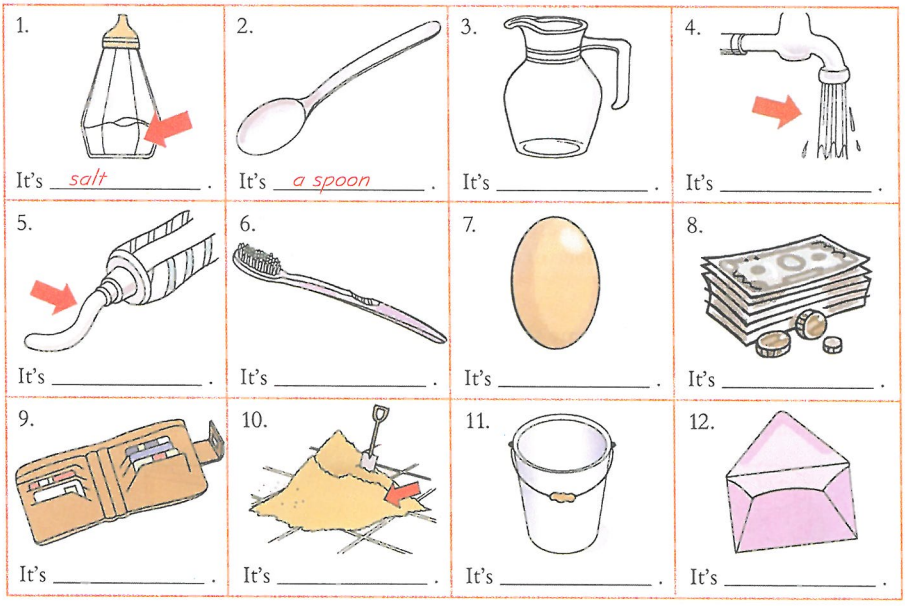
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

68.1 What are these things? Some are countable and some are uncountable. Write *a/an* if necessary. The names of these things are:

bucket	egg	envelope	money	pitcher	~~salt~~
sand	~~spoon~~	toothbrush	toothpaste	wallet	water

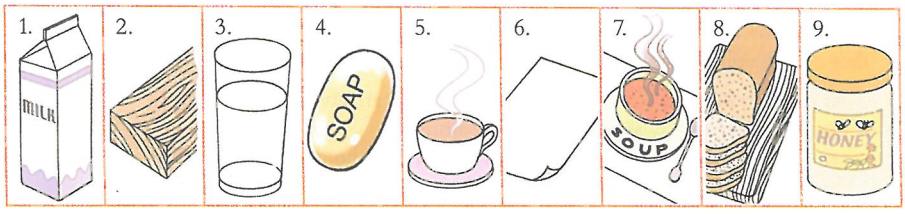


1. It's *salt*.
2. It's *a spoon*.
3. It's _____.
4. It's _____.
5. It's _____.
6. It's _____.
7. It's _____.
8. It's _____.
9. It's _____.
10. It's _____.
11. It's _____.
12. It's _____.

68.2 Some of these sentences are OK, but some need *a/an*. Write *a/an* where necessary.

1. I don't have watch. *a watch*
2. Do you like cheese? *OK*
3. I never wear hat. _____
4. Are you looking for job? _____
5. Kate doesn't eat meat. _____
6. Kate eats apple every day. _____
7. I'm going to party tonight. _____
8. Music is wonderful thing. _____
9. Jamaica is island. _____
10. I don't need key. _____
11. Everybody needs food. _____
12. I've got good idea. _____
13. Can you drive car? _____
14. Do you want cup of coffee? _____
15. I don't like coffee without milk. _____
16. Don't go out without coat. _____

68.3 What are these things? Write *a . . . of . . .* for each picture. Use the words in the boxes.



bar	bowl	~~carton~~		bread	honey	~~milk~~
cup	glass	jar	+	paper	soap	soup
loaf	piece	piece		tea	water	wood

1. *a carton of milk*
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 69

a cake / some cake / some cakes (countable/uncountable 2)

A a/an and some

a/an + *singular countable nouns* (**car**/**apple**/**shoe**, etc.):

- I need **a** new **car**.
- Would you like **an** apple?



an apple

some + *plural countable nouns* (**cars**/**apples**/**shoes**, etc.):

- I need **some** new **shoes**.
- Would you like **some apples**?



some apples

some + *uncountable nouns* (**water**/**money**/**music**, etc.):

- I need **some water**.
- Would you like **some cheese**? (*or* Would you like **a piece of** cheese?)



some cheese *or* **a piece of** cheese

Compare **a** and **some**:

- Nicole bought **a hat**, **some shoes**, and **some perfume**.
- I read **a newspaper**, made **some phone calls**, and listened to **some music**.

B

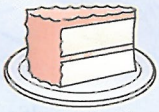
Many nouns are sometimes countable and sometimes uncountable. For example:



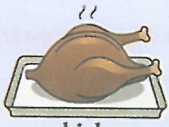
a cake



some cakes



some cake *or* **a piece of cake**



a chicken



some chickens



some chicken *or* **a piece of chicken**

Compare **a paper** (= a newspaper) and **some paper**:

- I want something to read. I'm going to buy **a paper**.

but

- I want to make a shopping list. I need **some paper** / **a piece of paper**. (*not* a paper)

C

Be careful with:

advice **bread** **furniture** **hair** **information** **news** **weather** **work**

These nouns are usually uncountable. So you can't say **a/an** . . . (~~a bread~~, ~~an advice~~) and they can't be plural (~~advices~~, ~~furnitures~~, etc.).

- Can I talk to you? I need **some advice**. (*not* an advice)
- I'm going to buy **some bread**. (*not* a bread)
- They've got **some** very nice **furniture** in their house. (*not* furnitures)
- Sylvia has very long **hair**. (*not* hairs)
- I'd like **some information** about hotels in Mexico City. (*not* informations)
- Listen! I've got **some** good **news**. (*not* a good news)
- It's nice **weather** today. (*not* a nice weather)
- "Do you like your job?" "Yes, but it's hard **work**." (*not* a hard work)

We say **a job** (*but not* a work):

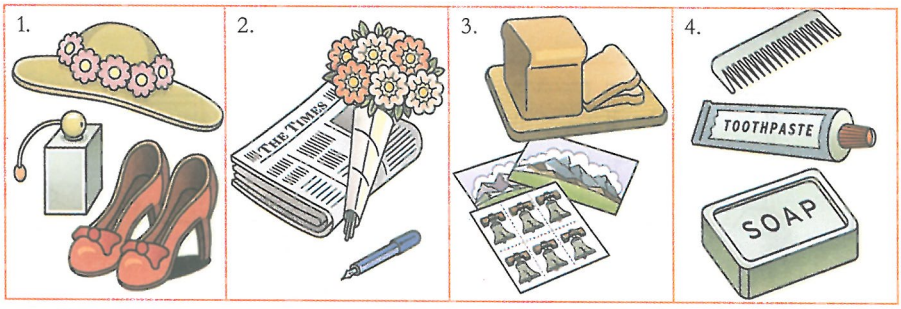
- I've got **a** new **job**. (*not* a new work)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

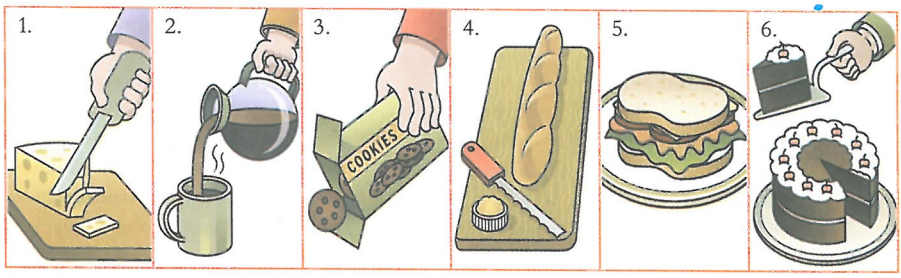
Exercises

69.1 What did you buy? Use the pictures to write sentences (*I bought . . .*).



1. *I bought some perfume, a hat, and some shoes.*
2. I bought _____
3. _____
4. _____

69.2 Write sentences with *Would you like a . . . ?* or *Would you like some . . . ?*



1. *Would you like some cheese* ? 4. _____ ?
2. Would you like _____ ? 5. _____ ?
3. Would _____ ? 6. _____ ?

69.3 Write *a/an* or *some*.

1. I read *a* book and listened to *some* music.
2. I need _____ money. I want to buy _____ food.
3. We met _____ interesting people at the party.
4. I'm going to open _____ window to get _____ fresh air.
5. Rachel didn't eat much for lunch – only _____ apple and _____ bread.
6. We live in _____ big house. There's _____ nice yard with _____ beautiful trees.
7. I'm going to make a table. First I need _____ wood.
8. Listen to me carefully. I'm going to give you _____ advice.
9. I want to write a letter. I need _____ paper and _____ pen.

69.4 Which is right?

1. I'm going to buy some new ~~shoe~~ / shoes. (*shoes* is right)
2. Mark has brown eye / eyes.
3. Paula has short black hair / hairs.
4. The tour guide gave us some information / informations about the city.
5. We're going to buy some new chair / chairs.
6. We're going to buy some new furniture / furnitures.
7. It's hard to find a work / job these days.
8. We had wonderful weather / a wonderful weather when we were on vacation.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 70

a/an and the

A

a/an



There are *three* windows here.
a window = window 1 or 2 or 3

- I have **a car**. (there are many cars and I have one)
- Can I ask **a question**? (there are many questions – can I ask one?)
- Is there **a hotel** near here? (there are many hotels – is there one near here?)
- Paris is **an interesting city**. (there are many interesting cities and Paris is one)
- Lisa is **a student**. (there are many students and Lisa is one)

the



There is only *one* window here –
the window.

- I'm going to wash **the car** tomorrow. (= my car)
- Can you repeat **the question**, please? (= the question that you asked)
- We enjoyed our vacation. **The hotel** was very nice. (= our hotel)
- Paris is **the capital of France**. (there is only one capital of France)
- Lisa is **the youngest student** in her class. (there is only one youngest student in her class)

Compare **a** and **the**:

- I bought **a jacket** and **a shirt**. **The jacket** was cheap, but **the shirt** was expensive.
  (= **the** jacket and **the** shirt **that I bought**)

B

We say **the** . . . when it is clear which thing or person we mean. For example:

the door / **the ceiling** / **the floor** / **the carpet** / **the light**, etc. *(of a room)*
the roof / **the backyard** / **the kitchen** / **the bathroom**, etc. *(of a house)*
the airport / **the police station** / **the bus station** / **the mayor's office**, etc. *(of a city)*

- "Where's Tom?" "In **the kitchen**." (= the kitchen of this house or apartment)
- Turn off **the light** and close **the door**. (= the light and the door of the room)
- Do you live far from **the airport**? (= the airport of your town)
- I'd like to speak to **the manager**, please. (= the manager of this store, etc.)



www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

a/an → Unit 66 the → Units 71–74

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

70.1 Write *a*/*an* or *the*.

1. We enjoyed our trip. *The* hotel was very nice.
2. "Can I ask *a* question?" "Sure. What do you want to know?"
3. You look very tired. You need _____ vacation.
4. "Where's Tom?" "He's in _____ kitchen."
5. Eve is _____ interesting person. You should meet her.
6. *A:* Excuse me, can you tell me how to get to _____ post office?
   B: Yes, go straight and then take _____ next left.
7. *A:* Let's go and see _____ movie tonight.
   B: OK, that's _____ good idea.
8. It's _____ nice morning. Let's go for _____ walk.
9. Amanda is _____ student. When she finishes school, she wants to be _____ journalist. She lives with two friends in _____ apartment near _____ college where she is studying. _____ apartment is small, but she likes it.
10. Peter and Mary have two children, _____ boy and _____ girl. _____ boy is seven years old, and _____ girl is three. Peter works in _____ factory. Mary doesn't have _____ job outside the home right now.

70.2 Complete the sentences. Use *a* or *the* + these words:

airport cup dictionary ~~door~~ floor picture



70.3 These sentences are not correct. Put in *a*/*an* or *the* where necessary.

1. Don't forget to turn off light when you go out. — *turn off the light*
2. Enjoy your trip, and don't forget to send me postcard. — _____
3. What is name of this town? — _____
4. Canada is very big country. — _____
5. What is largest city in Canada? — _____
6. I like this room, but I don't like color of carpet. — _____
7. "Are you OK?" "No, I've got headache." — _____
8. We live in old house near station. — _____
9. What is name of director of movie we saw last night? — _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 71

the . . .

A

We use **the** when it is clear which thing or person we mean:

- What is **the name** of this street? (there is only one name)
- Who is **the best player** on your team? (there is only one best player)
- Can you tell me **the time**, please? (= the time *now*)
- My office is on **the first floor**. (= the first floor of the building)

Don't forget **the**:

- Do you live near **the airport**? (*not* near airport)
- Excuse me, where is **the nearest bank**? (*not* where is nearest . . .)

B

the same . . .

- We live on **the same street**. (*not* on same street)
- "Are these two books different?" "No, they're **the same**." (*not* they're same)

C

We say:

the sun / the moon / the world / the sky / the ocean / the country

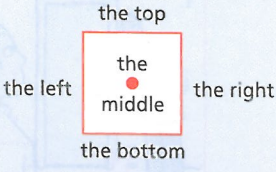


- **The sky** is blue and **the sun** is shining.
- Do you live in a city or in **the country**?

the police / the fire department / the army (of a city, country, etc.)

- My brother is a soldier. He's in **the army**.
- What do you think of **the police**? Do they do a good job?

the top / the end / the middle / the left, etc.



- Write your name at **the top of** the page.
- My house is at **the end of** this block.
- The table is in **the middle of** the room.
- Do you drive on **the right** or on **the left** in your country?

(play) **the piano / the guitar / the trumpet**, etc. (musical instruments)



- Paula is learning to play **the piano**.

the radio



- I listen to **the radio** a lot.

the Internet



- Do you use **the Internet** much?

D

We do *not* use **the** with:

television/TV

- I watch **TV** a lot.
- What's on **television** tonight?

but Can you turn off **the television**? (= the TV set)



breakfast/lunch/dinner

- What did you have for **breakfast**? (*not* the breakfast)
- **Dinner** is ready!

next/last + week/month/year/summer/Monday, etc.

- I'm not working **next week**. (*not* the next week)
- Did you take a vacation **last summer**? (*not* the last summer)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین زاده دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

71.1 Put in *the* where necessary. Write *OK* if the sentence is already correct.

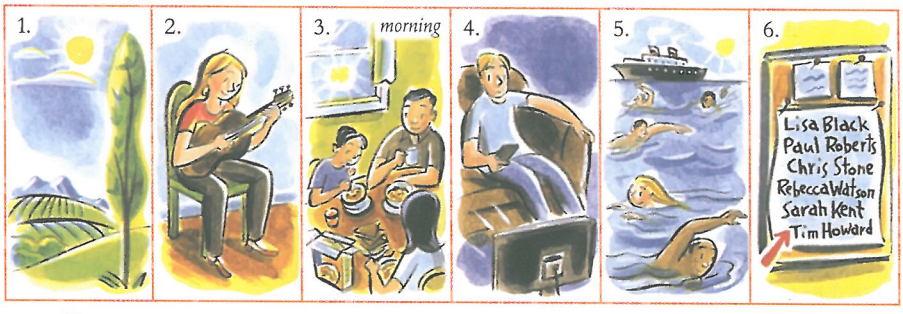
1. What is name of this street? — *the name*
2. What's on television tonight? — *OK*
3. Our apartment is on second floor. _____
4. Would you like to go to moon? _____
5. What is best hotel in this town? _____
6. What time is lunch? _____
7. How far is it to football stadium? _____
8. We're taking a trip at end of May. _____
9. What are you doing next weekend? _____
10. I didn't like her first time I met her. _____
11. I'm going out after dinner. _____
12. Internet is a good place to get information. _____
13. My sister got married last month. _____
14. My dictionary is on top shelf on right. _____
15. We live in country about 10 miles from nearest town. _____

71.2 Complete the sentences. Use *the same* + these words:

age color problem ~~street~~ time

1. I live on North Street, and you live on North Street. We live on *the same street*.
2. I arrived at 8:30, and you arrived at 8:30. We arrived at _____.
3. Jim is 25, and Sue is 25. Jim and Sue are _____.
4. My shirt is dark blue, and so is my jacket. My shirt and jacket are _____.
5. I have no money, and you have no money. We have _____.

71.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use *the* if necessary.



1. *The sun* is shining.
2. She's playing _____.
3. They're having _____.
4. He's watching _____.
5. They're swimming in _____.
6. Tim's name is at _____ of the list.

71.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the list. Use *the* if necessary.

capital ~~dinner~~ lunch middle name police sky television

1. We had *dinner* at a restaurant last night.
2. We stayed at a very nice hotel, but I don't remember _____.
3. _____ is very clear tonight. You can see all the stars.
4. Sometimes there are some good programs on _____ late at night.
5. _____ stopped me because I was driving too fast.
6. Tokyo is _____ of Japan.
7. "What did you have for _____?" "A salad."
8. I woke up in _____ of the night.

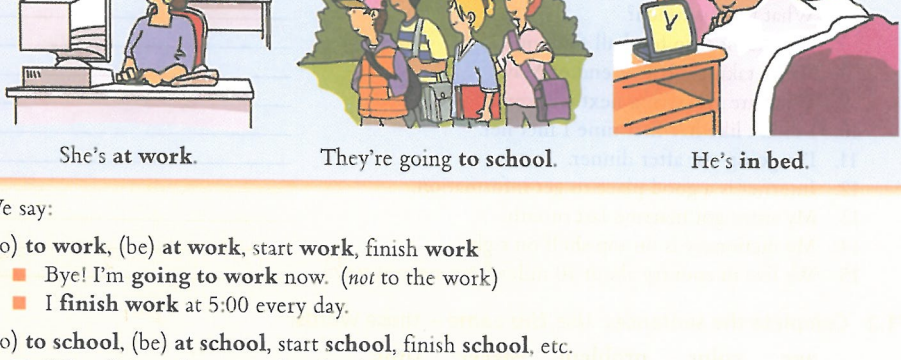
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 72

go to work go home go to the movies

A



She's **at work**. They're going **to school**. He's **in bed**.

We say:

(go) **to work**, (be) **at work**, start **work**, finish **work**
- Bye! I'm **going to work** now. (*not* to the work)
- I **finish work** at 5:00 every day.

(go) **to school**, (be) **at school**, start **school**, finish **school**, etc.
- What did you learn **at school** today? (*not* at the school)
- Some children don't like **school**.

(go) **to college**, (be) **in college**
- Helen wants to **go to college** when she **finishes high school**.
- What did you study **in college**?

(go) **to class**, (be) **in class**
- I can't talk now. I have to **go to class**.
- I'll **be in class** until 5:00 today. I'll call you when I get out.

(go) **to prison/jail**, (be) **in prison/jail**
- Why is he **in prison**? What did he do?

(go) **to church**, (be) **in/at church**
- David usually goes **to church** on Sundays.

(go) **to bed**, (be) **in bed**
- I'm tired. I'm **going to bed**. (*not* to the bed)
- "Where's Jane?" "She's **in bed**."

(go) **home**, (be) **(at) home**, etc.
- I'm tired. I'm **going home**. (*not* to home)
- Are you going out tonight, or are you **staying home**? (*or* **staying at home**)

B

We say:

(go to) **the movies / the theater / the bank / the post office / the hospital / the station /the airport**
- I never go to **the theater**, but I go to **the movies** a lot.
- "Are you going to **the bank**?" "No, to **the post office**."
- The number 5 bus goes to **the airport**; the number 8 goes to **the train station**.

(go to) **the doctor**, **the dentist**
- You're not well. Why don't you go to **the doctor**?
- I have to go to **the dentist** tomorrow.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

72.1 Where are these people? Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need *the*.



1. He's in *bed* . 3. She's in _____ . 5. They're at _____ .
2. They're at _____ . 4. She's at _____ . 6. He's in _____ .

72.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the list. Use *the* if necessary.

bank bed church home post office school station

1. I need to get some money. I have to go to *the bank* .
2. David usually goes to *church* on Sundays.
3. In the United States, children start _____ at the age of five.
4. There were a lot of people at _____ waiting for the train.
5. I called you last night, but you weren't at _____ .
6. I'm going to _____ now. Good night!
7. I'm going to _____ to get some stamps.

72.3 Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need *the*.

1. If you want to catch a plane, you *go to the airport* .
2. If you want to see a movie, you go to _____ .
3. If you are tired and you want to sleep, you _____ .
4. If you rob a bank and the police catch you, you _____ .
5. If you have a problem with your teeth, you _____ .
6. If you want to study after you finish high school, you _____ .
7. If you are badly injured in an accident, you _____ .

72.4 Are these sentences OK? Correct the sentences where necessary.

1. We went to movies last night. *to the movies*
2. I finish work at 5:00 every day. *OK*
3. Lisa wasn't feeling well yesterday, so she went to doctor. _____
4. I wasn't feeling well this morning, so I stayed in bed. _____
5. Why is Angela always late for work? _____
6. "Where are your children?" "They're at school." _____
7. We have no money in bank. _____
8. When I was younger, I went to church every Sunday. _____
9. What time do you usually get home from work? _____
10. Sorry I couldn't call you back earlier. I was in class. _____
11. "Where should we meet?" "At station." _____
12. Kate takes her children to school every day. _____
13. Jim is sick. He's in hospital. _____
14. Would you like to go to college? _____
15. Would you like to go to theater tonight? _____

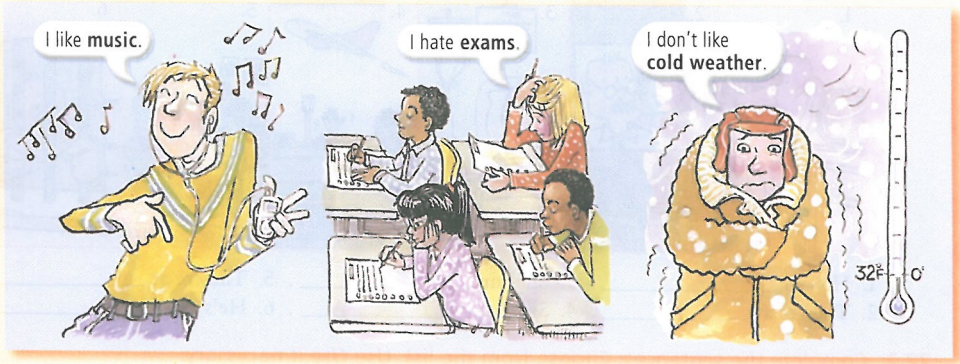
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 73

I like music. I hate exams.

A



Do not use **the** for general ideas:

- I like **music**, especially **classical music**. (*not* the music . . . the classical music)
- We don't eat **meat** very often. (*not* the meat)
- **Life** is not possible without **water**. (*not* The life . . . the water)
- I hate **exams**. (*not* the exams)
- Do you know where I can buy **foreign newspapers**?
- I'm not very good at writing **letters**.



Do not use **the** for games and sports:

- My favorite sports are **tennis** and **skiing**. (*not* the tennis . . . the skiing)

Do not use **the** for languages or school subjects (**history/geography/physics/biology**, etc.):

- Do you think **English** is difficult? (*not* the English)
- Tom's brother is studying **physics** and **chemistry**.

B

flowers or **the flowers**?

Compare:

- **Flowers** are beautiful. (= flowers in general)
- I don't like **cold weather**. (= cold weather in general)
- We don't eat **fish** very often. (= fish in general)
- Are you interested in **history**? (= history in general)

- I love your garden. **The flowers** are beautiful. (= the flowers in your garden)
- **The weather** isn't very good today. (= the weather today)
- We had a great meal last night. **The fish** was excellent. (= the fish we ate last night)
- Do you know much about **the history** of your country?



the → Units 70–72, 74

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

73.1 What do you think about these things?

big cities	chocolate	computer games	dogs	exams
housework	jazz	museums	parties	tennis

Choose seven of these things and write sentences with:

I like . . . I don't like . . . I love . . . I hate . . . . . . is/are all right

1. *I hate exams.* OR *I like exams.* OR *Exams are all right. (etc.)*
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____

73.2 Are you interested in these things? Write sentences with:

I'm (very) interested in . . . I know a lot about . . . I don't know much about . . .
I'm not interested in . . . I know a little about . . . I don't know anything about . . .

1. (history) *I'm very interested in history.*
2. (politics) I _____
3. (sports) _____
4. (art) _____
5. (astronomy) _____
6. (economics) _____

73.3 Which is right?

1. My favorite sport is football / ~~the football.~~ (*football* is right)
2. I like this hotel. ~~Rooms~~ / The rooms are very nice. (*The rooms* is right)
3. Everybody needs friends / the friends.
4. Jane doesn't go to parties / the parties very often.
5. I went shopping at the mall this morning. Stores / The stores were very crowded.
6. "Where's milk / the milk?" "It's in the fridge."
7. I don't like milk / the milk. I never drink it.
8. "Do you play any sports?" "Yes, I play basketball / the basketball."
9. "What does your brother do?" "He sells computers / the computers."
10. We went for a swim in the river. Water / The water was very cold.
11. I don't like swimming in cold water / the cold water.
12. Excuse me, can you pass salt / the salt, please?
13. I like this town. I like people / the people here.
14. Vegetables / The vegetables are good for you.
15. Houses / The houses on this street are all the same.
16. I can't sing this song. I don't know words / the words.
17. I enjoy taking pictures / the pictures. It's my hobby.
18. Do you want to see pictures / the pictures that I took when I was on vacation?
19. English / The English is used a lot in international business / the international business.
20. Money / The money doesn't always bring happiness / the happiness.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 74

the . . . (names of places)

A

Places (continents, countries, states, islands, towns, etc.)

In general we do *not* use **the** with names of places:

- **Quebec** is a province of **Canada**.
- **Bangkok** is the capital of **Thailand**.
- **Hawaii** is an island in the Pacific.
- **Peru** is in **South America**.



But we use **the** in names with **republic**/**states**/**kingdom**:

the Dominican **Republic**
the Czech **Republic**
the United **States** of America (**the** USA)
the United **Kingdom** (**the** UK)



B

the -s (plural names)

We use **the** with *plural* names of countries/islands/mountains:

the Netherlands **the** Hawaiian Islands
the Philippines **the** Andes



C

Seas, rivers, etc.

We use **the** with names of oceans/seas/rivers/canals:

the Atlantic (Ocean) **the** Mediterranean (Sea) **the** Amazon
the Nile (River) **the** Panama Canal **the** Black (Sea)



D

Places in towns (streets, buildings, etc.)

In general we do *not* use **the** with names of streets, squares, etc.:

- Kevin lives on **Central Avenue**.
- Where is **Main Street**, please?
- **Times Square** is in New York.



We do not use **the** with names of airports, stations, universities, and parks.

O'Hare International Airport **Harvard University**
Pennsylvania Station **Yosemite** (National Park)



But we use **the** with names of most hotels, museums, theaters, and monuments:

the Regent Hotel **the** National Theater
the Metropolitan (Museum) **the** Odeon (movie theater)
the Taj Mahal **the** Lincoln Memorial



E

the . . . of . . .

We use **the** + names with . . . **of** . . . :

the Museum **of** Modern Art **the** University **of** California
the Great Wall **of** China **the** Statue **of** Liberty



We say **the north** / **the south** / **the east** / **the west** (of . . .):

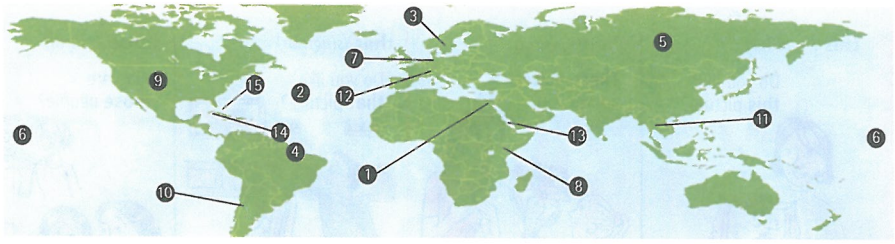
- I've been to **the north of Italy**, but not to **the south**.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

74.1 Answer these geography questions. Choose from the box. Use *The* if necessary.



1.	Cairo	is the capital of Egypt.
2.	The Atlantic	is between Africa and America.
3.		is a country in northern Europe.
4.		is a river in South America.
5.		is the largest continent in the world.
6.		is the largest ocean.
7.		is a river in Europe.
8.		is a country in East Africa.
9.		is between Canada and Mexico.
10.		are mountains in South America.
11.		is the capital of Thailand.
12.		are mountains in central Europe.
13.		is between Saudi Arabia and Africa.
14.		is an island in the Caribbean.
15.		are a group of islands near Florida.

Alps
Amazon
Andes
Asia
~~Atlantic~~
Bahamas
Bangkok
~~Cairo~~
Jamaica
Kenya
Pacific
Red Sea
Rhine
Sweden
United States

74.2 Write *the* where necessary. If the sentence is already correct, write *OK*.

1.	Kevin lives on Central Avenue.	OK
2.	We went to see a play at National Theater.	at the National Theater
3.	Have you ever been to China?	
4.	Have you ever been to Philippines?	
5.	Have you ever been to south of France?	
6.	Can you tell me where Washington Monument is?	
7.	Can you tell me where Hollywood Boulevard is?	
8.	Can you tell me where Museum of Art is?	
9.	Europe is bigger than Australia.	
10.	Belgium is smaller than Netherlands.	
11.	Which river is longer – Mississippi or Nile?	
12.	Did you go to National Gallery when you were in Washington?	
13.	We stayed at Park Hotel near Central Park.	
14.	How far is it from Times Square to Kennedy Airport?	
15.	Rocky Mountains are in North America.	
16.	Texas is famous for oil and cowboys.	
17.	I hope to go to United Kingdom next year.	
18.	Mary comes from west of Ireland.	
19.	Alan is a student at University of Michigan.	
20.	Panama Canal joins Atlantic Ocean and Pacific Ocean.	

→ Additional exercises 33–34 (pages 261–262)

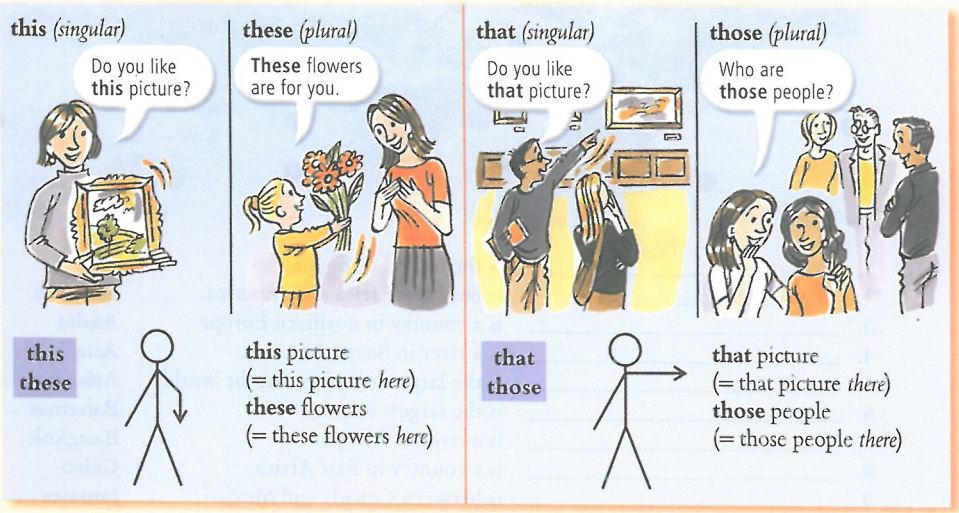
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 75

this/that/these/those

A



B

We use **this** / **that** / **these** / **those** with a noun (**this picture** / **those girls**, etc.) or without a noun:

with a noun

- **This hotel** is expensive, but it's very nice.
- "Who's **that girl**?" "I don't know."
- Do you like **these shoes**? I bought them last week.
- **Those apples** look nice. Can I have one?

without a noun

- **This** is a nice hotel, but it's very expensive.
- "Excuse me, is **this** your bag?" "Oh yes, thank you."
- Who's **that**? (= Who is that person?)
- Which shoes do you like better – **these** or **those**?

C

that = something that *has happened*:

- "I'm sorry I forgot to call you." "**That**'s all right."
- **That** was a really nice meal. Thank you very much.

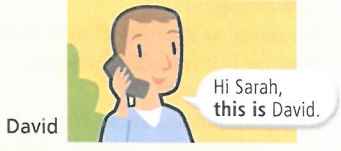
that = what somebody *has just said*:

- "You're a teacher, aren't you?" "Yes, **that**'s right."
- "Mark has a new job." "He does? I didn't know **that**."
- "I'm going on vacation next week." "Oh, **that**'s nice."

D

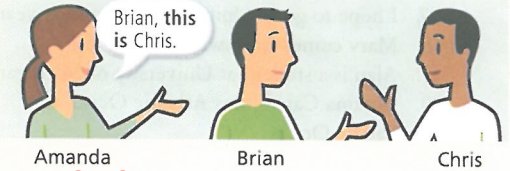
We use **this is** . . . and **is this** . . . ? on the telephone:

- Hi Sarah, **this is** David. (= the speaker)
- **Is this** Sarah? (= the other person)



We use **this is** . . . to introduce people:

- *A:* Brian, **this is** Chris.
  B: Hello, Chris. Nice to meet you.
  C: Hi.



www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

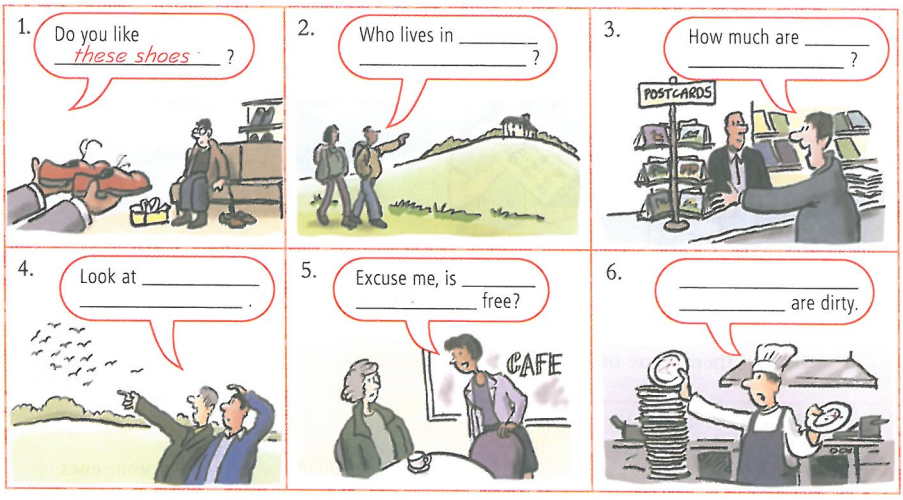
this one / that one → Unit 76

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

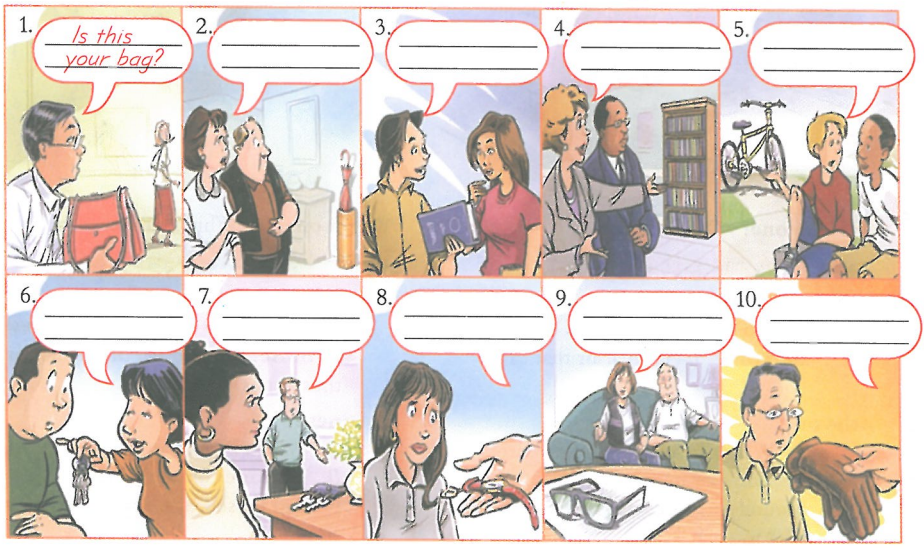
Exercises

75.1 Complete the sentences. Use ***this/that/these/those*** + these words:

birds **dishes** **house** **postcards** **seat** ~~**shoes**~~



75.2 Write questions: ***Is this/that your . . . ?*** or ***Are these/those your . . . ?***



75.3 Complete the sentences with ***this is*** or ***that's*** or ***that***.

1. *A:* I'm sorry I'm late.
   B: That's all right.
2. *A:* I can't come to the party tomorrow.
   B: Oh, _____ too bad. Why not?
3. *(on the phone)*
   Sue: Hello, Jane. _____ Sue.
   Jane: Oh, hi Sue. How are you?
4. *A:* You're lazy.
   B: _____ not true!
5. *A:* Beth plays the piano very well.
   B: Does she? I didn't know _____ .
6. *Mark meets Paul's sister, Helen.*
   Paul: Mark, _____ my sister, Helen.
   Mark: Hi, Helen.
7. *A:* I'm sorry I was angry yesterday.
   B: _____ OK. Forget it!
8. *A:* You're a friend of Tim's, aren't you?
   B: Yes, _____ right.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 76

one/ones

A one (= a . . .)



Would you like **one** ?

= Would you like **a chocolate** ?

one = a/an . . . (a chocolate / an apple, etc.)

- I need **a pen**. Do you have **one**? (**one = a pen**)
- *A:* Is there **a bank** near here?
  B: Yes, there's **one** on the corner. (**one = a bank**)

B one and ones

one *(singular)*



Which **one**? = Which **hat**?

one = hat/car/girl, etc.

this one / that one

- Which **car** is yours? **This one** or **that one**? (= this car or that car)

the one . . .

- *A:* Which **hotel** did you stay at?
  B: **The one** near the airport.
- I found this **key**. Is it **the one** you lost?

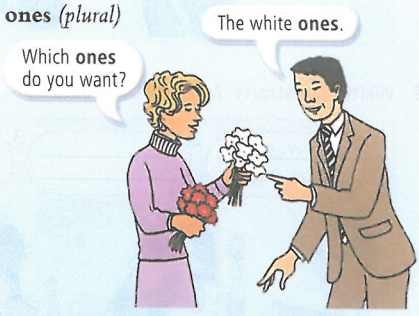
the . . . one

- I don't like the black **coat**, but I like **the brown one**.
- Don't buy that **camera**. Buy **the other one**.

a/an . . . one

- This **cup** is dirty. Can I have **a clean one**?
- That **cookie** was good. I'm going to have **another one**.

ones *(plural)*



Which **ones**? = Which **flowers**?

ones = flowers/cars/girls, etc.

these/those (*without* ones)

- Which flowers do you want? **These** or **those**? (*usually not* these ones or those ones)

the ones . . .

- *A:* Which **books** are yours?
  B: **The ones** on the table.
- I found these **keys**. Are they **the ones** you lost?

the . . . ones

- I don't like the red **shoes**, but I like **the green ones**.
- Don't buy those **apples**. Buy **the other ones**.

some . . . ones

- These **cups** are dirty. Can we have **some clean ones**?
- My **shoes** are very old. I'm going to buy **some new ones**.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

76.1 A asks B some questions. Use the information in the box to write B's answers. Use ***one*** (*not* ***a/an*** . . .) in the answers.

B doesn't need a car	**B just had a cup of coffee**
there's a drugstore on First Avenue	**B is going to get a bike**
~~**B doesn't have a pen**~~	**B doesn't have an umbrella**

1. *A:* Can you lend me a pen? *B:* I'm sorry, *I don't have one* .
2. *A:* Would you like to have a car? *B:* No, I don't _____ .
3. *A:* Do you have a bike? *B:* No, but _____ .
4. *A:* Can you lend me an umbrella? *B:* I'm sorry, but _____ .
5. *A:* Would you like a cup of coffee? *B:* No, thank you. _____ .
6. *A:* Is there a drugstore near here? *B:* Yes, _____ .

76.2 Complete the sentences. Use ***a/an . . . one***. Use the words in the list.

better **big** ~~**clean**~~ **different** **new** **old**

1. This cup is dirty. Can I have *a clean one* ?
2. I'm going to sell my car and buy _____ .
3. That's not a very good picture. This is _____ .
4. I want today's newspaper. This is _____ .
5. This box is too small. I need _____ .
6. Why do we always go to the same restaurant? Let's go to _____ .

76.3 A is talking to B. Use the information to complete the conversations. Use ***one/ones***.

1. *A stayed at a hotel. It was near the airport.*
   A: We stayed at a hotel.
   B: *Which one* ?
   A: *The one near the airport*

2. *A sees some shoes in a store window. They're green.*
   A: I like those shoes.
   B: Which _____ ?
   A: The _____

3. *A is looking at a house. It has a red door.*
   A: That's a nice house.
   B: _____ ?
   A: _____ with _____

4. *A is looking at some CDs. They're on the top shelf.*
   A: Are those your CDs?
   B: _____ ?
   A: _____

5. *A is looking at a jacket in a store. It's black.*
   A: Do you like that jacket?
   B: _____ ?
   A: _____

6. *A is looking at a picture. It's on the wall.*
   A: That's an interesting picture.
   B: _____ ?
   A: _____

7. *A sees a girl in a group of people. She's tall with long hair.*
   A: Do you know that girl?
   B: _____ ?
   A: _____

8. *A is looking at some flowers in the garden. They're yellow.*
   A: Those flowers are beautiful.
   B: _____ ?
   A: _____

9. *A is looking at a man in a restaurant. He has a mustache and glasses.*
   A: Who's that man?
   B: _____ ?
   A: _____

10. *A took some pictures at the party last week.*
    A: Did I show you my pictures?
    B: _____ ?
    A: _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 77

some and any

A

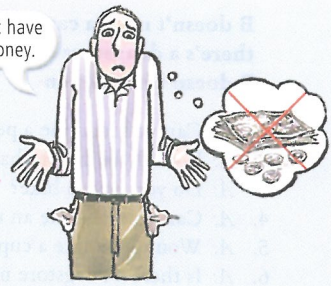
some



Use **some** in *positive* sentences:

I'm going to buy **some** clothes.
There's **some** ice in the fridge.
We made **some** mistakes.

any



Use **any** in *negative* sentences:

- I'm **not** going to buy **any** clothes.
- There **isn't any** milk in the fridge.
- We **didn't** make **any** mistakes.

B

any and **some** in questions

In most questions (but not all) we use **any** (*not* **some**):

- Is there **any** ice in the fridge?
- Does he have **any** friends?
- Do you need **any** help?

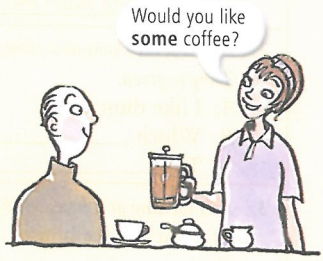
We normally use **some** (*not* **any**) when we *offer* things (**Would you like . . . ?**):

- *A:* Would you like **some** coffee?
  B: Yes, please.

or when we *ask* for things (**Can I have . . . ?**, etc.):

- *A:* Can I have **some** soup, please?
  B: Yes. Help yourself.
- *A:* Can you lend me **some** money?
  B: Sure. How much do you need?





C

some and **any** without a noun

- I didn't take any pictures, but Jane took **some**. (= some pictures)
- You can have some coffee, but I don't want **any**. (= any coffee)
- I just made some coffee. Would you like **some**? (= some coffee)
- "Where's your luggage?" "I don't have **any**." (= any luggage)
- "Are there any cookies?" "Yes, there are **some** in the kitchen." (= some cookies)

D

something / somebody (*or* **someone**)

- She said **something**.
- I saw **somebody** (*or* **someone**).
- Would you like **something** to eat?
- **Somebody**'s at the door.

anything / anybody (*or* **anyone**)

- She **didn't** say **anything**.
- I **didn't** see **anybody** (*or* **anyone**).
- Are you doing **anything** tonight?
- Where's Sue? Has **anybody** seen her?

a and some → Unit 69 somebody/anything etc. → Unit 80

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

77.1 Write *some* or *any*.

1. I bought *some* cheese, but I didn't buy *any* bread.
2. I'm going to the post office. I need _____ stamps.
3. There aren't _____ gas stations in this part of town.
4. Gary and Alice don't have _____ children.
5. Do you have _____ brothers or sisters?
6. There are _____ beautiful flowers in the garden.
7. Do you know _____ good hotels in Miami?
8. "Would you like _____ tea?" "Yes, please."
9. When we were on vacation, we visited _____ very interesting places.
10. Don't buy _____ rice. We don't need _____ .
11. I went out to buy _____ oranges, but they didn't have _____ at the store.
12. I'm thirsty. Can I have _____ water, please?

77.2 Complete the sentences. Use *some* or *any* + the words in the box.

air	batteries	friends	fruit	help
languages	milk	pictures	questions	~~shampoo~~

1. I want to wash my hair. Is there *any shampoo* ?
2. The police want to talk to you. They want to ask you _____ .
3. I don't have my camera, so I can't take _____ .
4. Do you speak _____ foreign _____ ?
5. Last night I went to a restaurant with _____ of mine.
6. Can I have _____ in my coffee, please?
7. This camera isn't working. There aren't _____ in it.
8. It's hot in this office. I'm going out for _____ fresh _____ .
9. *A:* Would you like _____ ?
   B: No, thank you. I've had enough to eat.
10. I can do this job alone. I don't need _____ .

77.3 Complete the sentences. Use *some* or *any*.

1. Jane didn't take any pictures, but *I took some* . (I / take)
2. "Where's your luggage?" " *I don't have any* ." (I / not / have)
3. "Do you need any money?" "No, thank you. _____ ." (I / have)
4. "Can you lend me some money?" "I'm sorry, but _____ ." (I / not / have)
5. The tomatoes at the store didn't look very good, so _____ . (I / not / buy)
6. There were some nice oranges at the store, so _____ . (I / buy)
7. "How many phone calls did you make yesterday?" " _____ ." (I / not / make)

77.4 Write *something/somebody* or *anything/anybody*.

1. A woman stopped me and said *something* , but I didn't understand.
2. "What's wrong?" "There's _____ in my eye."
3. Do you know _____ about politics?
4. I went to the store, but I didn't buy _____ .
5. _____ broke the window. I don't know who.
6. There isn't _____ in the bag. It's empty.
7. I'm looking for my keys. Has _____ seen them?
8. Would you like _____ to drink?
9. I didn't eat _____ because I wasn't hungry.
10. This is a secret. Please don't tell _____ .

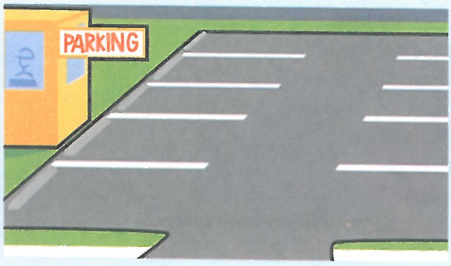
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 78

not + any no none

A



The parking lot is empty.
There aren't any cars / There are no cars } in the parking lot.
How many cars are there in the parking lot? None.

not (-n't) + any

- There aren't any cars in the parking lot.
- Tracey and Jeff don't have any children.
- You can have some coffee, but I don't want any.

no + *noun* (**no cars** / **no garage**, etc.)

no . . . = not any *or* **not a**

- There are **no cars** in the parking lot. (= there aren't any cars)
- We have **no coffee**. (= we don't have any coffee)
- It's a nice house, but there's **no garage**. (= there isn't a garage)

We use **no** . . . especially after **have/has** and **there is/are**.

negative verb + **any** = *positive verb* + **no**

- They **don't** have **any** children. *or* They **have no** children. (*not* They don't have no children)
- There **isn't any** sugar in your coffee. *or* There's **no** sugar in your coffee.

B

No and **none**

Use **no** + *noun* (**no money** / **no children**, etc.):

- We have **no money**.
- Everything was OK. There were **no problems**.

Use **none** alone (*without* a noun):

- "How much money do you have?" "**None**." (= no money)
- "Were there any problems?" "No, **none**." (= no problems)

C

None and **no one**

none = 0 (zero)
no one = nobody

None is an answer for **How much?** / **How many?** (things or people):

- "**How much** money do you have?" "**None**." (= no money)
- "**How many** people did you meet?" "**None**." (= no people)

No one is an answer for **Who?**:

- "**Who** did you meet?" "**No one**." *or* "**Nobody**."

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین آرشیو دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

78.1 Write these sentences again with *no*.

1. We don't have any money. *We have no money.*
2. There aren't any stores near here. There are _____
3. Carla doesn't have any free time. _____
4. There isn't a light in this room. _____

Write these sentences again with *any*.

5. We have no money. *We don't have any money.*
6. There's no milk in the fridge. _____
7. There are no buses today. _____
8. Tom has no brothers or sisters. _____

78.2 Write *no* or *any*.

1. There's *no* sugar in your coffee.
2. My brother is married, but he doesn't have _____ children.
3. Sue doesn't speak _____ foreign languages.
4. I'm afraid there's _____ coffee. Would you like some tea?
5. "Look at those birds!" "Birds? Where? I can't see _____ birds."
6. "Do you know where Jessica is?" "No, I have _____ idea."

Write *no*, *any*, or *none*.

7. There aren't _____ pictures on the wall.
8. The weather was cold, but there was _____ wind.
9. I wanted to buy some oranges, but they didn't have _____ at the store.
10. Everything was correct. There were _____ mistakes.
11. "How much luggage do you have?" "_____."
12. "How much luggage do you have?" "I don't have _____."

78.3 Complete the sentences. Use *any* or *no* + the words in the box.

air conditioning	**answer**	**difference**	**friends**	**furniture**
line	**money**	~~**problems**~~	**questions**	

1. Everything was OK. There were *no problems*.
2. Jack and Emily would like to take a vacation, but they have _____.
3. I'm not going to answer _____.
4. He's always alone. He has _____.
5. There is _____ between these two machines. They're exactly the same.
6. There wasn't _____ in the room. It was completely empty.
7. I tried to call you yesterday, but there was _____.
8. The house is hot because there isn't _____.
9. There was _____ outside the movie theater, so we didn't have to wait to get our tickets.

78.4 Write short answers (one or two words) to these questions. Use *none* where necessary.

1. How many letters did you write yesterday? *Two.* OR *A lot.* OR *None.*
2. How many sisters do you have? _____
3. How much coffee did you drink yesterday? _____
4. How many pictures have you taken today? _____
5. How many legs does a snake have? _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 79

not + anybody/anyone/anything nobody/no one/nothing

A

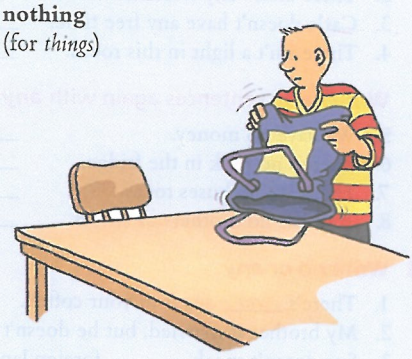
not + anybody/anyone
nobody / no one
(for *people*)



- There **isn't** {**anybody** / **anyone**} in the room.
- There **is** {**nobody** / **no one**} in the room.
- *A:* **Who** is in the room?
  B: **Nobody.** / **No one.**

-body and **-one** are the same:
anybody = **anyone** **nobody** = **no one**

not + anything
nothing
(for *things*)



- There **isn't anything** in the bag.
- There **is nothing** in the bag.
- *A:* **What's** in the bag?
  B: **Nothing.**

B

not + anybody/anyone
- I **don't** know **anybody** (*or* **anyone**) here.

nobody = not + anybody
no one = not + anyone
- I'm lonely. I have **nobody** to talk to. (= I don't have **anybody**)
- The house is empty. There is **no one** in it. (= There **isn't anyone** in it.)

not + anything
- I **can't** remember **anything**.

nothing = not + anything
- She said **nothing**. (= She **didn't** say **anything**.)
- There's **nothing** to eat. (= There **isn't anything** to eat.)

C

You can use **nobody / no one / nothing** at the beginning of a sentence or alone (to answer a question):

- The house is empty. **Nobody** lives there. (*not* Anybody lives there)
- "Who did you speak to?" "**No one.**"
- **Nothing** happened. (*not* Anything happened)
- "What did you say?" "**Nothing.**"

D

Remember: *negative verb* + **anybody / anyone / anything**
positive verb + **nobody / no one / nothing**

- He does**n't** know **anything**. (*not* He doesn't know nothing)
- Don't tell **anybody**. (*not* Don't tell nobody)
- There **is nothing** to do in this town. (*not* There isn't nothing)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین آرشیو دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

some and any → Unit 77 any and no → Unit 78 somebody/anything/nowhere, etc → Unit 80

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

79.1 Write these sentences again with *nobody / no one* or *nothing*.

1. There isn't anything in the bag. *There's nothing in the bag.*
2. There isn't anybody in the office. There's _____
3. I don't have anything to do. I _____
4. There isn't anything on TV. _____
5. There wasn't anyone at home. _____
6. We didn't find anything. _____

79.2 Write these sentences again with *anybody/anyone* or *anything*.

1. There's nothing in the bag. *There isn't anything in the bag.*
2. There was nobody on the bus. There wasn't _____
3. I have nothing to read. _____
4. I have no one to help me. _____
5. She heard nothing. _____
6. We have nothing for dinner. _____

79.3 Answer these questions with *nobody / no one* or *nothing*.

1a. What did you say? *Nothing.*
2a. Who saw you? *Nobody.*
3a. What do you want? _____
4a. Who did you meet? _____
5a. Who knows the answer? _____
6a. What did you buy? _____
7a. What happened? _____
8a. Who was late? _____

Now answer the same questions with full sentences.
Use *nobody / no one / nothing* or *anybody/anyone/anything*:

1b. *I didn't say anything.*
2b. *Nobody saw me.*
3b. I don't _____
4b. I _____
5b. _____ the answer.
6b. _____
7b. _____
8b. _____

79.4 Complete the sentences. Use:
nobody / no one / nothing or ***anybody/anyone/anything***

1. That house is empty. *Nobody* lives there.
2. Jack has a bad memory. He can't remember *anything*.
3. Be quiet! Don't say _____.
4. I didn't know about the meeting. _____ told me.
5. "What did you have to eat?" " _____. I wasn't hungry."
6. I didn't eat _____. I wasn't hungry.
7. Helen was sitting alone. She wasn't with _____.
8. I'm sorry, I can't help you. There's _____ I can do.
9. I don't know _____ about car engines.
10. The museum is free. It doesn't cost _____ to go in.
11. I heard a knock at the door, but when I opened it, there was _____ there.
12. Antonio spoke very fast. I didn't understand _____.
13. "What are you doing tonight?" " _____. Why?"
14. Helen is out of town. _____ knows where she is. She didn't tell _____ where she was going.

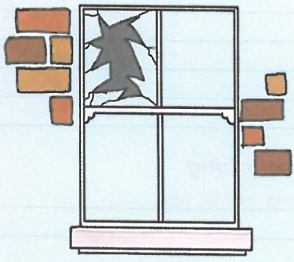
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 80

somebody/anything/nowhere, etc.

A



Somebody (or **Someone**) has broken the window.

somebody/someone = a person, but we don't know who



She has got **something** in her mouth.

something = a thing, but we don't know what



Tom lives **somewhere** near Chicago.

somewhere = in/to a place, but we don't know where

B

People (**-body** *or* **-one**)

somebody *or* **someone**
anybody *or* **anyone**
nobody *or* **no one**

- There is **somebody** (*or* **someone**) at the door.
- Is there **anybody** (*or* **anyone**) at the door?
- There isn't **anybody** (*or* **anyone**) at the door.
- There is **nobody** (*or* **no one**) at the door.

-body and **-one** are the same: **somebody** = **someone**, **nobody** = **no one**, etc.

Things (**-thing**)

something
anything
nothing

- Lucy said **something**, but I didn't understand what she said.
- Are you doing **anything** this weekend?
- I was angry, but I didn't say **anything**.
- "What did you say?" "**Nothing**."

Places (**-where**)

somewhere
anywhere
nowhere

- Ruth's parents live **somewhere** in Southern California.
- Did you go **anywhere** interesting on vacation?
- I'm staying here. I'm **not** going **anywhere**.
- I don't like this town. There is **nowhere** to go.

C

something/anybody, etc. + *adjective* (**big/cheap/interesting**, etc.)

- Did you meet **anybody interesting** at the party?
- We always go to the same place. Let's go **somewhere different**.
- "What's in that letter?" "It's **nothing important**."

D

something/anybody, etc. + **to** . . .

- I'm hungry. I want **something to eat**. (= something that I can eat)
- Tony doesn't have **anybody to talk** to. (= anybody that he can talk to)
- There is **nowhere to go** in this town. (= nowhere where people can go)

some and any → Unit 77 any and no → Unit 78 anybody/nothing, etc. → Unit 79
everything/-body/-where → Unit 81

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

80.1 Write *somebody* (or *someone*) / *something* / *somewhere*.

1.	Lucy said *something* .	What did she say?
2.	I lost _____ .	What did you lose?
3.	Sue and Tom went _____ .	Where did they go?
4.	I'm going to call _____ .	Who are you going to call?

80.2 Write *nobody* (or *no one*) / *nothing* / *nowhere*.

1a.	What did you say?	*Nothing.*
2a.	Where are you going?	_____
3a.	What do you want?	_____
4a.	Who are you looking for?	_____

Now answer the same questions with full sentences.
Use *not* + *anybody*/*anything*/*anywhere*.

1b. *I didn't say anything.* 3b. _____

2b. I'm not _____ 4b. _____

80.3 Write *somebody*/*anything*/*nowhere*, etc.

1. It's dark. I can't see *anything* .
2. Tom lives *somewhere* near San Francisco.
3. Do you know _____ about computers?
4. "Listen!" "What? I can't hear _____ ."
5. "What are you doing here?" "I'm waiting for _____ ."
6. We need to talk. There's _____ I want to tell you.
7. "Did _____ see the accident?" "No, _____ ."
8. We weren't hungry, so we didn't eat _____ .
9. "What's going to happen?" "I don't know. _____ knows."
10. "Do you know _____ in Tokyo?" "Yes, a few people."
11. "What's in that suitcase?" " _____ . It's empty."
12. I'm looking for my glasses. I can't find them _____ .
13. I don't like cold weather. I want to live _____ warm.
14. Is there _____ interesting on television tonight?
15. Have you ever met _____ famous?

80.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

something	**anything**	**nothing**	**do**	**drink**	**eat**	~~**go**~~
something	**anywhere**	~~**nowhere**~~	**park**	**read**	**sit**	**stay**
somewhere		**nowhere**				

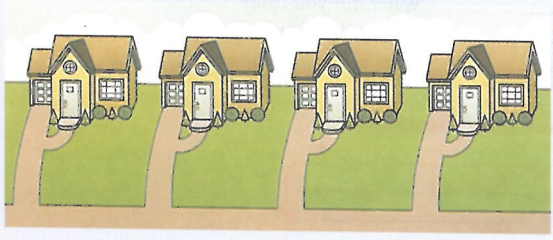
1. We don't go out very much because there's *nowhere to go* .
2. There isn't any food in the house. We don't have _____ .
3. I'm bored. I have _____ .
4. "Why are you standing?" "Because there isn't _____ ."
5. "Would you like _____ ?" "Yes, please – a glass of water."
6. If you're going downtown, take the bus. Don't drive because there's _____ .
7. I want _____ . I'm going to buy a magazine.
8. I need _____ in Seoul. Can you recommend a hotel?

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 81 every and all

A Every



Every house on the street is the same.

every house on the street =
all the houses on the street

We use **every** + *singular noun* (**every house** / **every country**, etc.):

- Sarah has been to **every country** in Europe.
- **Every summer** we take a vacation at the beach.
- She looks different **every time** I see her.

Use a *singular verb* after **every** . . . :

- **Every house** on the street **is** the same. (*not* are the same)
- **Every country has** a national flag. (*not* have)

Compare **every** and **all**:

- **Every student** in the class passed the exam.
- **Every country has** a national flag.

- **All the students** in the class passed the exam.
- **All countries have** a national flag.

B Every day and all day

every day = on all days:

How often?

SUN + MON + TUE + WED + THUR + FRI + SAT

EVERY DAY

- It rained **every day** last week.
- Bill watches TV for about two hours **every night**. (= on all nights)

also **every morning/week/summer**, etc.

all day = the complete day:

How long?

beginning of the day — end of the day

ALL DAY

- It rained **all day** yesterday.
- On Monday, I watched TV **all night**. (= the whole night)

also **all morning/week/summer**, etc.

C Everybody (*or* everyone) / everything / everywhere

everybody or **everyone** *(people)*
everything *(things)*
everywhere *(places)*

- **Everybody** (*or* **Everyone**) needs friends. (= all people need friends)
- Do you have **everything** you need? (= all the things you need)
- I lost my watch. I've looked **everywhere** for it. (= I've looked in all places)

Use a *singular verb* after **everybody/everyone/everything**:

- **Everybody has** problems. (*not* Everybody have)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

all → Unit 82

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

81.1 Complete the sentences. Use *every* + these words:

day room ~~student~~ time word

1. *Every student* in the class passed the exam.
2. My job is very boring. _____ is the same.
3. Kate is a very good chess player. When we play, she wins _____ .
4. _____ in the hotel has a TV.
5. "Did you understand what she said?" "Most of it, but not _____ ."

81.2 Complete the sentences with *every day* or *all day*.

1. Yesterday it rained *all day* .
2. I buy a newspaper _____ , but sometimes I don't read it.
3. I'm not going out tomorrow. I'll be at home _____ .
4. I usually drink about four cups of coffee _____ .
5. Paula was sick yesterday, so she stayed in bed _____ .
6. I'm tired now because I've been working hard _____ .
7. Last year we went to the beach for a week, and it rained _____ .

81.3 Write *every* or *all*.

1. Bill watches TV for about two hours *every* night.
2. Julia gets up at 6:30 _____ morning.
3. The weather was nice yesterday, so we sat outside _____ afternoon.
4. I'm leaving town on Monday. I'll be away _____ week.
5. "How often do you go skiing?" "_____ year. Usually in March."
6. *A:* Were you at home at 10 yesterday?
   B: Yes, I was at home _____ morning. I went out after lunch.
7. My sister loves new cars. She buys one _____ year.
8. I saw Sam at the party, but he didn't speak to me _____ night.
9. We take a vacation for two or three weeks _____ summer.

81.4 Write *everybody/everything/everywhere*.

1. *Everybody* needs friends.
2. Chris knows _____ about computers.
3. I like the people here. _____ is very friendly.
4. This is a nice hotel. It's comfortable, and _____ is very clean.
5. Kevin never uses his car. He goes _____ on his motorcycle.
6. Let's have dinner. _____ is hungry.
7. Sue's house is full of books. There are books _____ .
8. You are right. _____ you say is true.

81.5 Complete the sentences. Use one word only each time.

1. Everybody *has* problems.
2. Are you ready yet? Everybody _____ waiting for you.
3. The house is empty. Everyone _____ gone out.
4. Gary is very popular. Everybody _____ him.
5. This town is completely different now. Everything _____ changed.
6. I got home very late last night. I came in quietly because everyone _____ asleep.
7. Everybody _____ mistakes!
8. *A:* _____ everything clear? _____ everybody know what to do?
   B: Yes, we all understand.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 82

all most some any no/none

A

Compare:

children/money/books, etc. (in general):

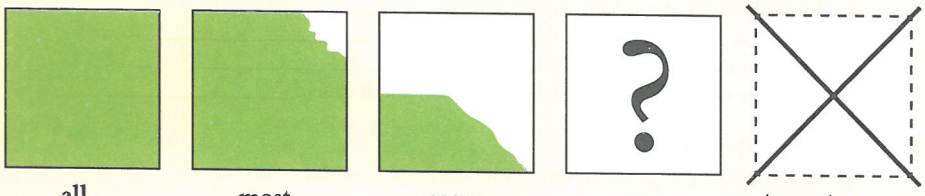
- **Children** like to play. (= children in general)
- **Money** isn't everything. (= money in general)
- I enjoy reading **books**.
- Everybody needs **friends**.

the children / **the** money / **these** books, etc:

- Where are **the children**? (= our children)
- I want to buy a car, but I don't have **the money**. (= the money for a car)
- Have you read **these books**?
- I often go out with **my friends**.

B

Most / most of . . . , some / some of . . . , etc.



all **most** **some** **any** **no/none/not + any**

most/some, etc. + *noun*

all most some any no	~~of~~	cities children books money

- **Most children** like to play. (= children in general)
- I don't want **any money**.
- **Some books** are better than others.
- He has **no friends**.
- **All cities** have the same problems. (= cities in general)

Do not use **of** in these sentences:

- **Most people** drive too fast. (*not* Most of people)
- **Some birds** can't fly. (*not* Some of birds)

most of/some of, etc. + **the/this/my**, . . . etc.

all	(of)	the . . . this/that . . . these/those . . . my/your . . . , etc.
most some any none	of	

- **Most of the children at this school** are under 11 years old.
- I don't want **any of this money**.
- **Some of these books** are very old.
- **None of my friends** live near me.

You can say **all the . . .** or **all of the . . .** (with or without **of**):

- **All the students in our class** passed the exam. (*or* **All of the students . . .**)
- Silvia has lived in Miami **all her life**. (*or* . . . **all of her life**.)

C

All of it / most of them / none of us, etc.

all most some any none	of	it them us you

- You can have **some of this cake**, but not **all of it**.
- *A:* Do you know those people?
  B: **Most of them**, but not **all of them**.
- **Some of us** are going out tonight. Why don't you come with us?
- I've got a lot of books, but I haven't read **any of them**.
- "How many of these books have you read?" "**None of them.**"

the . . . (children / the children, etc.) → Unit 73 some and any → Unit 77 no/none/any → Unit 78
all and every → Unit 81

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

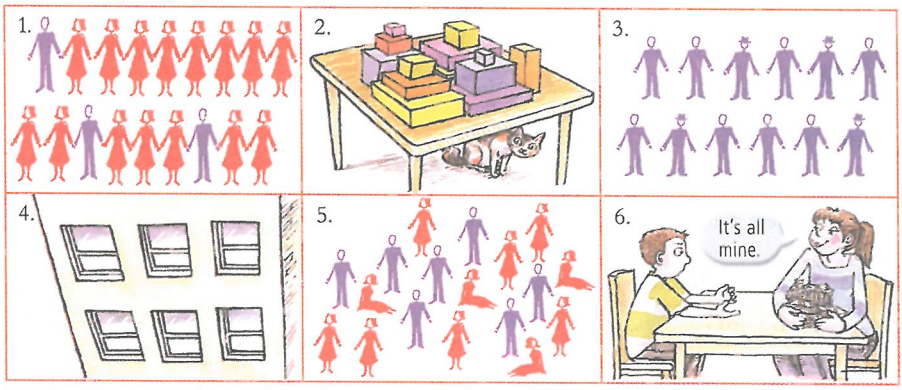
Exercises

82.1 Complete the sentences. Use the word in parentheses (***some*/*most***, etc.). Sometimes you need ***of* (*some of* / *most of*, etc.)**.

1. *Most* children like to play. (most)
2. *Some of* this money is yours. (some)
3. _____ people never stop talking. (some)
4. _____ the stores downtown close at 6:00. (most)
5. You can change money in _____ banks. (most)
6. I don't like _____ the pictures in the living room. (any)
7. He's lost _____ his money. (all)
8. _____ my friends are married. (none)
9. Do you know _____ the people in this picture? (any)
10. _____ birds can fly. (most)
11. I enjoyed _____ the movie, but I didn't like the ending. (most)
12. _____ sports are very dangerous. (some)
13. We can't find anywhere to stay. _____ the hotels are full. (all)
14. Try _____ this cheese. It's delicious. (some)
15. The weather was bad when we were on vacation. It rained _____ the time. (most)

82.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use:

all* / *most* / *some* / *none + ***of them* / *of it***



1. How many of the people are women? *Most of them*
2. How many of the boxes are on the table? _____
3. How many of the men are wearing hats? _____
4. How many of the windows are open? _____
5. How many of the people are standing? _____
6. How much of the money is Ben's? _____

82.3 Are these sentences OK? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

1. Most of children like to play. *Most children*
2. All the students failed the test. *OK*
3. Some of people work too hard. _____
4. Some of questions on the exam were very easy. _____
5. I haven't seen any of those people before. _____
6. All of insects have six legs. _____
7. Have you read all these books? _____
8. Most of students in our class are very nice. _____
9. Most of my friends are going to the party. _____
10. I'm very tired this morning – I was awake most of night. _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

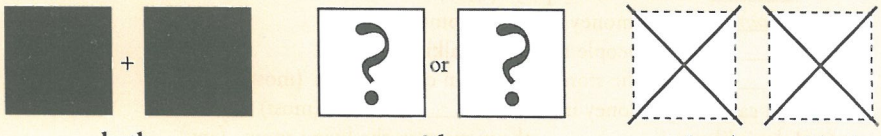
مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 83

both either neither

A

We use **both/either/neither** to talk about two things or people:



both **either** **neither** (*not* + **either**)

- Rebecca has two children. **Both** are married. (**both** = the two children)
- Would you like tea or coffee? You can have **either**. (**either** = tea or coffee)
- *A:* Do you want to go to the movies or the theater?
  B: **Neither**. I want to stay home. (**neither** = not the movies or the theater)

Compare **either** and **neither**:

- "Would you like **tea** or **coffee**?" → "**Either**. It doesn't matter." (= tea or coffee) / "**I don't** want **either**." (*not* I don't want neither) / "**Neither**." (= not tea or coffee)

B

Both/either/neither + *noun*

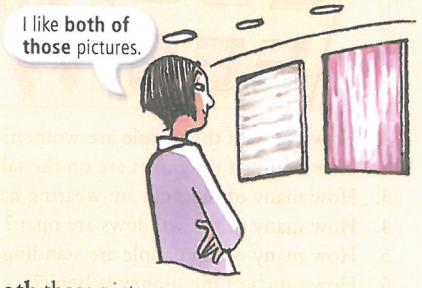
both + *plural*	**both**	**windows/books/children**, etc.
either / **neither** + *singular*	**either** / **neither**	**window/book/child**, etc.

- Last year I went to Miami and Seattle. I liked **both cities** very much.
- First I worked in an office and later in a store. **Neither job** was very interesting.
- There are two ways to get to the airport. You can go **either way**.

C

Both of . . . / either of . . . / neither of . . .

both	(**of**)	**the . . .**
either / **neither**	**of**	**these/those . . .** / **my/your/Paul's . . .**, etc.



- **Neither of my parents** is Canadian.
- I **haven't** read **either of these books**.

You can say **both of the/those/my . . .** or **both the/those/my . . .** (with or without **of**):

- I like **both of** those pictures. *or* I like **both** those pictures.
- **Both of** Paul's sisters are married. *or* **Both** Paul's sisters are married.

but **Neither of** Paul's sisters is married. (*not* Neither Paul's sisters)

D

Both of them / neither of us

both / **either** / **neither**	**of**	**them** / **us** / **you**

- Paul has got two sisters. **Both of them** are married.
- Sue and I didn't eat anything. **Neither of us** was hungry.
- Who are those two people? I **don't** know **either of them**.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

83.1 Write ***both/either/neither***. Use ***of*** where necessary.

1. Last year I went to Miami and Seattle. I liked *both* cities very much.
2. There were two pictures on the wall. I didn't like *either of* them.
3. It was a good football game. _____ teams played well.
4. It wasn't a good football game. _____ team played well.
5. "Is your friend Canadian or American?" "_____. She's Australian."
6. We went away for two days, but the weather was bad. It rained _____ days.
7. *A:* I bought two newspapers. Which one do you want?
   B: _____. It doesn't matter which one.
8. I invited Donna and Mike to the party, but _____ them came.
9. "Do you go to work by car or by bus?" "_____. I always walk."
10. "Which jacket do you prefer, this one or that one?" "I don't like _____ them."
11. "Do you work or are you a student?" "_____. I work, and I'm a student, too."
12. Paula and I didn't know the time because _____ us had a watch.
13. Helen has two sisters and a brother. _____ sisters are married.
14. Helen has two sisters and a brother. I know her brother, but I haven't met _____ her sisters.

83.2 Complete the sentences for the pictures. Use ***Both . . . and Neither . . . .***



1. *Both cups are* _____ empty.
2. _____ are open.
3. _____ wearing a hat.
4. _____ beards.
5. _____ to the airport.
6. _____ right.

83.3 A man and a woman answered some questions. Their answers were the same. Write sentences with ***Both/Neither of them . . . .***



1.	Are you married?	No	No →	1. *Neither of them is married.*
2.	How old are you?	21	21 →	2. *Both of them are 21.*
3.	Are you a student?	Yes	Yes →	3. _____ students.
4.	Do you have a car?	No	No	4. _____ a car.
5.	Where do you live?	Boston	Boston	5. _____
6.	Do you like to cook?	Yes	Yes	6. _____
7.	Can you play the piano?	No	No	7. _____
8.	Do you read the newspaper?	Yes	Yes	8. _____
9.	Are you interested in sports?	No	No	9. _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

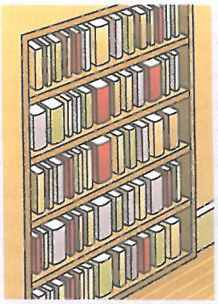
UNIT 84

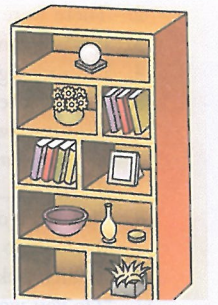
a lot much many

A


a lot of money


not much money


a lot of books


not many books

We use **much** + *uncountable noun* (**much food** / **much money**, etc.):

- Did you buy **much food**?
- We don't have **much luggage**.
- How **much money** do you want?
- *A:* Do you have any **money**?
  B: I have some, but **not much**.

We use **many** + *plural noun* (**many books** / **many people**, etc.):

- Did you buy **many books**?
- We don't know **many people**.
- How **many photos** did you take?
- *A:* Did you take any **photos**?
  B: I took some, but **not many**.

We use **a lot of** + *both types of noun*:

- We bought **a lot of food**.
- Paula doesn't have **a lot of** free **time**.
- We bought **a lot of books**.
- Did they ask **a lot of questions**?

We say:

- There **is** a lot of **food**/**money**/**water** . . . *(singular verb)*
- There **are** a lot of **trees**/**shops**/**people** . . . *(plural verb)*
- A lot of **people speak** English. (*not* speaks)

B

We use **much** in *questions* and *negative sentences*:

- Do you drink **much coffee**?
- I don't drink **much coffee**.

But we do not often use **much** in *positive sentences*:

- I drink **a lot of coffee**. (*not* I drink much coffee)
- "Do you drink much coffee?" "Yes, **a lot**." (*not* Yes, much)

We use **many** and **a lot of** in all types of sentences (positive/negative/question):

- We have **many** friends / **a lot of** friends.
- We don't have **many** friends / **a lot of** friends.
- Do you have **many** friends / **a lot of** friends?

C

You can use **much** and **a lot** without a noun:

- Donna spoke to me, but she didn't say **much**.
- "Do you watch TV **much**?" "No, **not much**." (= not often)
- We like movies, so we go to the movies **a lot**. (*not* go to the movies much)
- I don't like him very **much**.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

84.1 Write *much* or *many*.

1. Did you buy *much* food?
2. There aren't _____ hotels in this town.
3. We don't have _____ gas. We need to stop and get some.
4. Were there _____ people on the train?
5. Did _____ students fail the exam?
6. Paula doesn't have _____ money.
7. I wasn't hungry, so I didn't eat _____ .
8. I don't know where Gary lives these days. I haven't seen him for _____ years.

Write *How much* or *How many*.

9. _____ people are coming to the party?
10. _____ milk should I get at the store?
11. _____ bread did you buy?
12. _____ players are there on a football team?

84.2 Complete the sentences. Use *much* or *many* with these words:

~~books~~ countries luggage people time times

1. I don't read very much. I don't have *many books* .
2. Hurry up! We don't have _____ .
3. Do you travel a lot? Have you been to _____ ?
4. Tina hasn't lived here very long, so she doesn't know _____ .
5. "Do you have _____ ?" "No, only this bag."
6. I know Tokyo very well. I've been there _____ .

84.3 Complete the sentences. Use *a lot of* + these words:

accidents ~~books~~ fun interesting things traffic

1. I like reading. I have *a lot of books* .
2. We enjoyed our visit to the museum. We saw _____ .
3. This road is very dangerous. There are _____ .
4. We enjoyed our vacation. We had _____ .
5. It took me a long time to drive here. There was _____ .

84.4 In some of these sentences *much* is not natural. Change the sentences or write *OK*.

1. Do you drink much coffee? *OK*
2. I drink much tea. *a lot of tea*
3. It was a cold winter. We had much snow. _____
4. There wasn't much snow last winter. _____
5. It costs much money to travel around the world. _____
6. This pen was cheap. It didn't cost much. _____
7. Do you know much about computers? _____
8. "Do you have any luggage?" "Yes, much." _____

84.5 Write sentences about these people. Use *much* and *a lot*.

1. Jim loves movies. (go to the movies) *He goes to the movies a lot.*
2. Nicole thinks TV is boring. (watch TV) *She doesn't watch TV much.*
3. Tina is a good tennis player. (play tennis) She _____
4. Martin doesn't like to drive. (use his car) He _____
5. Paul spends most of the time at home. (go out) _____
6. Sue has been all over the world. (travel) _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

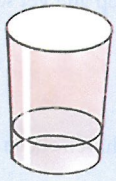
UNIT 85

(a) little (a) few

A

(a) **little** + *uncountable noun*:

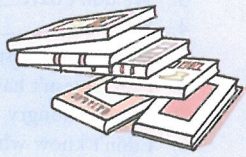
(a) **little water**
(a) **little time**
(a) **little money**
(a) **little soup**



a little water

(a) **few** + *plural noun*:

(a) **few books**
(a) **few questions**
(a) **few people**
(a) **few days**



a few books

B

a little = some but not much

- She didn't eat anything, but she drank **a little water**.
- I speak **a little Spanish**. (= some Spanish but not much)
- *A:* Can you speak Spanish?
  B: **A little**.

a few = some but not many

- Excuse me, I have to make **a few phone calls**.
- We're going away for **a few days**.
- I speak **a few words** of Spanish.
- *A:* Do you have any stamps?
  B: Yes, **a few**. Do you want one?

C

~~a~~ **little** (*without* **a**) = almost no *or* almost nothing

- There was **little food** in the fridge. It was almost empty.

You can say **very little**:

- Dan is very thin because he eats **very little**. (= almost nothing)

~~a~~ **few** (*without* **a**) = almost no

- There were **few people** in the theater. It was almost empty.

You can say **very few**:

- Your English is very good. You make **very few mistakes**.

D

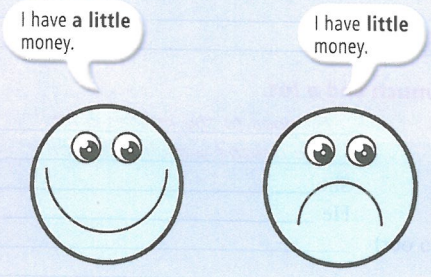
little and **a little**

A little is a *positive* idea:

- They have **a little** money, so they're not poor. (= they have some money)

Little (or **very little**) is a *negative* idea:

- They have (**very**) **little** money. They are very poor. (= almost no money)



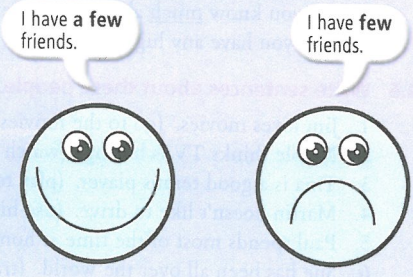
few and **a few**

A few is a *positive* idea:

- I have **a few** friends, so I'm not lonely. (= I have some friends)

Few (or **very few**) is a *negative* idea:

- I'm sad and I'm lonely. I have (**very**) **few** friends. (= almost no friends)



countable/uncountable → Units 68–69

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

85.1 Answer the questions with *a little* or *a few*.

1. "Do you have any money?" "Yes, *a little* ."
2. "Do you have any envelopes?" "Yes, _____ ."
3. "Do you want sugar in your coffee?" "Yes, _____ , please."
4. "Did you take any pictures when you were on vacation?" "Yes, _____ ."
5. "Does your friend speak English?" "Yes, _____ ."
6. "Are there any good restaurants in this town?" "Yes, _____ ."

85.2 Write *a little* or *a few* + these words:

chairs days fresh air friends milk Russian times ~~years~~

1. Martin speaks Italian well. He lived in Italy for *a few years* .
2. Can I have _____ in my coffee, please?
3. "When did Julia leave?" "_____ ago."
4. "Do you speak any foreign languages?" "I can speak _____ ."
5. "Are you going out alone?" "No, I'm going with _____ ."
6. "Have you ever been to Mexico?" "Yes, _____ ."
7. There wasn't much furniture in the room – just a table and _____ .
8. I'm going out for a walk. I need _____ .

85.3 Complete the sentences. Use *very little* or *very few* + these words:

coffee hotels ~~mistakes~~ people rain time work

1. Your English is very good. You make *very few mistakes* .
2. I drink _____ . I don't like it.
3. The weather here is very dry in summer. There is _____ .
4. It's difficult to find a place to stay in this town. There are _____ .
5. Hurry up. We've got _____ .
6. The town is very quiet at night. _____ go out.
7. Some people in the office are very lazy. They do _____ .

85.4 Write *little* / *a little* or *few* / *a few*.

1. There was *little* food in the fridge. It was almost empty.
2. "When did Sarah go out?" "_____ minutes ago."
3. I can't decide now. I need _____ time to think about it.
4. There was _____ traffic, so we arrived earlier than we expected.
5. The bus service isn't very good at night – there are _____ buses after 9:00.
6. "Would you like some soup?" "Yes, _____ , please."
7. They sent us a map, so we had _____ trouble finding their house.

85.5 Right or wrong? Change the sentences where necessary. Write *OK* if the sentence is correct.

1. We're going away for few days next week. — *for a few days*
2. Everybody needs little luck. — _____
3. I can't talk to you now – I've got few things to do. — _____
4. I eat very little meat – I don't like it very much. — _____
5. Excuse me, can I ask you few questions? — _____
6. There were little people on the bus – it was almost empty. — _____
7. Martin is a very private person. Few people know him well. — _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 86

old/nice/interesting, etc. (adjectives)

A

Adjective + noun (**nice day / blue eyes**, etc.)

adjective + noun	
It's a **nice**	**day** today.
Laura has **brown**	**eyes**.
There's a very **old**	**church** in this town.
Do you like **Italian**	**food**?
I don't speak any **foreign**	**languages**.
There are some **beautiful yellow**	**flowers** in the garden.

The adjective is *before* the noun:

- They live in a **modern house**. (*not* a house modern)
- Have you met any **famous people**? (*not* people famous)

The ending of an adjective is always the same:

a **different** place **different** places (*not* differents)

B

Be (**am/is/was**, etc.) + *adjective*

- The weather **is nice** today.
- These flowers **are** very **beautiful**.
- **Are** you **cold**? Should I close the window?
- **I'm hungry**. Can I have something to eat?
- The movie **wasn't** very **good**. It was **boring**.
- Please **be quiet**. I'm reading.



C

Look/feel/smell/taste/sound + *adjective*



- You **look tired**." "Yes, I **feel tired**."
- Gary told me about his new job. It **sounds** very **interesting**.
- I'm not going to eat this fish. It doesn't **smell good**.

Compare:

He	is feels looks	tired.

They	are look sound	happy.

It	is smells tastes	good.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

get + adjective (**get hungry/tired**, etc.) → Unit 87 something/anybody + adjective → Unit 80

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

86.1 Put the words in the right order.

1. (new / live in / house / they / a) *They live in a new house.*
2. (like / jacket / I / that / green) I _____
3. (music / like / do / classical / you?) Do _____
4. (had / wonderful / a / I / trip) _____
5. (went to / restaurant / a / Japanese / we) _____

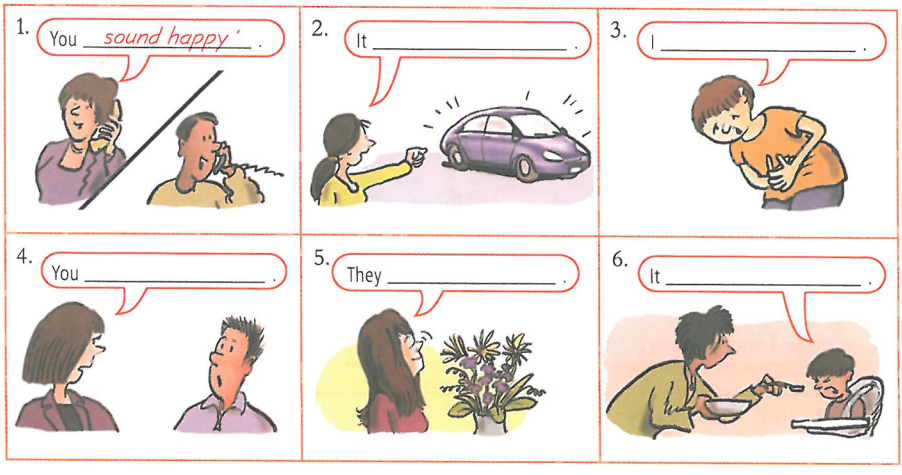
86.2 The words below are adjectives (***dark*/*foreign***, etc.) or nouns (***air*/*job***, etc.). Use an adjective and a noun to complete each sentence.

air	dangerous	~~foreign~~	hot	knife	long	vacation
clouds	dark	fresh	job	~~languages~~	sharp	water

1. Do you speak any *foreign languages* ?
2. Look at those _____ . It's going to rain.
3. Sue works very hard, and she's very tired. She needs a _____ .
4. You need _____ to make tea.
5. Can you open the window? We need some _____ .
6. I need a _____ to cut these onions.
7. Firefighting is a _____ .

86.3 Write sentences for the pictures. Choose from the boxes.

feel(s)	look(s)	~~sound(s)~~	+	~~happy~~	nice	surprised
look(s)	smell(s)	taste(s)		new	sick	terrible



86.4 A and B don't agree. Complete B's sentences. Use ***feel*/*look***, etc.

A	B	
1. You look tired.	I do? I *don't feel tired* .	(feel)
2. This is a new coat.	It is? It doesn't _____ .	(look)
3. I'm American.	You are? You _____ .	(sound)
4. You look cold.	Really? I _____ .	(feel)
5. These bags are heavy.	They are? They _____ .	(look)
6. That soup looks good.	Maybe, but it _____ .	(taste)

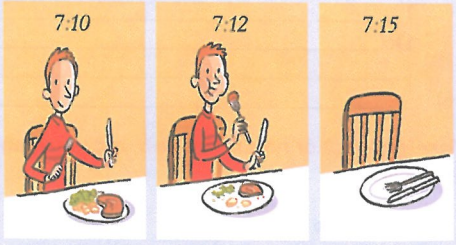
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 87

quickly/badly/suddenly, etc. (adverbs)

A



He ate his dinner very **quickly**.



Suddenly, the shelf fell down.

Quickly and **suddenly** are adverbs.

adjective + **-ly** → adverb:

adjective	**quick**	**bad**	**sudden**	**careful**	**heavy**	
adverb	**quickly**	**badly**	**suddenly**	**carefully**	**heavily**	etc.

For spelling, see Appendix 5. easy → **easily** heavy → **heavily**

B

Adverbs tell you *how* something happens or *how* somebody does something:

- The train **stopped suddenly**.
- I **opened** the door **slowly**.
- Please **listen carefully**.
- I **understand** you **perfectly**.



It's **raining heavily**.

Compare:

adjective	*adverb*
■ Sue is very **quiet**.	■ Sue **speaks** very **quietly**. (*not* speaks very quiet)
■ **Be careful!**	■ **Listen carefully!** (*not* listen careful)
■ It was a **bad game**.	■ Our team **played badly**. (*not* played bad)
■ I **felt nervous**. (= I was nervous)	■ I **waited nervously**.

C

Hard fast late early

These words are adjectives *and* adverbs:

■ Sue's job **is** very **hard**.	■ Sue **works** very **hard**. (*not* hardly)
■ Ben is **a fast runner**.	■ Ben can **run fast**.
■ The bus **was late/early**.	■ I **went** to bed **late/early**.

D

Good *(adjective)* → **well** *(adverb)*

■ Your English **is** very **good**.	■ You **speak** English very **well**. (*not* very good)
■ It was a **good game**.	■ Our team **played well**.

But **well** is also an *adjective* (= not sick, in good health):

- "How are you?" "**I'm** very **well**, thank you. And you?"

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

adjectives → Unit 86

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

87.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with these adverbs:

angrily badly dangerously fast ~~heavily~~ quietly



1. It's raining *heavily* .
2. He sings very _____ .
3. They came in _____ .
4. She shouted at me _____ .
5. She can run very _____ .
6. He was driving _____ .

87.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

come	know	sleep	win	+	~~carefully~~	clearly	hard	well
explain	~~listen~~	think	work		carefully	easily	quickly	well

1. I'm going to tell you something very important, so please *listen carefully* .
2. They _____ . At the end of the day they're always tired.
3. I'm tired this morning. I didn't _____ last night.
4. You play chess much better than me. When we play, you always _____ .
5. _____ before you answer the question.
6. I've met Alice a few times, but I don't _____ her very _____ .
7. Our teacher doesn't _____ things very _____ . We never understand him.
8. Helen! I need your help. _____ !

87.3 Which is right?

1. Don't eat so ~~quick~~ / quickly. It's not good for you. (*quickly* is right)
2. Why are you angry / angrily? I didn't do anything.
3. Can you speak slow / slowly, please?
4. Come on, Dave! Why are you always so slow / slowly?
5. Bill is a very careful / carefully driver.
6. Jane is studying hard / hardly for her exams.
7. "Where's Diane?" "She was here, but she left sudden / suddenly."
8. Please be quiet / quietly. I'm studying.
9. Some companies pay their workers very bad / badly.
10. Those oranges look nice / nicely. Can I have one?
11. I don't remember much about the accident. Everything happened quick / quickly.

87.4 Write *good* or *well*.

1. Your English is very *good* . You speak it very *well* .
2. Jackie did very _____ on the quiz today.
3. The party was very _____ . I enjoyed it a lot.
4. Martin has a difficult job, but he does it _____ .
5. How are your parents? Are they _____ ?
6. Did you have a _____ vacation? Was the weather _____ ?

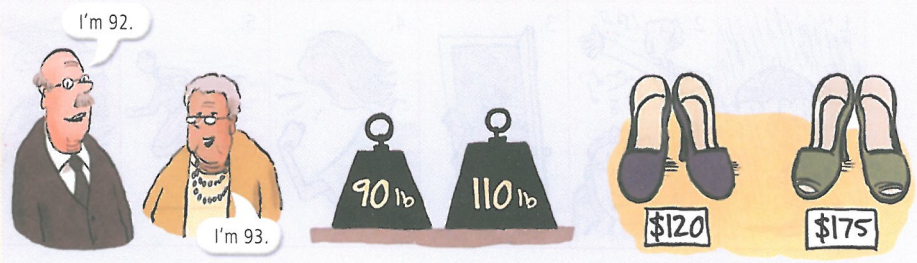
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 88

old/older expensive / more expensive

A



old **older** heavy **heavier** expensive **more expensive**

Older / heavier / more expensive are *comparative* forms.

The comparative is **-er (older)** or **more . . . (more expensive)**.

B

Older/heavier, etc.

Short words (1 syllable) → **-er**:

old → **older** slow → **slower** cheap → **cheaper**
nice → **nicer** late → **later** big → **bigger**

For spelling, see Appendix 5. big → bigger hot → hotter thin → thinner

Words ending in **-y → -ier**:

easy → **easier** heavy → **heavier** early → **earlier**

- Rome is **old**, but Athens is **older**. (*not* more old)
- Is it **cheaper** to go by car or by train? (*not* more cheap)
- Helen wants a **bigger** car.
- This coat is OK, but I think the other one is **nicer**.
- Don't take the bus. It's **easier** to take a taxi. (*not* more easy)

Far → farther:

- "How far is it to the station? A mile?" "No, it's **farther**. About two miles."

C

More . . .

Long words (2/3/4 syllables) → **more . . .**:

careful → **more careful** polite → **more polite**
expensive → **more expensive** interesting → **more interesting**

- You should be **more careful**.
- I don't like my job. I want to do something **more interesting**.
- Is it **more expensive** to go by car or by train?

D

Good/well → better bad → worse

- The weather wasn't very **good** yesterday, but it's **better** today.
- "Do you feel **better** today?" "No, I feel **worse**."
- Which is **worse** – a headache or a toothache?

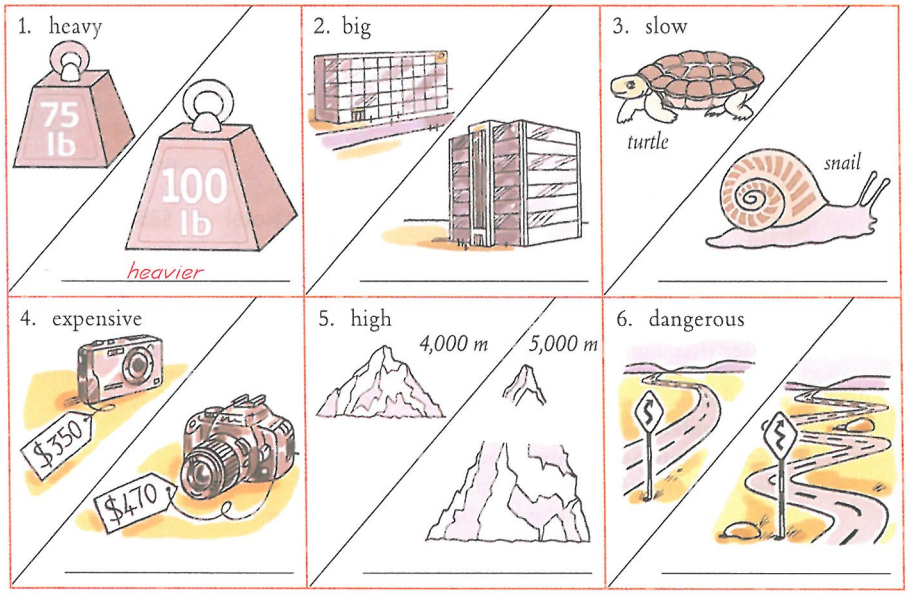
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

older than . . . / more expensive than . . . → Unit 89 the oldest / the most expensive → Unit 91

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

88.1 Look at the pictures and write the comparative (***older*** / ***more interesting***, etc.).



88.2 Write the comparative.

1. old *older*
2. strong _____
3. happy _____
4. modern _____
5. important _____
6. good _____
7. large _____
8. serious _____
9. pretty _____
10. crowded _____

88.3 Write the opposite.

1. younger *older*
2. colder _____
3. cheaper _____
4. better _____
5. nearer _____
6. easier _____

88.4 Complete the sentences. Use a comparative.

1. Helen's car isn't very big. She wants a *bigger* one.
2. My job isn't very interesting. I want to do something *more interesting*.
3. You're not very tall. Your brother is _____.
4. David doesn't work very hard. I work _____.
5. My chair isn't very comfortable. Yours is _____.
6. Your idea isn't very good. My idea is _____.
7. These flowers aren't very nice. The blue ones are _____.
8. My suitcase isn't very heavy. Your suitcase is _____.
9. I'm not very interested in art. I'm _____ in history.
10. It isn't very warm today. It was _____ yesterday.
11. These tomatoes don't taste very good. The other ones tasted _____.
12. Peru isn't very big. Brazil is _____.
13. Los Angeles isn't very beautiful. San Francisco is _____.
14. This knife isn't very sharp. Do you have a _____ one?
15. People today aren't very polite. In the past they were _____.
16. The weather isn't too bad today. Often it is much _____.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 89

older than . . . more expensive than . . .

A



She's **taller than** him.



The Capitol Hotel is **more expensive than** the Grand Hotel.

We use **than** after comparatives (**older than . . . / more expensive than . . .**, etc.):

- Athens is **older than** Rome.
- Are oranges **more expensive than** bananas?
- It's easier to take a taxi **than** to take the bus.
- "How are you today?" "Not bad. **Better than** yesterday."
- The restaurant is **more crowded than** usual.

B

We usually say: than **me** / than **him** / than **her** / than **us** / than **them**.

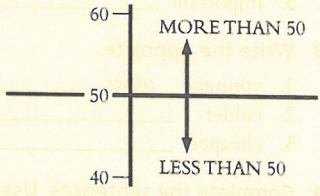
You can say:

- I can run faster **than him**. *or* I can run faster **than he can**.
- You are a better singer **than me**. *or* You are a better singer **than I am**.
- I got up earlier **than her**. *or* I got up earlier **than she did**.

C

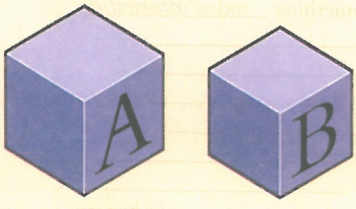
More/less than . . .

- *A:* How much did your shoes cost? Fifty dollars?
  B: No, **more than** that. (= **more than** $50)
- The movie was very short – **less than** an hour.
- They've got **more money than** they need.
- You go out **more than** me.

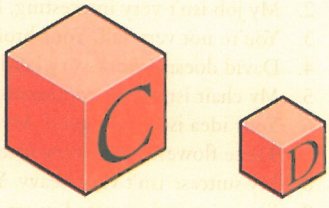


D

A little older / much older, etc.



Box A is **a little bigger** than Box B.



Box C is **much bigger** than Box D.

a little **much**	bigger older better more difficult more expensive	than . . .

- Canada is **much bigger** than France.
- Sue is a **little older** than Gary – she's 25 and he's 24.
- The hotel was **much more expensive** than I expected.
- You go out **much more** than me.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین آزمایه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

89.1 Write sentences about Liz and Ben. Use *than*.



Liz

1. I'm 26.
2. I'm not a very good swimmer.
3. I'm 5 feet 10 inches tall.
4. I start work at 8:00.
5. I don't work very hard.
6. I don't have much money.
7. I'm a very good driver.
8. I'm not very patient.
9. I'm very intelligent.
10. I speak Spanish very well.
11. I don't go to the movies very much.



Ben

1. I'm 24.
2. I'm a very good swimmer.
3. I'm 5 feet 8 inches tall.
4. I start work at 8:30.
5. I work very hard.
6. I have a lot of money.
7. I'm not a very good driver.
8. I'm very patient.
9. I'm not very intelligent.
10. I don't speak Spanish very well.
11. I go to the movies a lot.

1. Liz *is older than Ben* .
2. Ben *is a better swimmer than Liz* .
3. Liz is _____ .
4. Liz starts _____ Ben.
5. Ben _____ .
6. Ben has _____ .
7. Liz is a _____ .
8. Ben _____ .
9. Ben _____ .
10. Liz _____ .
11. Liz _____ .
12. Ben _____ .

89.2 Complete the sentences. Use *than*.

1. He isn't very tall. You're *taller than him* OR *taller than he is* .
2. She isn't very old. You're _____ .
3. I don't work very hard. You work _____ .
4. He doesn't watch TV very much. You _____ .
5. I'm not a very good cook. You _____ .
6. We don't know many people. You _____ .
7. They don't have much money. You _____ .
8. I can't run very fast. You can _____ .
9. She hasn't been here very long. You _____ .
10. They didn't get up very early. You _____ .
11. He wasn't very surprised. You _____ .

89.3 Complete the sentences with *a little* or *much* + comparative (*older*/*better*, etc.).

1. Emma is 18 months old. Gary is 16 months old.
   Emma *is a little older than Gary* .
2. Jack's mother is 52. His father is 69.
   Jack's mother _____ .
3. My camera cost $100. Yours cost $96.
   My camera _____ .
4. Yesterday I felt terrible. Today I feel OK.
   I feel _____ .
5. Today the temperature is 12 degrees Celsius. Yesterday it was 10 degrees Celsius.
   It's _____ .
6. Sarah is an excellent volleyball player. I'm not very good.
   Sarah _____ .

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 90

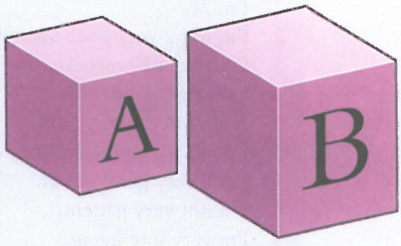
not as . . . as

A

Not as . . . as



She's old, but she's **not as old as** he is.



Box A is**n't as big as** Box B.

- Rome is **not as old as** Athens. (= Athens is older)
- The Grand Hotel is**n't as expensive as** the Western. (= the Western is **more expensive**)
- I do**n't** play soccer **as often as** you. (= you play **more often**)
- The weather is better than it was yesterday. It is**n't as cold**. (= as cold **as it was yesterday**)

B

Not as much as . . . / not as many as . . .

- I don't have **as much money as** you. (= you have **more money**)
- I don't know **as many people as** you. (= you know **more people**)
- I don't go out **as much as** you. (= you go out **more**)

C

Compare **not as . . . as** and **than**:

- Rome is **not as old as** Athens.
  Athens is **older than** Rome. (*not* older as Rome)
- Tennis is**n't as popular as** soccer.
  Soccer is **more popular than** tennis.
- I do**n't** go out **as much as** you.
  You go out **more than** me.

D

We usually say: as **me** / as **him** / as **her**, etc.
You can say:

- She's not as old **as him**. *or* She's not as old **as he is**.
- You don't work as hard **as me**. *or* You don't work as hard **as I do**.

E

We say **the same as . . .**:

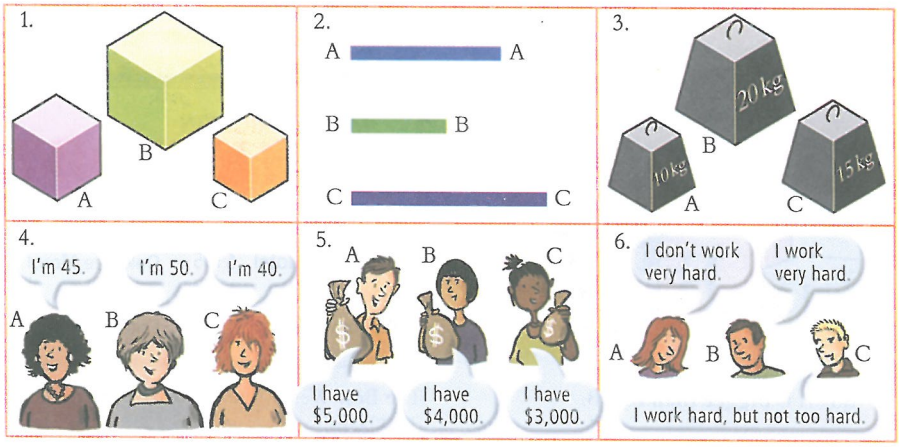
- The weather today is **the same as** yesterday.
- My hair is **the same color as** yours.
- I arrived at **the same time as** Tim.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

90.1 Look at the pictures and write sentences about A, B, and C.



1. A is *bigger than C, but not as big as B* .
2. A is _____ B, but not _____ C.
3. C is _____ A, but _____ .
4. A is _____ , but _____ .
5. B has _____ .
6. C works _____ .

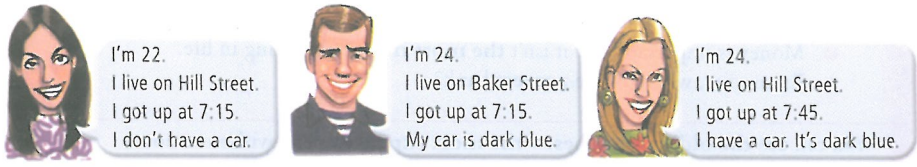
90.2 Write sentences with ***as . . . as . . . .***

1. Athens is older than Rome. Rome *isn't as old as Athens* .
2. My room is bigger than yours. Your room isn't _____ .
3. You got up earlier than me. I didn't _____ .
4. We played better than them. They _____ .
5. I've been here longer than you. You _____ .
6. She's more nervous than him. He _____ .

90.3 Write ***as*** or ***than***.

1. Athens is older *than* Rome.
2. I don't watch TV as much _____ you.
3. You eat more _____ me.
4. I'm more tired today _____ I was yesterday.
5. Joe isn't as intelligent _____ he thinks.
6. Belgium is smaller _____ Switzerland.
7. Brazil isn't as big _____ Canada.
8. I can't wait more _____ an hour.

90.4 Complete the sentences about Julia, Andy, and Laura. Use ***the same age / the same street***, etc.



Julia Andy Laura

1. (age) *Andy is the same age as Laura* .
2. (street) Julia lives _____ .
3. (time) Julia got up _____ .
4. (color) Andy's _____ .

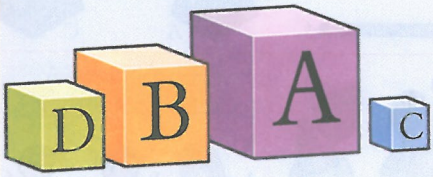
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 91

the oldest the most expensive

A





Box A is **bigger than** Box B.

Box A is **bigger than** all the other boxes.

Box A is **the biggest** box.

The Best West Motel is **more expensive than** the Sleep Inn.

The Best West Motel is **more expensive than** all the other motels in town.

The Best West Motel is **the most expensive** motel in town.

Bigger / older / more expensive, etc. are *comparative* forms (→ Unit 88).

Biggest / oldest / most expensive, etc. are *superlative* forms.

B

The superlative form is **-est (oldest)** or **most . . . (most expensive)**.

Short words (**old/cheap/nice**, etc.) → **the -est**:

old → **the oldest** cheap → **the cheapest** nice → **the nicest**

but good → **the best** bad → **the worst**

For spelling see Appendix 5. big → the biggest hot → the hottest

Words ending in **-y** (**easy/heavy**, etc.) → **the -iest**:

easy → **the easiest** heavy → **the heaviest** pretty → **the prettiest**

Long words (**careful/expensive/interesting**, etc.) → the **most . . .**:

careful → **the most careful** interesting → **the most interesting**

C

We say **the** oldest . . . / **the** most expensive . . . , etc. (with **the**):

- The church is very old. It's **the oldest** building in the town. (= it is **older than** all the other buildings)
- What is **the longest** river in the world?
- Money is important, but it isn't **the most important** thing in life.
- Excuse me, where is **the nearest** bank?

D

You can use **the oldest / the best / the most expensive**, etc. without a noun:

- Ken is a good player, but he isn't **the best** on the team. (**the best** = the best player)

E

You can use *superlative* + **I've ever . . . / you've ever . . .**, etc.:

- The movie was very bad. I think it's **the worst** movie **I've ever seen**.
- What is **the most unusual** thing **you've ever done**?

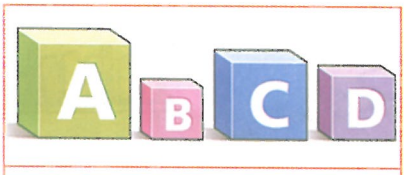
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین آرشیو دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

91.1 Write sentences with comparatives (*older*, etc.) and superlatives (*the oldest*, etc.).

1.



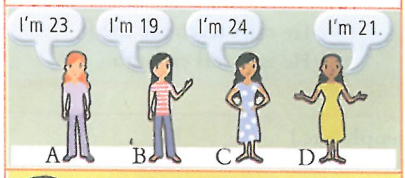
big/small
(A/D) A is bigger than D.
(A) A is the biggest.
(B) B is the smallest.

2.

A _____ A
B _____ B
C _____ C
D _____ D

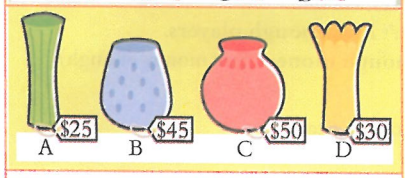
long/short
(C/A) C is _____ A.
(D) D is _____
(B) B is _____

3.



young/old
(D/C) D _____
(C) _____
(B) _____

4.



expensive/cheap
(D/A) _____
(C) _____
(A) _____

5.

RESTAURANT A *excellent*
RESTAURANT B *not bad*
RESTAURANT C *good but not wonderful*
RESTAURANT D *awful*

good/bad
(A/C) _____
(A) _____
(D) _____

91.2 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (*the oldest*, etc.).

1. This building is very old. It's *the oldest building* in town.
2. It was a very happy day. It was _____ of my life.
3. It's a very good movie. It's _____ I've ever seen.
4. She's a very popular singer. She's _____ in the country.
5. It was a very bad mistake. It was _____ I've ever made.
6. It's a very pretty city. It's _____ I've ever seen.
7. It was a very cold day. It was _____ of the year.
8. He's a very boring person. He's _____ I've ever met.

91.3 Write sentences with a superlative (*the longest*, etc.). Choose from the boxes.

~~Sydney~~	Alaska	high	~~city~~	river	Africa	South America
Everest	the Nile	large	country	state	~~Australia~~	the world
Brazil	Jupiter	long	mountain	planet	the United States	the solar system

1. *Sydney is the largest city in Australia.*
2. Everest _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

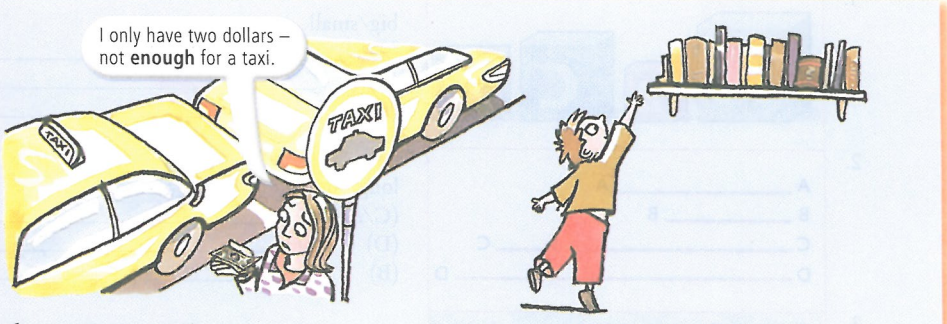
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 92

enough

A



She isn't going to take a taxi.
She doesn't have **enough money**.

He can't reach the shelf.
He isn't **tall enough**.

B

Enough + *noun* (**enough money** / **enough people**, etc.)

- "Is there **enough salt** in the soup?" "Yes, it's fine."
- We wanted to play football, but we didn't have **enough players**.
- Why don't you buy a car? You've got **enough money**. (*not* money enough)

Enough without a noun

- I've got some money, but not **enough** to buy a car. (= I need more money to buy a car)
- "Would you like some more to eat?" "No, thanks. I've had **enough**."
- You're always at home. You don't go out **enough**.

C

Adjective + **enough** (**good enough** / **tall enough**, etc.)

- "Do you want to go swimming?" "No, it isn't **warm enough**." (*not* enough warm)
- Can you hear the radio? Is it **loud enough** for you?
- Don't buy that coat. It's nice, but it isn't **long enough**. (= it's too short)

Remember:

enough + *noun*	but	*adjective* + **enough**
enough money		tall **enough**
enough time		good **enough**
enough people		old **enough**

D

We say:

enough for somebody/something	■ This sweater isn't **big enough for me**. ■ I don't have **enough money for a new car**.
enough to do something	■ I don't have **enough money to buy** a new car. (*not* for buy) ■ Is your English **good enough to have** a conversation? (*not* for have)
enough for somebody/something **to do** something	■ There aren't **enough chairs for everybody to sit** down.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

92.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use ***enough*** + these words:

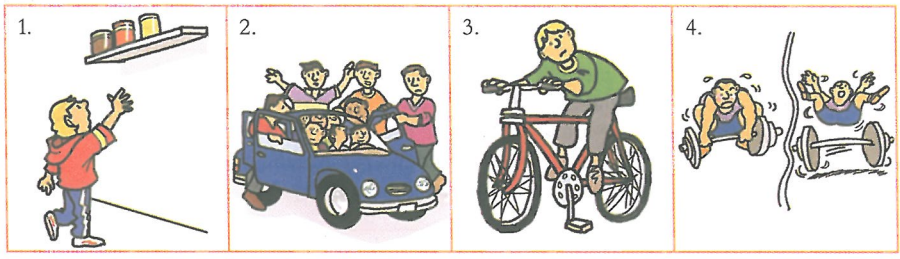
chairs ~~money~~ paint wind



1. She doesn't have *enough money*.
2. There aren't _____.
3. She doesn't have _____.
4. There isn't _____.

92.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use these adjectives + ***enough***:

big long strong ~~tall~~



1. He *isn't tall enough*.
2. The car _____.
3. His legs aren't _____.
4. He _____.

92.3 Complete the sentences. Use ***enough*** with these words:

big eat ~~loud~~ old practice ~~salt~~ space time tired

1. "Is there *enough salt* in the soup?" "Yes, it's fine."
2. Can you hear the radio? Is it *loud enough* for you?
3. He can quit school if he wants – he's _____.
4. When I visited New York last year, I didn't have _____ to see all the things I wanted to see.
5. This house isn't _____ for a large family.
6. Tina is very thin. She doesn't _____.
7. My office is very small. There isn't _____.
8. It's late, but I don't want to go to bed now. I'm not _____.
9. Lisa isn't a very good tennis player because she doesn't _____.

92.4 Complete the sentences. Use ***enough*** with these words:

1. We don't have *enough money to buy* a new car. (money / buy)
2. This knife isn't _____ tomatoes. (sharp / cut)
3. The water wasn't _____ swimming. (warm / go)
4. Do we have _____ sandwiches? (bread / make)
5. We played well, but not _____ the game. (well / win)
6. I don't have _____ the newspaper. (time / read)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 93

too

A



The shoes are **too big** for him.



There is **too much** sugar in it.

B

Too + *adjective / adverb* (**too big / too hard**, etc.)

- Can you turn the radio down?
  It's **too loud**. (= louder than I want)
- I can't work. I'm **too tired**.
- I think you work **too hard**.



C

Too much / too many = more than you want, more than is good:

- I don't like the weather here. There is **too much rain**. (= more rain than is good)
- Let's go to another restaurant. There are **too many people** here.
- Emily studies all the time. I think she studies **too much**.
- Traffic is a problem in this town. There are **too many cars**.

D

Compare **too** and **not enough**:



too big

- The hat is **too big** for him.
- The radio is **too loud**. Can you turn it down, please?
- There's **too much sugar** in my coffee.
  (= more sugar than I want)
- I don't feel very well. I ate **too much**.



not big enough

- The hat is**n't big enough** for him. (= it's **too small**)
- The radio is**n't loud enough**. Can you turn it up, please?
- There's **not enough sugar** in my coffee.
  (= I need more sugar)
- You're very thin. You don**'t** eat **enough**.

E

We say:

too . . . for somebody/something	■ These shoes are **too big for me**.
	■ It's a small house – **too small for a large family**.
too . . . to do something	■ I'm **too tired to go** out. (*not* for go out)
	■ It's **too cold to sit** outside.
too . . . for somebody **to do** something	■ She speaks **too fast for me to understand**.

to . . . and for . . . → Unit 55 much/many → Unit 94 enough → Unit 92

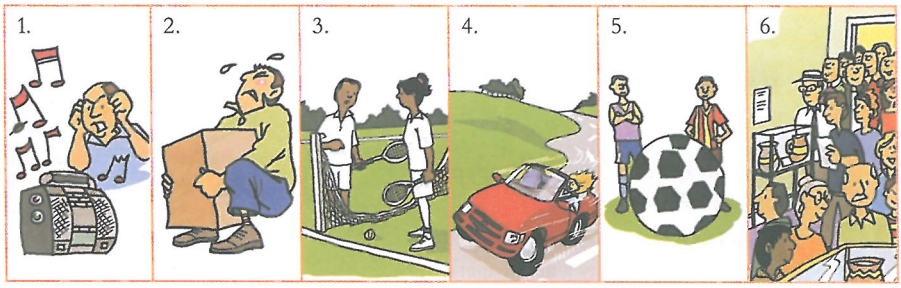
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

93.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use ***too*** + these words:

big crowded fast heavy ~~loud~~ low



1. The music is *too loud* .
2. The box is _____ .
3. The net is _____ .
4. She's driving _____ .
5. The ball is _____ .
6. The museum is _____ .

93.2 Write ***too*** / ***too much*** / ***too many*** or ***enough***.

1. You're always at home. You don't go out *enough* .
2. I don't like the weather here. There's *too much* rain.
3. I can't wait for them. I don't have _____ time.
4. There was nowhere to sit on the beach. There were _____ people.
5. You're always tired. I think you work _____ hard.
6. "Did you have _____ to eat?" "Yes, thank you."
7. You drink _____ coffee. It's not good for you.
8. You don't eat _____ vegetables. You should eat more of them.
9. I don't like the weather here. It's _____ cold.
10. Our team didn't play well. We made _____ mistakes.
11. "Would you like some ice in your tea?" "Yes, but not _____ ."

93.3 Complete the sentences. Use ***too*** or ***enough*** with these words:

1. I couldn't work. I *was too tired* . (tired)
2. Can you turn the radio up, please? It *isn't loud enough* . (loud)
3. I don't want to walk home. It's _____ . (far)
4. Don't buy anything in that store. It _____ . (expensive)
5. You can't put all your things in this bag. It _____ . (big)
6. I couldn't do the exercise. It _____ . (difficult)
7. Your work needs to be better. It _____ . (good)
8. I can't talk to you now. I _____ . (busy)
9. I thought the movie was boring. It _____ . (long)

93.4 Complete the sentences. Use ***too*** (+ adjective) + ***to*** . . . .

1. (I'm not going out / cold) It's *too cold to go out* .
2. (I'm not going to bed / early) It's _____ .
3. (they're not getting married / young) They're _____ .
4. (nobody goes out at night / dangerous) It's _____ .
5. (don't call Sue now / late) It's _____ .
6. (I didn't say anything / surprised) I was _____ .

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 94

He speaks English very well. (word order 1)

A Verb + object

Sue **reads** **a newspaper** every day.
subject *verb* *object*

The *verb* (**reads**) and the *object* (**a newspaper**) are usually together. We say:

- Sue **reads a newspaper** every day.
  (*not* Sue reads every day a newspaper)



Sue (subject) *a newspaper (object)*

verb + object	
He **speaks**	**English** very well. (*not* He speaks very well English)
I **like**	**Italian food** very much. (*not* I like very much . . .)
Did you **watch**	**television** all night? (*not* Did you watch all night . . .)
Paul often **wears**	**a black hat**. (*not* Paul wears often . . .)
We **invited**	**a lot of people** to the party.
I **opened**	**the door** slowly.
Why do you always **make**	**the same mistake**?
I'm going to **borrow**	**some money** from the bank.

B Where and when

We went **to a party** **last night** .
where? *when?*

Place *(where?)* is usually before time *(when?)*. We say:

- We went **to a party last night**. (*not* We went last night to a party)

	place *(where?)*	+	time *(when? how long? how often?)*	
Lisa walks	**to work**		**every day**.	(*not* . . . every day to work)
Will you be	**at home**		**tonight**?	(*not* . . . tonight at home)
I usually go	**to bed**		**early**.	(*not* . . . early to bed)
We arrived	**at the airport**		**at 7:00**.	
They've lived	**in the same house**		**for 20 years**.	
Joe's father has been	**in the hospital**		**since June**.	

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

94.1 Right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

1. Did you watch all night television? — *Did you watch television all night?*
2. Sue reads a newspaper every day. — *OK*
3. I like very much this picture. _____
4. Tom started last week his new job. _____
5. I want to speak English fluently. _____
6. Jane bought for her friend a present. _____
7. I drink every day three cups of coffee. _____
8. Don't eat your dinner too quickly! _____
9. I borrowed from my brother 50 dollars. _____

94.2 Put the words in order.

1. (the door / opened / I / slowly) — *I opened the door slowly.*
2. (a new computer / I / last week / bought) I _____
3. (finished / Paul / quickly / his work) _____
4. (Emily / very well / French / doesn't speak) _____
5. (a lot of shopping / did / I / yesterday) _____
6. (New York / do you know / well?) _____
7. (we / enjoyed / very much / the party) _____
8. (the problem / carefully / I / explained) _____
9. (we / at the airport / some friends / met) _____
10. (did you buy / in Canada / that jacket?) _____
11. (every day / do / the same thing / we) _____
12. (football / don't like / very much / I) _____

94.3 Put the words in order.

1. (to work / every day / walks / Lisa) — *Lisa walks to work every day.*
2. (at the hotel / I / early / arrived) I _____
3. (goes / every year / to Puerto Rico / Julia) Julia _____
4. (we / since 2002 / here / have lived) We _____
5. (in Florida / Sue / in 1984 / was born)
   Sue _____
6. (didn't go / yesterday / Paul / to work)
   Paul _____
7. (to a wedding / last weekend / went / Helen)
   Helen _____
8. (I / in bed / this morning / my breakfast / had)
   I _____
9. (in September / Barbara / to college / is going)
   Barbara _____
10. (I / a beautiful bird / this morning / in the garden / saw)
    I _____
11. (many times / have been / my parents / to Tokyo)
    My _____
12. (my umbrella / I / last night / left / in the restaurant)
    I _____
13. (to the movies / tomorrow night / are you going?)
    Are _____
14. (the children / I / took / this morning / to school)
    I _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 95

always/usually/often, etc. (word order 2)

A

These words (**always/never**, etc.) are with the verb in the middle of a sentence:

always	often	ever	rarely	also	already	all
usually	sometimes	never	seldom	just	still	both

- My brother **never speaks** to me.
- She**'s always** late.
- Do you **often go** to restaurants?
- I **sometimes eat** too much. (*or* **Sometimes** I eat too much.)
- "Don't forget to call Laura." "I**'ve already called** her."
- I've got three sisters. They**'re all** married.

B

Always/never, etc. are *before* the verb:

	verb
always often never etc.	go play have etc.

- I **always drink** coffee in the morning. (*not* I drink always coffee)
- Helen **often goes** to Chicago on business. (*not* Helen goes often)
- You **sometimes look** unhappy.
- They **usually have** dinner at 7:00.
- We **rarely** (*or* **seldom**) **watch** television.
- Richard is a good swimmer. He **also plays** tennis and volleyball. (*not* He plays also tennis)
- I've got three sisters. They **all live** in the same city.

But **always/never**, etc. are *after* **am/is/are/was/were**:

am is are was were	always often never etc.

- I **am always tired.** (*not* I always am tired)
- They **are never** at home during the day.
- It **is usually** very cold here in the winter.
- When I was a child, I **was often** late for school.
- "Where's Laura?" "She**'s still** in bed."
- I've got two brothers. They**'re both** doctors.

C

Always/never, etc. are *between* two verbs (**have . . . been** / **can . . . find**, etc.):

verb 1		*verb 2*
will can do etc.	always often never etc.	go find remember etc.
have has		gone been etc.

- I **will always remember** you.
- It **doesn't often rain** here.
- **Do** you **usually drive** to work?
- I **can never find** my keys.
- **Have** you **ever been** to Egypt?
- **Did** the phone **just ring**?
- The children **have all finished** their homework.

always/never + simple present → Unit 9 just/already + present perfect → Unit 20 all → Units 81–82
both → Unit 83 still → Unit 96

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

95.1 Read Paul's answers to the questions. Write sentences about Paul with ***often/never***, etc.





Paul

1.	Do you ever play tennis?	Yes, often.	*Paul often plays tennis.*
2.	Do you get up early?	Yes, always.	He _____
3.	Are you ever late for work?	No, never.	He _____
4.	Do you ever get angry?	Sometimes.	_____
5.	Do you ever go swimming?	Rarely.	_____
6.	Are you at home in the evenings?	Yes, usually.	_____

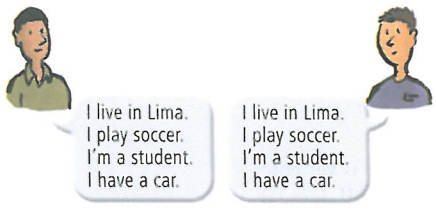
95.2 Write these sentences with ***never/always/usually***, etc.

1. My brother speaks to me. (never) — *My brother never speaks to me.*
2. Susan is polite. (always) — Susan _____
3. I finish work at 5:00. (usually) — I _____
4. Sarah has started a new job. (just) — Sarah _____
5. I go to bed before midnight. (rarely) _____
6. The bus isn't late. (usually) _____
7. I don't eat fish. (often) _____
8. I will forget what you said. (never) _____
9. Have you lost your passport? (ever) _____
10. Do you work in the same place? (still) _____
11. They stay at the same hotel. (always) _____
12. Jane doesn't work on Saturdays. (usually) _____
13. Is Tina here? (already) _____
14. What do you have for breakfast? (usually) _____
15. I can remember his name. (never) _____

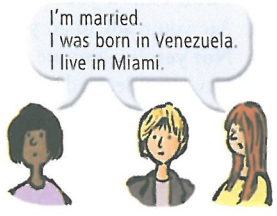
95.3 Write sentences with ***also***.

1. Do you play football? (basketball) — *Yes, and I also play basketball.*
2. Do you speak Italian? (French) — Yes, and I _____
3. Are you tired? (hungry) — Yes, and _____
4. Have you been to Mexico? (Guatemala) — Yes, _____
5. Did you buy any clothes? (some books) _____

95.4 Write sentences with ***both*** and ***all***.



1. *They both live in Lima.*
   They _____ soccer.
   _____ students.
   _____ cars.



2. They _____ married.
   They _____ Venezuela.
   _____

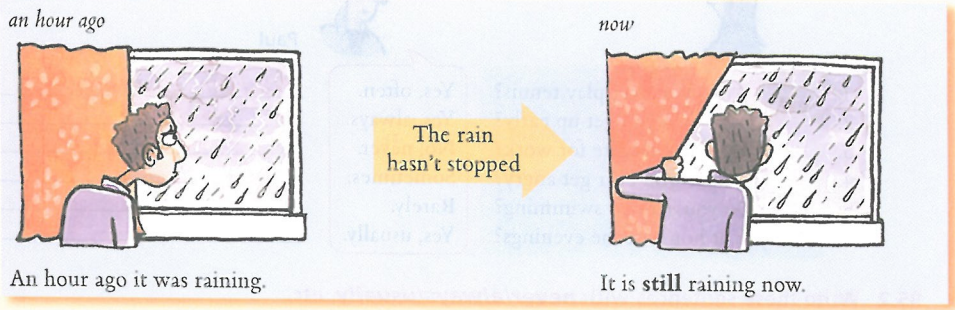
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 96

still yet already

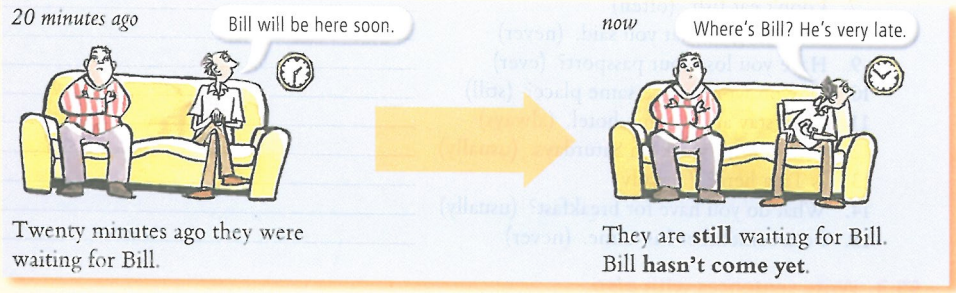
A Still



still = something is the same as before:

- I had a lot to eat, but I'm **still** hungry. (= I was hungry before, and I'm hungry now)
- "Did you sell your car?" "No, I **still** have it."
- "Do you **still** live in Los Angeles?" "No, I live in San Francisco now."

B Yet



yet = until now

We use **yet** in *negative* sentences (He **hasn't** come yet.) and in *questions* (**Has he** come yet?).

Yet is usually at the end of a sentence:

- *A:* Where's Emma?
  B: She **isn't** here **yet**. (= she will be here, but until now she hasn't come)
- *A:* What are you doing tonight?
  B: I **don't** know **yet**. (= I will know later, but I don't know now)
- *A:* Are you ready to go **yet**?
  B: **Not yet**. In a minute. (= I will be ready, but I'm not ready now)
- *A:* Have you decided what to do **yet**?
  B: No, I'm still thinking about it.

Compare **yet** and **still**:

- She hasn't left **yet**. = She's **still** here. (*not* she is yet here)
- I haven't finished my homework **yet**. = I'm **still** doing it.

C

Already = earlier than expected:

- "What time is Joe coming?" "He's **already** here." (= earlier than we expected)
- "I'm going to tell you what happened." "That's not necessary. I **already** know."
- Sarah isn't coming to the movies with us. She has **already** seen the film.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

already/yet + present perfect/simple past → Unit 23 word order (still/already) → Unit 95

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

96.1 You meet Tina. The last time you saw her was two years ago. You ask her some questions with ***still***.

Tina – two years ago

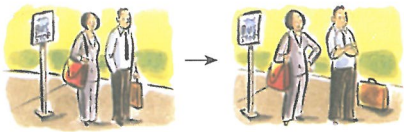


1. I play the piano.
2. I have an old car.
3. I'm a student.
4. I'm studying Japanese.
5. I go to the movies a lot.
6. I want to be a teacher.

1. *Do you still play the piano?*
2. Do you _____
3. Are _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

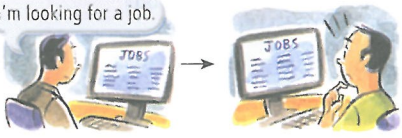
96.2 Write three sentences for each situation. Look at the example carefully.

before *now*

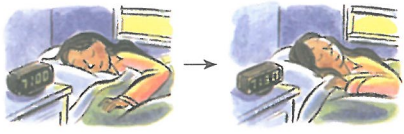
1. 

(before) *They were waiting for the bus.*
(still) *They are still waiting.*
(yet) *The bus hasn't come yet.*

2. I'm looking for a job.



(before) He was _____
(still) He _____
(yet) _____ yet.

3. 

(before) She _____ asleep.
(still) _____
(yet) _____

4. 

dinner *dinner*

(before) They _____
(still) _____
(yet) _____

96.3 Write questions with ***yet***.

1. You and Sue are going out together. You are waiting for her to get ready. Maybe she is ready now. You ask her: *Are you ready yet?*
2. You are waiting for Helen to arrive. She wasn't here 10 minutes ago. Maybe she is here now. You ask somebody: _____ Helen _____
3. Anna had a blood test and is waiting for the results. Maybe she has gotten her results. You ask her: _____ you _____
4. A few days ago you spoke to Tom. He wasn't sure where to go for his vacation. Maybe he has decided. You ask him: _____

96.4 Complete the sentences. Use ***already***.

1. What time is Joe coming?
2. Do you and Joe want to see the movie?
3. I have to see Julia before she leaves.
4. Do you need a pen?
5. Should I pay the bill?
6. Should I tell Paul about the meeting?

He's already here.
No, we *'ve already seen* it.
It's too late. She _____.
No, thanks. I _____ one.
No, that's OK. I _____.
No, he _____. I told him.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 97

Give me that book! Give it to me!

A

give **lend** **pass** **send** **show**

After these verbs (**give**/**lend**, etc.), there are two possible structures:

give something to somebody
- I gave **the keys to Sarah**.

give somebody something
- I gave **Sarah the keys**.



B

Give something to somebody

		something	**to** somebody
That's my book.	**Give**	it	**to** me.
These are Sue's keys. Can you	**give**	them	**to** her?
Can you	**give**	these flowers	**to** your mother?
I	**lent**	my car	**to** a friend of mine.
Did you	**send**	a postcard	**to** Kate?
We've seen these pictures. You	**showed**	them	**to** us yesterday.

C

Give somebody something

		somebody	something
	Give	me	that book. It's mine.
Tom	**gave**	his mother	some flowers.
I	**lent**	Joe	some money.
How much money did you	**lend**	him?	
I	**sent**	you	an e-mail. Did you get it?
Nicole	**showed**	us	her vacation photos.
Can you	**pass**	me	the salt, please?

You can also say "**buy**/**get** somebody something":
- I **bought** my mother some flowers. (= I bought some flowers **for** my mother.)
- Can you **get** me a newspaper when you go out? (= get a newspaper **for** me)

D

You can say:
- I **gave** the keys **to Sarah**.

and I **gave Sarah** the keys.
(*but not* I gave to Sarah the keys)

- That's my book. Can you **give** it **to me**?

and Can you **give me** that book?
(*but not* Can you give to me that book?)

We prefer the first structure (**give** something **to** somebody) with **it** or **them**:
- I gave **it to her**. (*not* I gave her it)
- Here are the keys. Give **them to your father**. (*not* Give your father them)

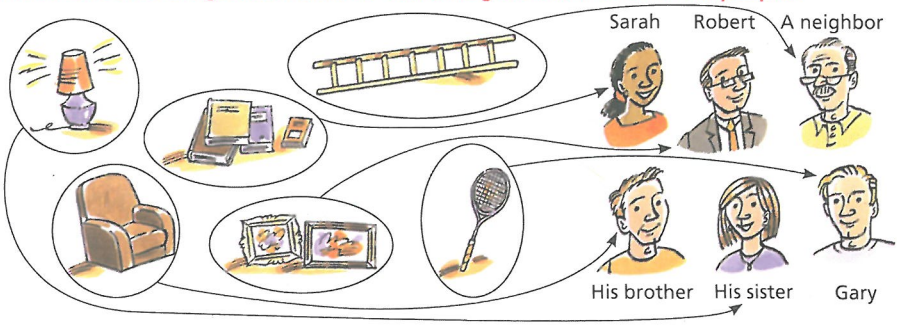
it/him/them, etc. → Unit 60

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

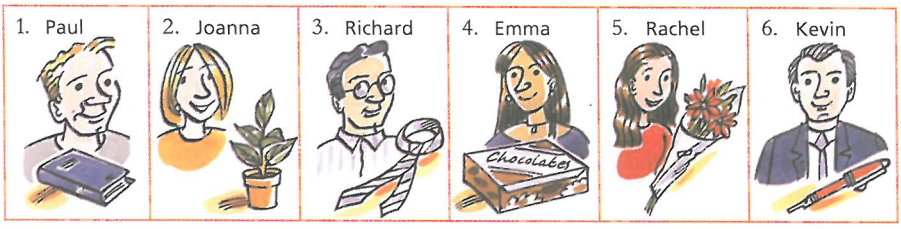
97.1 Mark had some things that he didn't want. He gave them to different people.



Write sentences beginning ***He gave . . . .***

1. What did Mark do with the armchair? *He gave it to his brother.*
2. What did he do with the tennis racket? He gave _____
3. What happened to the books? He _____
4. What about the lamp? _____
5. What did he do with the pictures? _____
6. And the ladder? _____

97.2 You gave presents to your friends. You decided to give them the things in the pictures. Write a sentence for each person.



1. *I gave Paul a book.*
2. I gave _____
3. I _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

97.3 Write questions beginning ***Can you give me . . . ? / Can you pass me . . . ?***, etc.

1. (you want the salt) (pass) *Can you pass me the salt?*
2. (you need an umbrella) (lend) Can you _____
3. (you want my address) (give) Can _____ your _____
4. (you need 20 dollars) (lend) _____
5. (you want some information) (send) _____
6. (you want to see the letter) (show) _____
7. (you want some stamps) (get) _____

97.4 Which is right?

1. ~~I gave to Sarah the keys.~~ / I gave Sarah the keys. (*I gave Sarah the keys* is right)
2. I'll lend to you some money if you want. / I'll lend you some money if you want.
3. Did you send the letter me? / Did you send the letter to me?
4. I want to buy for you a present. / I want to buy you a present.
5. Can you pass to me the sugar, please? / Can you pass me the sugar, please?
6. This is Lisa's bag. Can you give it to her? / Can you give her it?
7. I showed to the police officer my driver's license. /
   I showed the police officer my driver's license.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 98

and but or so because

A

and but or so because

We use these words *(conjunctions)* to join two sentences. They make one longer sentence from two shorter sentences:

sentence A The car stopped. The driver got out. *sentence B*

The car stopped, **and** the driver got out.

B

And/but/or

sentence A		*sentence B*
We stayed at home	**and**	(we)* watched television.
My sister is married	**and**	(she)* lives in Houston.
He doesn't like her,	**and**	she doesn't like him.
I bought a newspaper,	**but**	I didn't read it.
It's a nice house,	**but**	it doesn't have a garage.
Do you want to go out,	**or**	are you too tired?

*It is not necessary to repeat "we" and "she."

In lists, we use commas (,). We use **and** before the last two things:

- I got home, had something to eat, sat down in an armchair, **and** fell asleep.
- Karen is at work, Sue has gone shopping, **and** Chris is playing football.

C

So (the result of something)

sentence A		*sentence B*
It was very hot,	**so**	I opened the window.
Joe plays a lot of sports,	**so**	he's very fit.
They don't like to travel,	**so**	they haven't been to many places.

D

Because (the reason for something)

sentence A		*sentence B*
I opened the window	**because**	it was very hot.
Joe can't come to the party	**because**	he's leaving town.
Lisa is hungry	**because**	she didn't have breakfast.

Because is also possible at the beginning. We use a comma.

- **Because it was very hot**, I opened the window.

E

In these examples there is more than one conjunction:

- It was late **and** I was tired, **so** I went to bed.
- I love New York, **but** I wouldn't like to live there **because** it's too big.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

when/while/before, etc. → Unit 99

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

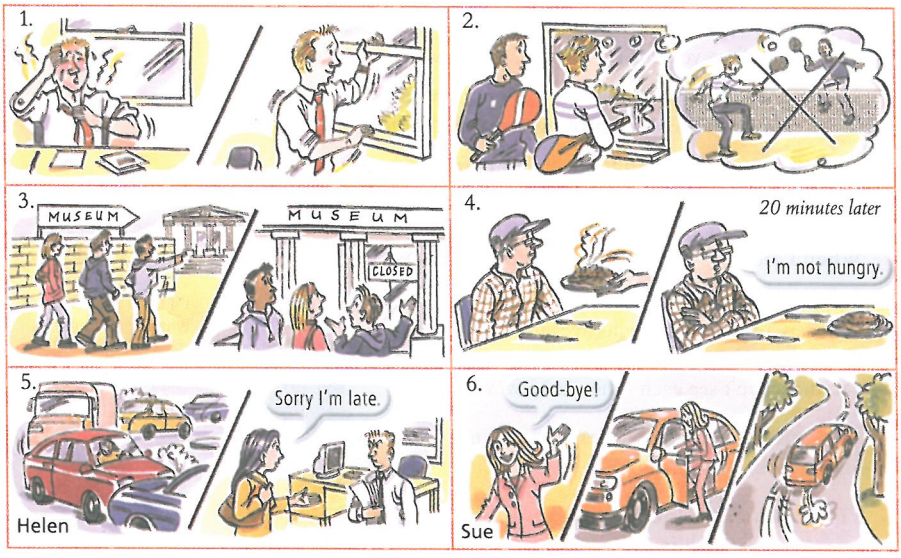
Exercises

98.1 Write sentences. Choose from the boxes and use ***and/but/or***.

~~I stayed at home.~~	I didn't have your number.
~~I bought a newspaper.~~	Should I wait here?
I went to the window.	~~I didn't read it.~~
I wanted to call you.	I took the bus this morning.
I jumped into the river.	~~I watched television.~~
I usually drive to work.	I swam to the other side.
Do you want me to come with you?	I looked out.

1. *I stayed at home and watched television.*
2. *I bought a newspaper, but I didn't read it.*
3. I _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____

98.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use ***and/but/so/because***.



1. It was very hot, *so he opened the window.*
2. They couldn't play tennis _____
3. They went to the museum, _____
4. Bill wasn't hungry, _____
5. Helen was late _____
6. Sue said _____

98.3 Write sentences about what you did yesterday. Use ***and/but***, etc.

1. (and) *Last night I stayed at home and studied.*
2. (because) *I went to bed very early because I was tired.*
3. (but) _____
4. (and) _____
5. (so) _____
6. (because) _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 99

When . . .

A

When I went out, it was raining.

This sentence has two parts:

when I went out + **it was raining**

You can say:

- **When I went out**, it was raining. *or*
  It was raining when I went out.

We write a comma (,) if **When** . . . is at the beginning:

- **When** you're tired, don't drive.
  Don't drive **when** you're tired.
- Helen was 25 **when** she got married.
  When Helen got married, she was 25.



We do the same in sentences with **before/while/after**:

- Always look both ways **before** you cross the street.
  Before you cross the street, always look both ways.
- **While** I was waiting for the bus, it began to rain.
  It began to rain **while** I was waiting for the bus.
- He never played football again **after** he broke his leg.
  After he broke his leg, he never played football again.

B

When I am . . . / When I go . . ., etc.

Next week Sarah is going to New York.
She has a friend, Lisa, who lives in New York,
but Lisa is also going away – to Mexico.
So they won't see each other in New York.

Lisa **will be** in Mexico **when** Sarah **is** in New York.

The time is *future* (**next week**) but we say:
. . . **when** Sarah **is** in New York.
(*not* when Sarah will be)



We use the *present* (**I am / I go**, etc.) with a *future meaning* after **when**:

- **When** I **get** home tonight, I'm going to take a shower. (*not* When I will get home)
- I can't talk to you now. I'll talk to you later **when** I **have** more time.

We do the same after **before/while/after/until**:

- Please close the window **before** you **go** out. (*not* before you will go)
- Rachel is going to stay in our apartment **while** we **are** away. (*not* while we will be)
- I'll wait here **until** you **come** back. (*not* until you will come back)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

if and when → Unit 100 until → Unit 265 before/while/after → Unit 196

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

99.1 Write sentences beginning with *when*. Choose from the boxes.

When +	~~I went out~~ I'm tired I called her I go on vacation the program ended I got to the hotel	+	I turned off the TV I always go to the same place there were no rooms ~~it was raining~~ there was no answer I like to watch TV

1. *When I went out, it was raining*
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

99.2 Complete the sentences using the following:

somebody broke into the house	before they came here	when they heard the news
~~before they crossed the street~~	while they were away	they didn't believe me
they went to live in France		

1. They looked both ways *before they crossed the street.*
2. They were very surprised _____
3. After they got married, _____
4. Their house was damaged in a storm _____
5. Where did they live _____ ?
6. While we were asleep, _____
7. When I told them what happened, _____

99.3 Which is right?

1. ~~I stay~~ / I'll stay here until you come / ~~you'll come~~ back. (*I'll stay* and *you come* are right)
2. I'm going to bed when I finish / I'll finish my work.
3. We must do something before it's / it will be too late.
4. Helen is moving away soon. I'm / I'll be very sad when she leaves / she'll leave.
5. Don't go out yet. Wait until the rain stops / will stop.
6. We come / We'll come and visit you when we're / we'll be in Toronto again.
7. When I come / I'll come to see you tomorrow, I bring / I'll bring your DVDs.
8. I'm going to Quebec next week. I hope to see some friends of mine while I'm / I'll be there.
9. "I need your address." "OK, I give / I'll give it to you before I go / I'll go."
10. I'm not ready yet. I tell / I'll tell you when I'm / I'll be ready.

99.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. Can you close the window before *you go out* ?
2. What are you going to do when _____ ?
3. When I have enough money, _____ .
4. I'll wait for you while _____ .
5. When I start my new job, _____ .
6. Will you be here when _____ ?

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 100

If we go . . . If you see . . . , etc.

A



If can be at the beginning of a sentence or in the middle:

If at the beginning

If we take the bus,	it will be cheaper.
If you don't hurry,	you'll miss the train.
If you're hungry,	have something to eat.
If the phone rings,	can you answer it, please?

	if in the middle
It will be cheaper	**if** we take the bus.
You'll miss the train	**if** you don't hurry.
I'm going to the concert	**if** I can get a ticket.
Is it OK	**if** I use your phone?

In conversation, we often use the **if**-part of the sentence alone:

- "Are you going to the concert?" "Yes, **if I can get a ticket**."

B

If you see Ann tomorrow . . ., etc.

After **if**, we use the present (*not* will). We say **if** you **see** . . . (*not* if you will see):

- **If** you **see** Ann tomorrow, can you ask her to call me?
- **If I'm** late tonight, don't wait for me. (*not* if I will be)
- What should we do **if** it **rains**? (*not* if it will rain)
- **If I don't feel** well tomorrow, I'll stay home.

C

If and **when**

If I go out = it is possible that I will go out, but I'm not sure:

- *A:* Are you going out later?
  B: Maybe. **If I go out**, I'll close the windows.

When I go out = I'm going out (for sure):

- *A:* Are you going out later?
  B: Yes, I am. **When I go out**, I'll close the windows.

Compare **when** and **if**:

- **When** I get home tonight, I'm going to take a shower.
- **If** I'm late tonight, don't wait for me. (*not* When I'm late)
- We're going to play basketball **if** it doesn't rain. (*not* when it doesn't rain)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

100.1 Write sentences beginning with *if*. Choose from the boxes.

If +	+
~~you don't hurry~~	we can have lunch now
you pass the driving test	you can have them
you fail the driving test	I can lend you some
you don't want this magazine	you'll get your license
you want those pictures	~~you'll be late~~
you're busy now	I'll throw it away
you're hungry	we can talk later
you need money	you can take it again

1. *If you don't hurry, you'll be late.*
2. If you pass _____
3. If _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____

100.2 Which is right?

1. If I'm / ~~I'll be~~ late tonight, don't wait for me. (*I'm* is right)
2. Will you call me if I give / I'll give you my phone number?
3. If there is / will be a fire, the alarm will ring.
4. If I don't see you tomorrow morning, I call / I'll call you in the afternoon.
5. I'm / I'll be surprised if Martin and Jane get / will get married.
6. Do you go / Will you go to the party if they invite / they'll invite you?

100.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. I'm going to the concert if *I can get a ticket.*
2. If you don't hurry, *you'll miss the train.*
3. I don't want to disturb you if _____
4. If you go to bed early tonight, _____
5. Turn the television off if _____
6. Tina won't pass her driving test if _____
7. If I have time tomorrow, _____
8. We can go to the beach tomorrow if _____
9. I'll be surprised if _____

100.4 Write *if* or *when*.

1. *If* I'm late tonight, don't wait for me.
2. I'm going shopping now. _____ I come back, we can have lunch.
3. I'm thinking of going to see Tim. _____ I go, will you come with me?
4. _____ you don't want to go out tonight, we can stay at home.
5. Is it OK _____ I close the window?
6. John is still in high school. _____ he finishes, he wants to go to college.
7. Do you want to go on a picnic tomorrow _____ the weather is good?
8. We're going to Mexico City next week. We're going to look for a hotel _____ we get there. I don't know what we'll do _____ we don't find a room.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 101

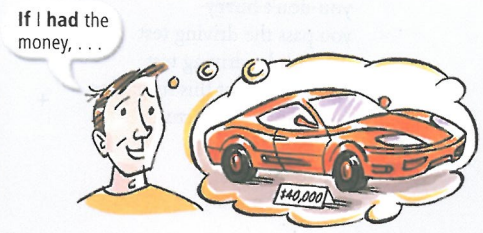
If I had . . . If we went . . . , etc.

A

Dan likes fast cars, but he doesn't have one. He doesn't have enough money.

If he **had** the money, he **would buy** a fast car.

Usually **had** is *past*, but in this sentence **had** is *not* past. **If** he **had** the money = if he had the money *now* (but he doesn't have it).



If	I you it they, etc.	**had/knew/lived/went** (etc.) . . . , **didn't have / didn't know** (etc.) . . . , **were** . . . , **could** . . . ,	I you it they, etc.	**would(n't)** **could(n't)**	buy . . . be . . . have . . . go . . . , etc.

You can say:

- **If he had** the money, he would buy a car.

or He would buy a car **if he had** the money.

I'd / she'd / they'd, etc. = I **would** / she **would** / they **would**, etc.:

- I don't know the answer. **If I knew** the answer, **I'd tell** you.
- It's raining, so we're not going out. **We'd get** wet **if** we **went** out.
- Jane lives in a city. She likes cities. She **wouldn't be** happy **if** she **lived** in the country.
- **If** you **didn't have** a job, what **would** you **do**? (but you *have* a job)
- I'm sorry I can't help you. **I'd help** you **if I could**. (but I *can't*)
- **If** we **had** a car, we **could travel** more. (but we *don't* have a car, so we *can't* travel much)

B

If (I) was/were . . .

You can say **if** I/he/she/it **was** *or* **if** I/he/she/it **were**:

- It's not a very nice place. I wouldn't go there **if I were you**. (*or* . . . **if I was** you)
- It would be nice **if the weather was** better. (*or* . . . **if the weather were** better)
- What would Tom do **if he were** here? (*or* . . . **if he was** here)



C

Compare:

if I have / if it is, etc.

- I want to go and see Helen. **If I have** time, **I will go** today. (= maybe I'll have time, so maybe I'll go)
- I like that jacket. **I'll buy** it **if** it **isn't** too expensive. (= maybe it will not be too expensive)
- **I'll help** you **if I can**. (= maybe I can help)

if I had / if it was, etc.

- I want to go and see Helen. **If I had** time, **I would go** today. (= I don't have time today, so I will not go)
- I like that jacket, but it's very expensive. **I'd buy** it **if** it **wasn't** so expensive. (= it is expensive, so I'm not going to buy it)
- **I'd help** you **if I could**, but I can't.

if we go / if I have / if I can, etc. → Unit 102

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

101.1 Complete the sentences.

1. I don't know the answer. If I *knew* the answer, I'd tell you.
2. I have a car. I couldn't travel very much if I *didn't have* a car.
3. I don't want to go out. If I _____ to go out, I'd go.
4. We don't have a key. If we _____ a key, we could get into the house.
5. I'm not hungry. I would have something to eat if I _____ hungry.
6. Sue enjoys her work. She wouldn't do it if she _____ it.
7. He can't speak any foreign languages. If he _____ speak a foreign language, maybe he would get a better job.
8. You don't try hard enough. If you _____ harder, you would have more success.
9. I have a lot to do today. If I _____ so much to do, we could go out.

101.2 Put the verb in the correct form.

1. If *he had* the money, he would buy a fast car. (he / have)
2. Jane likes living in a city. *She wouldn't be* happy if she lived in the country. (she / not / be)
3. If I wanted to learn Italian, _____ to Italy. (I / go)
4. I haven't told Helen what happened. She'd be angry if _____ . (she / know)
5. If _____ a map, I could show you where I live. (we / have)
6. What would you do if _____ a lot of money? (you / win)
7. It's not a very good hotel. _____ there if I were you. (I / not / stay)
8. If _____ closer to Miami, we would go there more often. (we / live)
9. I'm sorry you have to go now. _____ nice if you had more time. (it / be)
10. I'm not going to take the job. I'd take it if _____ better. (the salary / be)
11. I don't know anything about cars. If my car broke down, _____ what to do. (I / not / know)
12. If you could change one thing in the world, what _____ ? (you / change)

101.3 Complete the sentences. Use the following (with the verb in the correct form):

we (have) a bigger house	~~it (be) a little cheaper~~	I (watch) it
we (buy) a bigger house	every day (be) the same	I (be) bored
we (have) some pictures on the wall	the air (be) cleaner	

1. I'd buy that jacket if *it was a little cheaper* .
2. If there was a good movie on TV tonight, _____ .
3. This room would be nicer if _____ .
4. If there wasn't so much traffic, _____ .
5. Life would be boring if _____ .
6. If I had nothing to do, _____ .
7. We could invite all our friends to stay if _____ .
8. If we had more money, _____ .

101.4 Complete the sentences. Use your own ideas.

1. I'd be happier if *I had less work* .
2. If I could go anywhere in the world, _____ .
3. I wouldn't be very happy if _____ .
4. I'd buy _____ if _____ .
5. If I saw an accident in the street, _____ .
6. The world would be a better place if _____ .

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 102

a person **who** . . . a thing **that/which** . . . (relative clauses 1)

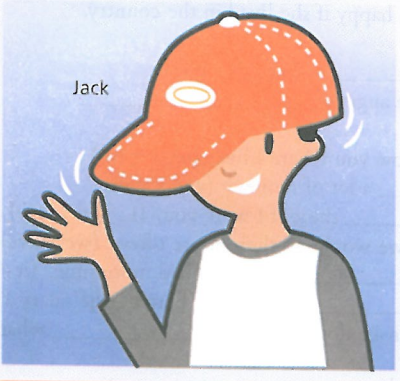
A



I met a woman. **She** can speak six languages.
2 sentences

she → who

1 sentence
I met **a woman who** can speak six languages.



Jack was wearing a hat. **It** was too big for him.
2 sentences

it → that *or* **which**

1 sentence
Jack was wearing **a hat that** was too big for him.
or
Jack was wearing **a hat which** was too big for him.

B

Who is for people (*not* things):

A thief is **a person**	**who** steals things.	
Do you know **anybody**	**who** can play the piano?	
The man	**who** called	didn't give his name.
The people	**who** work in the office	are very friendly.

C

That is for things or people:

An airplane is **a machine**	**that** flies.	
Emma lives in **a house**	**that** is 100 years old.	
The people	**that** work in the office	are very friendly.

You can use **that** for people, but **who** is more common.

D

Which is for things (*not* people):

An airplane is **a machine**	**which** flies. (*not* a machine who . . .)
Emma lives in **a house**	**which** is 100 years old.

Do not use **which** for people:

- Do you remember **the woman who** played the piano at the party? (*not* the woman which . . .)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

who and which in questions → Units 46, 48 · the people we met (relative clauses 2) → Unit 103

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

102.1 Choose from the boxes and write sentences: ***A . . . is a person who . . . .*** Use a dictionary if necessary.

~~a thief~~	a dentist	doesn't tell the truth	is sick in the hospital
a butcher	a fool	takes care of your teeth	~~steals things~~
a musician	a genius	is very intelligent	does stupid things
a patient	a liar	plays a musical instrument	sells meat

1. *A thief is a person who steals things.*
2. A butcher is a person _____
3. A musician _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____

102.2 Make one sentence from two.

1. (A man called. He didn't give his name.)
   The man who called didn't give his name.
2. (A woman opened the door. She was wearing a yellow dress.)
   The woman _____ a yellow dress.
3. (Some students took the test. Most of them passed.)
   Most of the students _____
4. (A police officer stopped our car. He wasn't very friendly.)
   The _____

102.3 Write ***who*** or ***which***.

1. I met a woman *who* can speak six languages.
2. What's the name of the man _____ just started working in your office?
3. What's the name of the river _____ flows through the town?
4. Where is the picture _____ was hanging on the wall?
5. Do you know anybody _____ wants to buy a car?
6. You always ask questions _____ are difficult to answer.
7. I have a friend _____ is very good at fixing cars.
8. I think everybody _____ went to the party really enjoyed it.
9. Why does he always wear clothes _____ are too small for him?

102.4 Right or wrong? Correct the mistakes.

1. A thief is a person which steals things. — *a person who steals*
2. An airplane is a machine that flies. — *OK*
3. A coffee maker is a machine who makes coffee. —
4. Have you seen the money that was on the table? —
5. I don't like people which never stop talking. —
6. I know somebody that can help you. —
7. I know somebody who works in that store. —
8. Correct the sentences who are wrong. —
9. My neighbor bought a car who cost $60,000. —

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 103

the people we met
the hotel you stayed at (relative clauses 2)

A



The man is carrying a bag. It's very heavy. } *2 sentences*

The bag (that) he is carrying is very heavy.
1 sentence



Kate

Kate won some money. What is she going to do with it? } *2 sentences*

What is Kate going to do with **the money (that) she won?**
1 sentence

You can say:

- The bag **that** he is carrying . . . *or* The bag he is carrying . . . (with or without **that**)
- . . . the money **that** Kate won? *or* . . . the money Kate won?

You do not need **that/who/which** when it is the *object*:

subject	*verb*	*object*	
The man	was carrying	a bag	→ **the bag** (that) **the man was carrying**
Kate	won	some money	→ **the money** (that) **Kate won**
You	wanted	some books	→ **the books** (that) **you wanted**
We	met	some people	→ **the people** (who) **we met**

- Did you find **the books you wanted**? (*or* . . . the books **that** you wanted?)
- **The people we met** were very friendly. (*or* The people **who** we met . . .)
- **Everything I said** was true. (*or* Everything **that** I said . . .)

We say:

- The movie **we saw** was very good. (*not* The movie we saw it was . . .)

B

Sometimes there is a *preposition* (**to/in/at**, etc.) after the verb:

Eve **is talking to** a man.	→	Do you know **the man Eve is talking to**?
We **stayed at** a hotel.	→	**The hotel we stayed at** was near the station.
I **told** you **about** some books.	→	These are **the books I told you about**.

We say:

. . . the books **I told you about**. (*not* the books I told you about them)

You can say (a place) **where** . . . :

- **The hotel where** we stayed was near the station. (= The hotel we stayed at . . .)

C

You must use **who/that/which** when it is the *subject* (→ Unit 102):

- I met a woman **who can speak** six languages. (**who** is the subject)
- Jack was wearing a hat **that was** too big for him. (**that** is the subject)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین آرشیو دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

103.1 Make one sentence from two.

1. (Helen took some pictures. Have you seen them?)
   Have you seen the pictures Helen took?
2. (You gave me a pen. I've lost it.)
   I've lost the _____
3. (Sue is wearing a jacket. I like it.)
   I like the _____
4. (I gave you some flowers. Where are they?)
   Where are the _____ ?
5. (He told us a story. I didn't believe it.)
   I _____
6. (You bought some oranges. How much were they?)
   How _____ ?

103.2 Make one sentence from two.

1. (I was carrying a bag. It was very heavy.)
   The bag I was carrying was very heavy.
2. (You cooked a meal. It was excellent.)
   The _____
3. (I'm wearing shoes. They aren't very comfortable.)
   The shoes _____
4. (We invited some people to dinner. They didn't come.)
   The _____

103.3 You ask your friend some questions. Complete the sentences.

1. Your friend stayed at a hotel. You ask:
   What's the name of *the hotel you stayed at?*
2. Your friend was talking to some people. You ask:
   Who are the people _____ ?
3. Your friend was looking for some keys. You ask:
   Did you find the _____ ?
4. Your friend is going to a party. You ask:
   Where is the _____ ?
5. Your friend was talking about a movie. You ask:
   What's the name of _____ ?
6. Your friend is listening to some music. You ask:
   What's that _____ ?
7. Your friend was waiting for an e-mail. You ask:
   Did you get _____ ?

103.4 Complete the questions. Use ***where***.

1. John stayed at a hotel. You ask him:
   Did you like *the hotel where you stayed* ?
2. Sue had dinner in a restaurant. You ask her:
   What's the name of the restaurant _____ ?
3. Sarah lives in a town. You ask her:
   How big is the _____ ?
4. Richard works in a factory. You ask him:
   Where exactly is _____ ?

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 104

at 8:00 on Monday in April

A At



at	8:00 10:30 midnight, etc.
	night the end of . . .

- I start work **at 8:00 in the morning**.
- The banks close **at 5:00**.
- I can't sleep **at night**.
- I'm taking a trip **at the end of October**.

B On



(on)	Sunday(s) / Monday(s), etc. April 25 / June 6, etc. Monday morning / Tuesday afternoon / Friday night, etc. New Year's Day, etc.

You can say:

- Bye! See you **on Friday**. *or* See you **Friday**. (with or without **on**)
- Do you work **on Sundays**? *or* Do you work **Sundays**?
- The concert is **on November 20**. *or* The concert is **November 20**.
- I'm leaving **on Friday night**. *or* I'm leaving **Friday night**.

We say **on the weekend / on weekends** (always with **on**).

- They like to eat out **on the weekend / on weekends**.

C In



in	April/June, etc. 2009/1968, etc.
	the spring/summer/fall/winter the morning/afternoon/evening

- I'm taking a trip **in October**.
- Amy was born **in 1988**.
- The park is beautiful **in the fall**.
- Do you often go out **in the evening**?

D

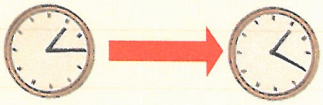
We do *not* use **at/on/in** before:

this . . . (**this morning / this week**, etc.)
every . . . (**every day / every week**, etc.)
last . . . (**last August / last week**, etc.)
next . . . (**next Monday / next week**, etc.)

- What are you doing **this weekend**?
- We go on vacation **every summer**. **Last summer** we went to Europe.
- I'm leaving **next Monday**. (*not* on next Monday)

E

In five minutes / in a few days / in six weeks / in two years, etc.



now — **in five minutes**

- Hurry! The train leaves **in five minutes**. (= it leaves five minutes from now)
- Bye! I'll see you **in a few days**. (= a few days from now)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

104.1 Write *at* or *in*.

1. Amy was born __in__ 1988.
2. I got up _____ 8:00 this morning.
3. I like to get up early _____ the morning.
4. I like to look at the stars _____ night.
5. My brother got married _____ May.
6. We often go to the beach _____ the summer.
7. Let's meet _____ 7:30 tomorrow night.
8. The company started _____ 1989.
9. I'll send you the money _____ the end of the month.
10. The café is open _____ the evening. It closes _____ midnight.

104.2 Write *at*/*on*/*in*.

1. __on__ June 6
2. __in__ the evening
3. _____ half past two
4. _____ Wednesday
5. _____ 1997
6. _____ September
7. _____ September 24
8. _____ Thursday
9. _____ 11:45
10. _____ Christmas Day
11. _____ noon
12. _____ the morning
13. _____ Friday morning
14. _____ Saturday night
15. _____ night
16. _____ the end of the day
17. _____ the weekend
18. _____ the winter

104.3 Which sentence is correct – A, B, or both of them?

	A	B	
1.	I'm taking a trip in October.	I'm taking a trip on October.	__A__
2.	Do you work Sundays?	Do you work on Sundays?	__both__
3.	I always feel tired at the evening.	I always feel tired in the evening.	_____
4.	I'm leaving next Saturday.	I'm leaving on next Saturday.	_____
5.	Tim started his new job on May 18.	Tim started his new job May 18.	_____
6.	Laura finished high school in 2002.	Laura finished high school 2002.	_____
7.	We meet on every Tuesday.	We meet every Tuesday.	_____
8.	We don't often go out in night.	We don't often go out at night.	_____
9.	I can't meet you Thursday.	I can't meet you on Thursday.	_____
10.	Lisa saw Sam Monday night.	Lisa saw Sam on Monday night.	_____
11.	I'm leaving in the end of this month.	I'm leaving at the end of this month.	_____
12.	Tim goes to the gym on Fridays.	Tim goes to the gym Fridays.	_____

104.4 Write sentences with *in* . . . .

1. It's 8:25 now. The train leaves at 8:30. __The train leaves in five minutes.__
2. It's Monday today. I'll call you on Thursday. I'll _____ days.
3. Today is June 14. My exam is on June 28. My _____
4. It's 3:00 now. Tom will be here at 3:30. Tom _____

104.5 Write *at*/*on*/*in* if necessary. Sometimes the sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

1. They like to eat out __on__ weekends.
2. I'm going __-__ next Friday. *(already complete)*
3. I always feel tired _____ the evening.
4. Will you be at home _____ this evening?
5. We went to France _____ last summer.
6. Laura was born _____ 1994.
7. What are you doing _____ the weekend?
8. I call Robert _____ every Sunday.
9. Should we play tennis _____ next Sunday?
10. I couldn't go to the party _____ last weekend.
11. I'm going out. I'll be back _____ an hour.
12. I don't often go out _____ night.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

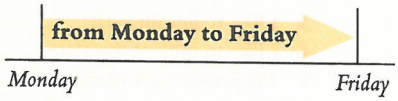
UNIT 105

from . . . to until since for

A

From . . . to . . .

We lived in Japan **from** 1996 **to** 2005.
I work **from** Monday **to** Friday.



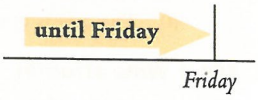
You can also say **from . . . until . . .**:
We lived in Japan **from** 1996 **until** 2005.

B

Until . . .

until	Friday December 3:00 I come back

- They're leaving town tomorrow. They'll be away **until Friday**.
- I went to bed early, but I wasn't tired. I read a book **until 3:00 a.m.**
- Wait here **until I come back**.



You can also say **till** (= **until**):
- Wait here **till** I come back.

Compare:
- "**How long** will you be away?" "**Until** Monday."
- "**When** are you coming back?" "**On** Monday."

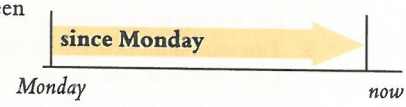
C

Since + a time in the past (to now)

We use **since** after the *present perfect* (**have been** / **have done**, etc.):

since	Monday 2002 2:30 I arrived

- Joe is in the hospital. He has been in the hospital **since Monday**. (= from Monday to now)
- Sue and Dave have been married **since 2002**. (= from 2002 to now)
- It has been raining **since I arrived**.



Compare:
- We lived in Japan **from** 1996 **to** 2005.
  We lived in Japan **until** 2005.
- Now we live in Denver. We came to Denver **in** 2005.
  We have lived in Denver **since** 2005. (= from 2005 until now)

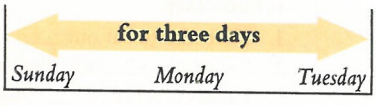
We use **for** (*not* **since**) + a period of time (**three days** / **10 years**, etc.):
- Joe has been in the hospital **for three days**. (*not* since three days)

D

For + a period of time

for	three days 10 years five minutes a long time

- Gary stayed with us **for three days**.
- I'm going away **for a few weeks**.
- I'm going away **for the weekend**.
- They've been married **for 10 years**.

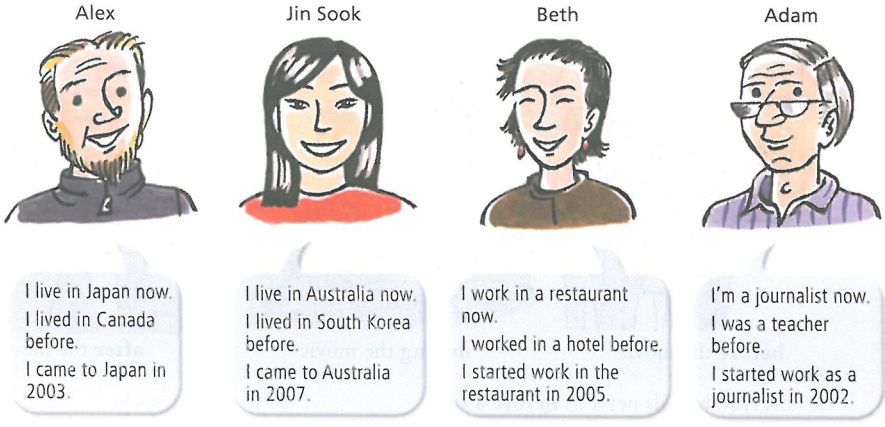


www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین آرشیو دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

105.1 Read the information and complete the sentences. Use ***from . . . to / until / since.***



1. (Alex / Canada / 1995 → 2003) Alex lived *in Canada from 1995 to 2003*.
2. (Alex / Canada / → 2003) Alex lived in Canada _____ 2003.
3. (Alex / Japan / 2003 →) Alex has lived in Japan _____.
4. (Jin Sook / South Korea → 2007) Jin Sook lived in _____.
5. (Jin Sook / Australia / 2007 →) Jin Sook has lived in _____.
6. (Beth / a hotel / 2002–2005) Beth worked _____ 2002 _____.
7. (Beth / a restaurant / 2005 →) Beth has worked _____.
8. (Adam / a teacher / 1996–2002) Adam was a _____.
9. (Adam / a journalist / 2002 →) Adam has been _____.

Now write sentences with ***for.***

10. (Alex / Canada) *Alex lived in Canada for eight years*.
11. (Alex / Japan) Alex has lived in Japan _____.
12. (Jin Sook / Australia) Jin Sook has _____.
13. (Beth / a hotel) Beth worked _____.
14. (Beth / restaurant) Beth _____.
15. (Adam / a teacher) Adam _____.
16. (Adam / a journalist) Adam _____.

105.2 Write ***until/since/for.***

1. Sue and Dave have been married *since* 2002.
2. I was tired this morning. I stayed in bed _____ 10:00.
3. We waited for Sue _____ half an hour, but she didn't come.
4. "Did you just get here?" "No, I've been here _____ 7:30."
5. "How long did you stay at the party last night?" "_____ midnight."
6. Dan and I are good friends. We have known each other _____ 10 years.
7. I'm tired. I'm going to lie down _____ a few minutes.
8. *(in an airplane that's landing)* Please stay in your seats _____ the airplane reaches the gate.
9. This is my house. I've lived here _____ I was seven years old.
10. Jack is out of town. He'll be away _____ Wednesday.
11. Next week I'm going to Chicago _____ three days.
12. I usually finish work at 5:30, but sometimes I work _____ 6:00.
13. "How long have you known Anna?" "_____ we were in high school."
14. Where have you been? I've been waiting for you _____ 20 minutes.

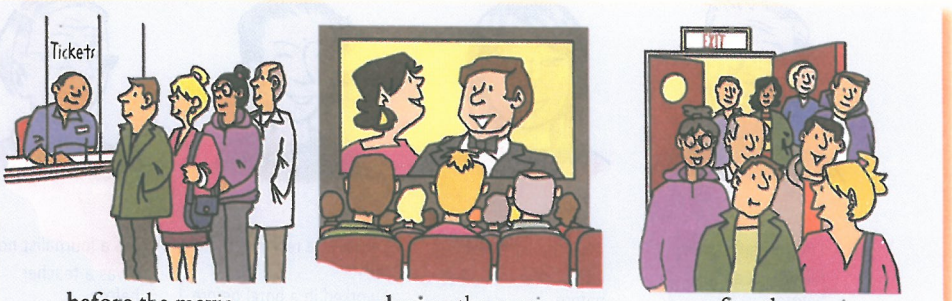
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 106

before after during while

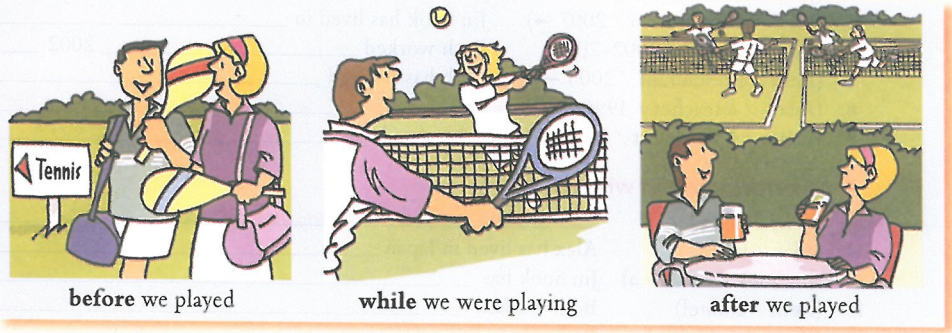
A Before, during, and after



before the movie **during** the movie **after** the movie

- Everybody feels nervous **before a test**.
- I fell asleep **during the movie**.
- We were tired **after our visit** to the museum.

B Before, while, and after



before we played **while** we were playing **after** we played

- Don't forget to close the window **before you go out**.
- I often fall asleep **while I'm reading**.
- They watched TV **after they did the dishes**.

C During, while, and for

We use **during** + *noun* (during **the movie**). We use **while** + *verb* (while **I'm reading**):

- We didn't speak **during the meal**.

but We didn't speak **while we were eating**. (*not* during we were eating)

Use **for** (*not* during) + *a period of time* (**three days** / **two hours** / **a year**, etc.):

- We played basketball **for two hours**. (*not* during two hours)
- I lived in Florida **for a year**. (*not* during a year)

D

You can use **before/after + -ing** (**before going** / **after eating**, etc.):

- I always have breakfast **before going** to work. (= before I go to work)
- **After doing** the dishes, they watched TV. (= after they did)

Remember: We say **before going** (*not* before to go), **after doing** (*not* after to do), etc.:

- **Before eating** the apple, I washed it carefully. (*not* before to eat)
- I started work **after reading** the newspaper. (*not* after to read)

past continuous (I was -ing) → Units 13–14 before/after/while/when → Unit 99
for → Unit 105 prepositions + -ing → Unit 113

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

106.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

after	during	+	lunch	the end	they went to Mexico
before	while		the concert	~~the test~~	you're waiting
			the course	the night	

1. Everybody was nervous *before the test*.
2. I usually work four hours in the morning and another three hours _____.
3. The movie was really boring. We left _____.
4. Anna went to night school to learn German. She learned a lot _____.
5. My aunt and uncle lived in Chicago _____.
6. *A:* Somebody broke a window _____. Did you hear anything?
   B: No, I was asleep all the time.
7. Would you like to sit down _____?
8. "Are you going home _____?" "Yes, I have to get up early tomorrow."

106.2 Write *during*/*while*/*for*.

1. We didn't speak *while* we were eating.
2. We didn't speak *during* the meal.
3. Gary called _____ you were out.
4. I stayed in Rome _____ five days.
5. Sally didn't read any newspapers _____ she was on vacation.
6. The students looked very bored _____ the class.
7. I fell out of bed _____ I was asleep.
8. Last night I watched TV _____ three hours.
9. I don't usually watch TV _____ the day.
10. Do you ever watch TV _____ you are having dinner?

106.3 Complete the sentences. Use *-ing* (*doing*, *having*, etc.).

1. After *doing* the dishes, they watched TV.
2. I felt sick after _____ too much chocolate.
3. I'm going to ask you a question. Think carefully before _____ it.
4. I felt awful when I got up this morning. I felt better after _____ a shower.
5. After _____ my work, I left the office and went home.
6. Before _____ to a foreign country, you should try and learn a little of the language.

106.4 Write sentences with *before* + *-ing* and *after* + *-ing*.

1. They did the dishes. Then they watched TV.
   After *doing the dishes, they watched TV.*
2. John finished high school. Then he worked in a bookstore for two years.
   John worked _____
3. I read for a few minutes. Then I went to sleep.
   Before _____
4. We walked for three hours. We were very tired.
   After _____
5. Let's have a cup of coffee. Then we'll go out.
   Let's _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 107

in at on (places 1)

A In



in a store
in a room
in a car
in the water



in a garden
in a town
in a park
in Brazil

- "Where's David?" "**In the kitchen.** / **In the garden.** / **In Seoul.**"
- What's **in that box** / **in that bag** / **in that closet**?
- Rachel works **in a store** / **in a bank** / **in a factory**.
- I went for a swim **in the river** / **in the pool** / **in the ocean**.
- Milan is **in the north of Italy**. Naples is **in the south**.
- I live **in a big city**, but I'd like to live **in the country**.

B At



at the bus stop



at the door



at the traffic light



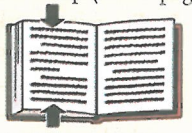
at her desk

- There's somebody **at the bus stop** / **at the door**.
- The car is waiting **at the traffic light**.
- Jane is working **at her desk**.

at the top / **at the bottom** / **at the end** (of . . .):

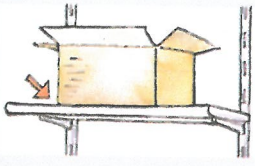
- Write your name **at the top of the page**.
- My house is **at the end of the street**.

at the top (of the page)

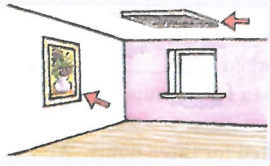


at the bottom (of the page)

C On



on a shelf
on a plate
on a balcony
on the floor,
etc.

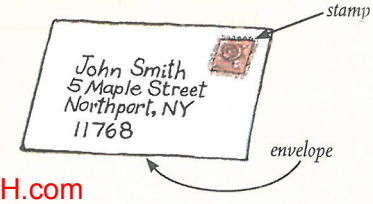


on a wall
on the ceiling
on a door,
etc.

- There are some books **on the shelf** and some pictures **on the wall**.
- There are a lot of apples **on those trees**.
- Don't sit **on the grass**. It's wet.
- There is a stamp **on the envelope**.

On a horse / **on a bicycle** / **on a motorcycle**:

- Who is that man **on the motorcycle**?



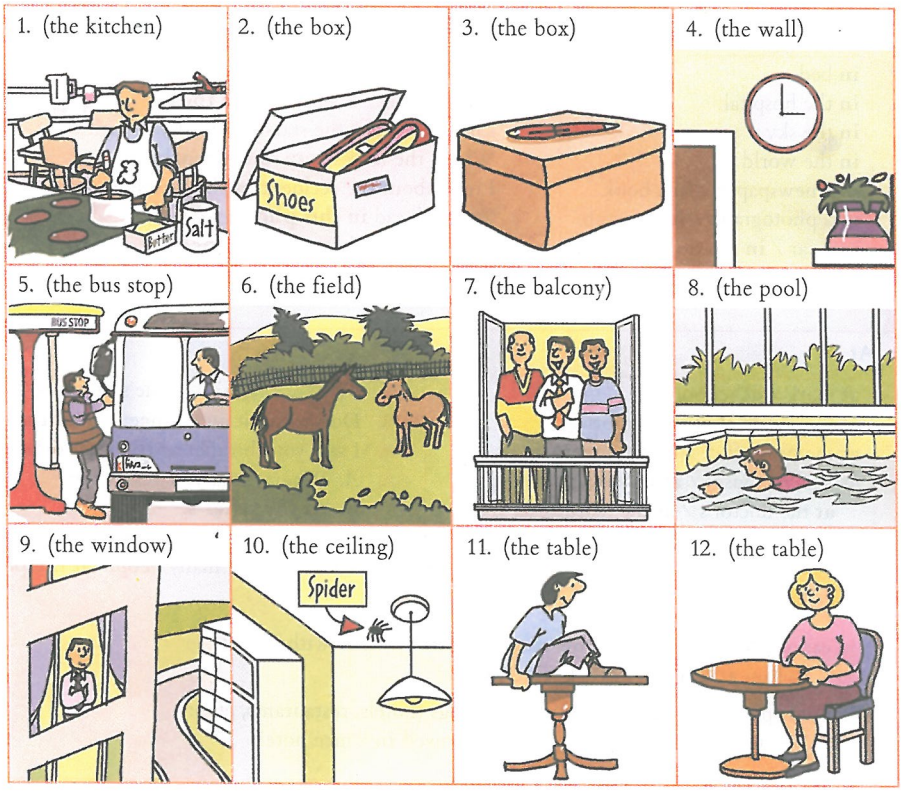
the top / the bottom, etc. → Unit 71 at/on/in (time) → Unit 104 in/at/on (places 2) → Unit 108

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

107.1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use ***in/at/on***.



1. Where is he? *In the kitchen*
2. Where are the shoes? _____
3. Where is the pen? _____
4. Where is the clock? _____
5. Where is the bus? _____
6. Where are the horses? _____
7. Where are they standing? _____
8. Where is she swimming? _____
9. Where is he standing? _____
10. Where is the spider? _____
11. Where is he sitting? _____
12. Where is she sitting? _____

107.2 Write ***in/at/on***.

1. Don't sit *on* the grass. It's wet.
2. What do you have _____ your bag?
3. Look! There's a man _____ the roof. What's he doing?
4. There are a lot of fish _____ this river.
5. Our house is number 45 – the number is _____ the door.
6. "Is the post office near here?" "Yes, turn left _____ the traffic light."
7. I have a small vegetable garden _____ the backyard.
8. My sister lives _____ Prague.
9. There's a small park _____ the top of the hill.
10. I think I heard the doorbell. There's somebody _____ the door.
11. Munich is a large city _____ the south of Germany.
12. There's a gas station _____ the end of the block.
13. It's difficult to carry a lot of things _____ a bicycle.
14. I looked at the list of names. My name was _____ the bottom.
15. There is a mirror _____ the wall _____ the living room.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 108

in at on (places 2)

A In

in bed
in the hospital
in the sky
in the world
in a newspaper / **in** a book
in a photograph / **in** a picture
in a car / **in** a taxi
in the middle (of . . .)

- "Where's Kate?" "She's **in bed**."
- David's father is sick. He's **in the hospital**.
- I like to look at the stars **in the sky** at night.
- What's the largest city **in the world**?
- I read about the accident **in the newspaper**.
- You look sad **in this photograph**.
- Did you come here **in your car**?
- There's a big tree **in the middle** of the yard.

B At

at work / **at** school
at the station / **at** the airport
at the post office / **at** the supermarket
at Jane's (house) / **at** my sister's (house) / **at** the doctor's / **at** the hairdresser's, etc.

at a concert / **at** a party / **at** a football game, etc.

- "Where's Kate?" "She's **at work**."
- Do you want me to meet you **at the station**?
- I saw your brother **at the post office** today.
- *A:* Where were you yesterday?
  B: **At my sister's**.
- I saw Tom **at the doctor's**.
- There weren't many people **at the party**.

You can say **be/stay home** or **be/stay at home** (with or without **at**).

- Is Tom **at home**? *or* Is Tom **home**?

Often it is possible to use **at** or **in** for buildings (hotels, restaurants, etc.):

- We stayed **at** a nice hotel. *or* We stayed **in** a nice hotel.

C

You can say **at school** or **in school**, but there is a difference.

She's **at** school = she's there now

- "Where's your sister? Is she home?" "No, she's **at school**."

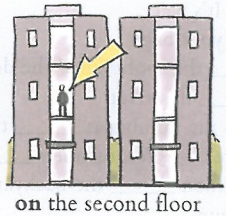
She's **in** school = she's a student (in high school / college / medical school, etc.)

- "Does your sister have a job?" "No, she's still **in school**."

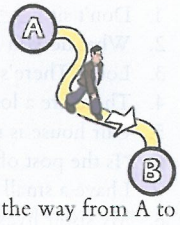
D On



on a bus



on the second floor



on the way from A to B

on a bus / **on** a train / **on** a plane / **on** a ship

on the first floor (*or* ground floor), **on** the second floor, etc.

on the way (to . . .) / **on** the way home

on a street

- Did you come here **on the bus**?
- The office is **on the second floor**. (*not* in the second floor)
- I met Ann **on the way** to work / **on the way** home.
- My brother lives **on** a nice street.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

in/at/on (places 1) → Unit 107 to/in/at → Unit 103 on the left/right → Unit 116

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

108.1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use *in/at/on*.



1. Where is she? *In the hospital*
2. Where are they? _____
3. Where is he? _____
4. Where are they? _____
5. Where are the stars? _____
6. Where are they? _____
7. Where is Steve? _____
8. Where is the restaurant? _____
9. Where is she? _____
10. Where are they? _____
11. Where are they? _____
12. Where are they? _____

108.2 Write *in/at/on*.

1. "Where's your sister? Is she home?" "No, she's *at* school."
2. There was a big table _____ the middle of the room.
3. What is the longest river _____ the world?
4. Were there many people _____ the concert last night?
5. Will you be _____ home tomorrow afternoon?
6. Who is the man _____ this picture? Do you know him?
7. "Is your son going to get married soon?" "No, he's still _____ college."
8. Gary is coming by bus. I'm going to meet him _____ the station.
9. Charlie is _____ the hospital. He had an operation yesterday.
10. How many pages are there _____ this book?
11. "Are you hungry after your trip?" "Yes, there was nothing to eat _____ the plane."
12. I'm sorry I'm late. My car broke down _____ the way here.
13. "Is Tom here?" "No, he's _____ his brother's."
14. Don't believe everything you read _____ the newspaper!
15. I walked to work, but I came home _____ the bus.
16. *A: (on the phone)* Can I speak to Anne, please?
    B: No, sorry. She'll be _____ the university until 5:00 today.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

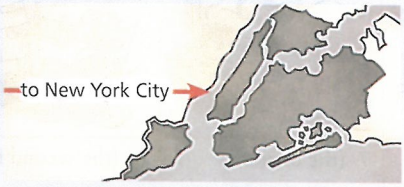
UNIT 109

to in at (places 3)

A

To

go/come/return/walk (etc.) **to . . .**



- We're **going to New York** on Sunday.
- I want to **go to Mexico** next year.
- We **walked** from my house **to the mall**.
- What time do you **go to bed**?



- The bus is **going to the airport**.
- Karen didn't **go to work** yesterday.
- I **went to a party** last night.
- We'd like you to **come to our house**.

In/at (→ Units 106–107)

be / stay / do something (etc.) **in . . .**



- The Statue of Liberty **is in New York**.
- My brother **lives in Mexico**.
- The best stores **are in the mall**.
- I like **to read in bed**.

be / stay / do something (etc.) **at . . .**



- The bus **is at the airport**.
- Sarah **wasn't at work** yesterday.
- I **met a lot of people at the party**.
- Helen **stayed at her brother's house**.

B

Home

go/come/walk (etc.) **home** (*without* **to**)

- I'm tired. I'm **going home**. (*not* to home)
- Did you **walk home**?

be/stay (**at**) **home** (*with or without* **at**)

- I'm **staying home** tonight. (*or* I'm **staying at home**.)

But: do something (**work, watch TV**, etc.) **at home**

- Dan doesn't go to an office. He **works at home**.

C

Arrive and **get**

arrive in a country or town (**arrive in Mexico / arrive in Tokyo**, etc.):

- They **arrived in Brazil** last week. (*not* arrived to Brazil)

arrive at other places (**arrive at the station / arrive at work**, etc.):

- What time did you **arrive at the hotel**? (*not* arrive to the hotel)

get to (**a place**):

- What time did you **get to the hotel**?
- What time did you **get to Tokyo**?

get home / arrive home (no preposition):

- I was tired when **I got home**. *or* I was tired when I **arrived home**.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

109.1 Write *to* or *in*.

1. I like reading *in* bed.
2. We're going _____ Italy next month.
3. Sue is on vacation _____ Mexico right now.
4. I have to go _____ the bank today.
5. I was tired, so I stayed _____ bed.
6. What time do you usually go _____ bed?
7. Does this bus go _____ the airport?
8. Would you like to live _____ another country?

109.2 Write *to* or *at* if necessary. Sometimes no preposition is necessary.

1. Paula didn't go *to* work yesterday.
2. I'm tired. I'm going - home. *(already complete)*
3. Tina is sick. She went _____ the doctor.
4. Would you like to come _____ a party on Saturday?
5. "Is Liz _____ home?" "No, she went _____ work."
6. There were 20,000 people _____ the football game.
7. Why did you go _____ home early last night?
8. A boy jumped into the river and swam _____ the other side.
9. There were a lot of people waiting _____ the bus stop.
10. We had dinner _____ a restaurant, and then we went back _____ the hotel.

109.3 Write *to*, *at*, or *in* if necessary. Sometimes no preposition is necessary.

1. Joe is coming tomorrow. I'm meeting him *at* the airport.
2. We're going _____ a concert tomorrow night.
3. I went _____ Chile last year.
4. How long did you stay _____ Chile?
5. Next year we hope to go _____ Japan to visit some friends.
6. Do you want to go _____ the movies tonight?
7. Did you park your car _____ the station?
8. After the accident, three people were taken _____ the hospital.
9. How often do you go _____ the dentist?
10. "Is Sarah here?" "No, she's _____ Helen's."
11. My house is _____ the end of the block on the left.
12. I went _____ Maria's house, but she wasn't _____ home.
13. There were no taxis, so we had to walk _____ home.
14. "Who did you meet _____ the party?" "I didn't go _____ the party."

109.4 Write *to*, *at*, or *in* if necessary. Sometimes the sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

1. What time do you usually get _____ work?
2. What time do you usually get _____ home?
3. What time did you arrive _____ the party?
4. When did you arrive _____ Dallas?
5. What time does the plane get _____ Paris?
6. We arrived _____ home very late.

109.5 Complete these sentences about yourself. Use *to*/*in*/*at*.

1. At 3:00 this morning I was *in bed*.
2. Yesterday I went _____.
3. At 11:00 yesterday morning I was _____.
4. One day I'd like to go _____.
5. I don't like going _____.
6. At 9:00 last night I was _____.

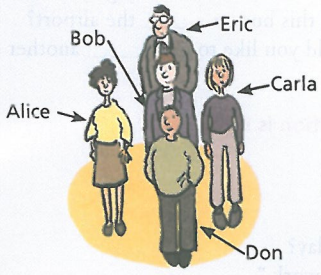
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 110

next to, between, under, etc.

A Next to / between / in front of / in back of



Alice is **next to** Bob. *or* Alice is **beside** Bob.
Bob is **between** Alice and Carla.
Don is **in front of** Bob.
Eric is **in back of** Bob.

also
Alice is **on the left**.
Carla is **on the right**.
Bob is **in the middle** (of the group).

B Across from / in front of



Anne is sitting **in front of** Bruce.
Anne is sitting **across from** Chris.
Chris is sitting **across from** Anne.

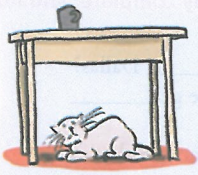
C By (= next to)



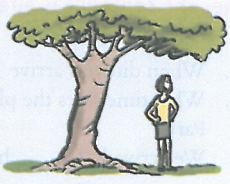
by the window

- Who is that man standing **by the window**?
- Our house is **by the ocean**. (= next to the ocean)
- If you feel cold, why don't you sit **by the fire**?

D Under



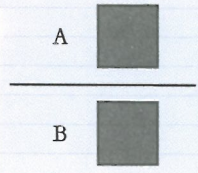
under the table



under a tree

- The cat is **under the table**.
- The girl is standing **under a tree**.
- I'm wearing a jacket **under my coat**.

E Above and below



A is **above the line**.
(= higher than the line)

B is **below the line**.
(= lower than the line)



The pictures are **above the shelves**.

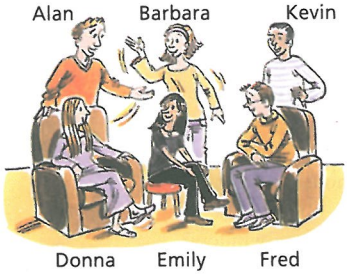
The shelves are **below the pictures**.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

110.1 Where are the people in the picture? Complete the sentences.



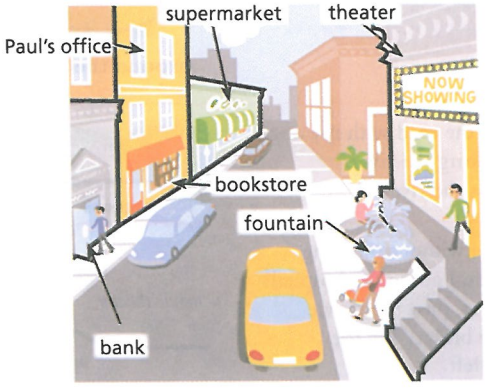
1. Kevin is standing *in back of* Fred.
2. Fred is sitting _____ Emily.
3. Emily is sitting _____ Barbara.
4. Emily is sitting _____ Donna and Fred.
5. Donna is sitting _____ Emily.
6. Fred is sitting _____ Kevin.
7. Alan is standing _____ Donna.
8. Alan is standing _____ left.
9. Barbara is standing _____ middle.

110.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



1. The cat is *under* the table.
2. There is a big tree _____ the house.
3. The plane is flying _____ the clouds.
4. She is standing _____ the piano.
5. The movie theater is _____ the right.
6. She's sitting _____ the phone.
7. The calendar is _____ the clock.
8. The cabinet is _____ the sink.
9. There are some shoes _____ the bed.
10. The plant is _____ the piano.
11. Paul is sitting _____ Anna.
12. In Japan people drive _____ the left.

110.3 Write sentences about the picture.



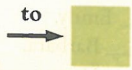
1. (next to) *The bank is next to the bookstore.*
2. (in front of) The _____ in front of _____
3. (across from) _____
4. (next to) _____
5. (above) _____
6. (between) _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

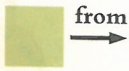
مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

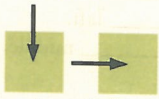
UNIT 111

up, over, through, etc.



- Jane is going **to** France next week.
- We walked **from** the hotel **to** the station.
- A lot of English words come **from** Latin.

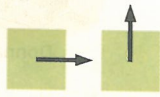


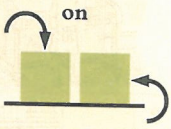


- We jumped **into** the water.
- A man came **out of** the house and got **into** a car.
- Why are you looking **out of** the window?
- I took the old batteries **out of** the radio.

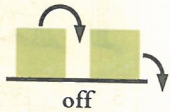
We say **put** something **in** . . . (*not usually* into):

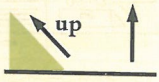
- I **put** new batteries **in** the radio.



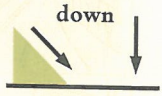


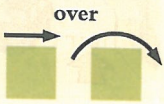
- Don't put your feet **on** the table.
- Please take your feet **off** the table.
- I'm going to hang some pictures **on** the wall.
- Be careful! Don't fall **off** your bicycle.
- We got **on** the bus downtown.



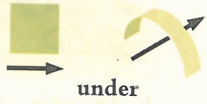


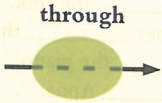
- We walked **up** the hill to the house.
- Be careful! Don't fall **down** the stairs.

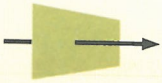




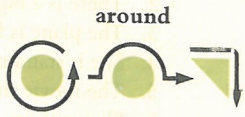
- The plane flew **over** the mountains.
- I jumped **over** the wall into the garden.
- Some people say it is unlucky to walk **under** a ladder.

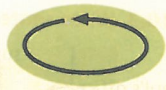


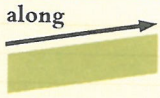




- A bird flew into the room **through** a window.
- The old highway goes **through** the town.
- The new road goes **around** the town.
- The bus stop is just **around** the corner.
- I walked **around** the town and took some pictures.

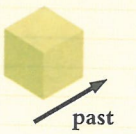




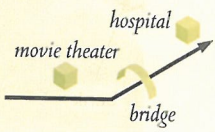


- I was walking **along** the road with my dog.
- Let's go for a walk **along** the river.
- The dog swam **across** the river.





- They walked **past** me without speaking.
- *A:* Excuse me, how do I get to the hospital?
  B: Go along this street, **past** the movie theater, under the bridge, and the hospital is on the left.



www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

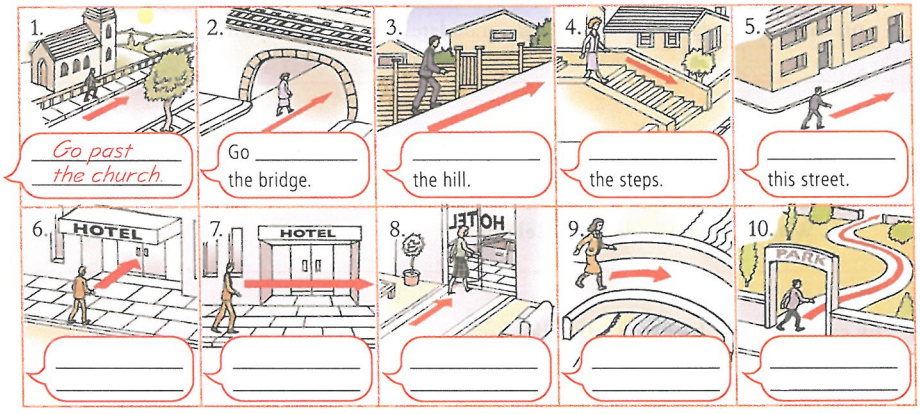
get in/on, etc. → Unit 57 get in/on → Units 107, 108, 109 fall off, run away, etc. → Unit 115

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

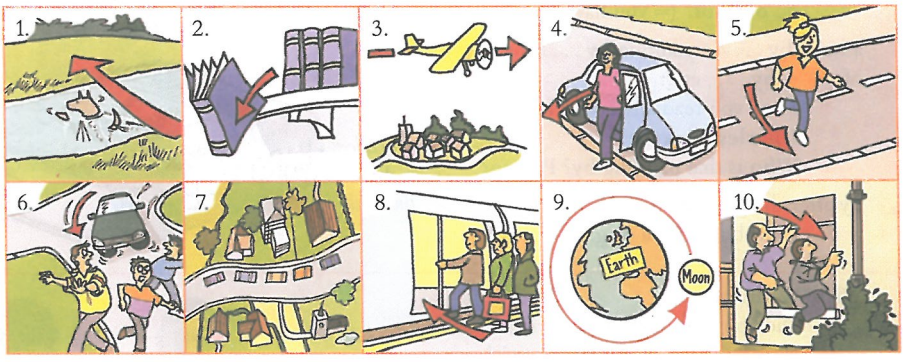
Exercises

111.1 Somebody asks you how to get to a place. You say which way to go. Look at the pictures and write sentences beginning ***Go*** . . . .





111.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



1. The dog swam *across* the river.
2. A book fell _____ the shelf.
3. A plane flew _____ the town.
4. A woman got _____ the car.
5. A girl ran _____ the street.
6. Suddenly a car came _____ the corner.
7. They drove _____ the town.
8. They got _____ the train.
9. The moon travels _____ the earth.
10. They got _____ the house _____ a window

111.3 Complete the sentences. Use ***over/from/into***, etc.

1. I looked _____ the window and watched the people in the street.
2. My house is near here. It's just _____ the corner.
3. "Where's my phone?" "You put it _____ your bag."
4. How far is it _____ here _____ the airport?
5. We walked _____ the museum for an hour and saw a lot of interesting things.
6. You can put your coat _____ the back of the chair.
7. In tennis, you have to hit the ball _____ the net.
8. Silvia took a key _____ her bag and opened the door.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 112

on at by with about

A On

on vacation
on television
on the radio
on the phone
on fire
on time (= not late)

- Jane isn't at work this week. She's **on vacation**.
- We watched the news **on television**.
- We listened to the news **on the radio**.
- I spoke to Rachel **on the phone** last night.
- The house is **on fire**! Call the fire department.
- "Was the train late?" "No, it was **on time**."

B At

at (the age of) 21 / at 50 kilometers an hour / at 100 degrees, etc.:

- Lisa got married **at 21**. (*or* . . . **at the age of 21**.)
- A car uses more gas **at 70 miles an hour** than **at 55**.
- Water boils at **100 degrees Celsius**.

C By

by car / by bus / by plane / by bike, etc.:

- Do you like traveling **by train**?
- Jane usually goes to work **by bike**.

but **on foot**:

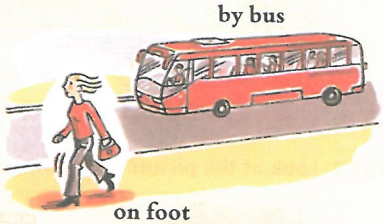
- You can't get there **by car**. You have to go **on foot**. (= you have to walk)

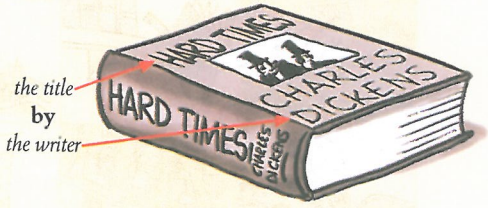
a book **by** . . . / a painting **by** . . . / a piece of music **by** . . . , etc.:

- Have you read any books **by Charles Dickens**?
- **Who** is that painting **by**? Picasso?

by after the passive (→ Unit 22):

- I was bitten **by a dog**.





D With/Without

- Did you stay at a hotel or **with friends**?
- Wait for me. Please don't go **without me**.
- Do you like your coffee **with** or **without milk**?
- I cut the paper **with a pair of scissors**.

a man **with** a beard / a woman **with** glasses, etc.:

- Do you know that man **with the beard**?
- I'd like to have a house **with a big yard**.


a man **with a** beard


a woman **with** glasses

E About

talk/speak/think/hear/know about . . . :

- Some people **talk about their work** all the time.
- I don't **know** much **about cars**.

a book / a question / a program / information (etc.) **about** . . . :

- There was **a program about** volcanoes on TV last night. Did you see it?

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

by → Units 22, 64, 110 at/on → Units 104, 107–108 preposition + -ing → Unit 113

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

112.1 Complete the sentences. Use ***on*** + these words:

the phone ~~the radio~~ television time vacation

1. We heard the news *on the radio* .
2. Please don't be late. Try to get here _____ .
3. I won't be here next week. I'm going _____ .
4. "Did you see Linda?" "No, but I talked to her _____ ."
5. "What's _____ tonight?" "Nothing that I want to watch."

112.2 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with ***at/by/with***, etc.



1. I cut the paper *with* a pair of scissors.
2. Last year they took a trip around the world _____ boat.
3. Who is the woman _____ short hair?
4. They are talking _____ the weather.
5. The car is _____ fire.
6. She's listening to some music _____ Mozart.
7. The plane is flying _____ 600 miles an hour.
8. They're _____ vacation.
9. Do you know the man _____ sunglasses?
10. He's reading a book _____ grammar _____ Vera P. Bull.

112.3 Complete the sentences. Use ***at/by/with***, etc.

1. In tennis, you hit the ball _____ a racket.
2. It's cold today. Don't go out _____ a coat.
3. *Hamlet*, *Othello*, and *Macbeth* are plays _____ William Shakespeare.
4. Do you know anything _____ computers?
5. My grandmother died _____ the age of 98.
6. How long does it take to go from New York to Los Angeles _____ plane?
7. I didn't go to the football game, but I watched it _____ television.
8. My house is the one _____ the red door on the right.
9. These trains are very fast. They can travel _____ very high speeds.
10. You can't get there _____ car. There's no road.
11. Can you give me some information _____ hotels in this town?
12. I was arrested _____ two police officers and taken to the police station.
13. The buses here are very good. They're almost always _____ time.
14. What would you like to drink _____ your meal?
15. We traveled from Los Angeles to Seattle _____ train.
16. The museum has some paintings _____ Frida Kahlo.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

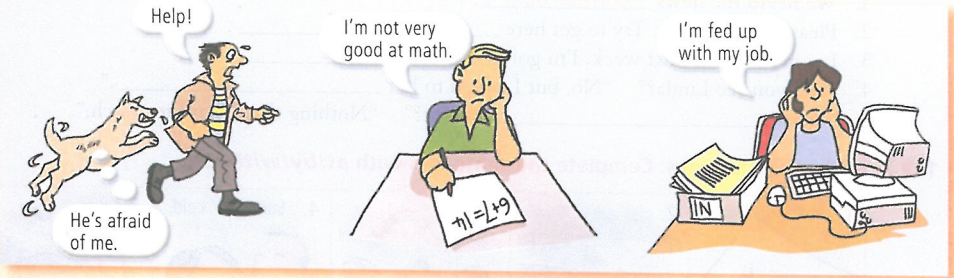
مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 113

afraid of . . . , good at . . . , etc.
of/at/for, etc. (prepositions + -ing)

A

Afraid of . . . / good at . . ., etc. *(adjective + preposition)*



afraid of . . .	Are you **afraid of** dogs?
angry/mad at somebody	Why are you **mad at** me? What did I do?
angry/mad about something	Are you **angry about** last night? (= something that happened last night)
different from . . .	Lisa is very **different from** her sister.
fed up with . . .	I'm **fed up with** my job. I want to do something different. (= I've had enough of my job)
full of . . .	The room was **full of people**.
good at . . .	Are you **good at** math?
bad at . . .	Tina is very **bad at** tennis.
interested in . . .	I'm not **interested in** sports.
married to . . .	Sue is **married to** a dentist. (= her husband is a dentist)
nice/kind of somebody to . . .	It was **kind of** you to help us. Thank you very much.
be **nice/kind to** somebody	David is very friendly. He's always very **nice to** me.
sorry about a situation	I'm afraid I can't help you. I'm **sorry about** that.
sorry for/about doing something	I'm **sorry for/about** not calling you yesterday. (*or* I'm sorry I didn't call you)
be/feel **sorry for** somebody	I feel **sorry for** them. They are in a very difficult situation.

B

Of/at/for (etc.) + **-ing**

After a preposition (**of/at/for**, etc.), a verb ends in **-ing**:

I'm not very good **at**	**telling**	stories.
Are you fed up **with**	**doing**	the same thing every day?
I'm sorry **for**	not **calling**	you yesterday.
Thank you **for**	**helping**	me.
Mark is thinking **of**	**buying**	a new car.
Tom left **without**	**saying**	good-bye. (= he didn't say good-bye)
After	**doing**	the housework, they went shopping.

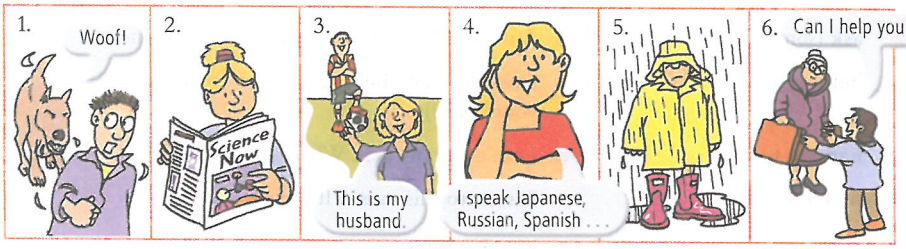
before/after -ing → Unit 106 think about/of → Unit 114

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

113.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with ***of/with/in***, etc.



1. He's afraid *of* dogs.
2. She's interested _____ science.
3. She's married _____ a soccer player.
4. She's very good _____ languages.
5. He's fed up _____ the weather.
6. *A:* Can I help you?
   B: Thanks, that's very kind _____ you.

113.2 Complete the sentences with ***in/of/with***, etc.

1. I'm not interested *in* sports.
2. I'm not very good _____ sports.
3. I like Sarah. She's always very nice _____ me.
4. I'm sorry _____ your broken window. It was an accident.
5. He's very brave. He isn't afraid _____ anything.
6. It was very nice _____ Jane to let us stay in her apartment.
7. Life today is very different _____ life 50 years ago.
8. Are you interested _____ politics?
9. I feel sorry _____ her, but I can't help her.
10. Chris was angry _____ what happened.
11. These boxes are very heavy. They are full _____ books.
12. What's wrong? Are you mad _____ me?

113.3 Complete the sentences.

1. I'm not very *good at telling* stories. (good / tell)
2. I wanted to go to the movies, but Paula wasn't _____. (interested / go)
3. Sue isn't very _____ up in the morning. (good / get)
4. Let's go! I'm _____. (fed up / wait)
5. I'm _____ you up in the middle of the night. (sorry / wake)
6. Sorry I'm late! _____. (thank you / wait)

113.4 Complete the sentences. Use ***without -ing***.

1. (Tom left / he didn't say good-bye) *Tom left without saying good-bye.*
2. (Sue walked past me / she didn't speak)
   Sue walked _____
3. (don't do anything / ask me first)
   Don't _____
4. (I went out / I didn't lock the door)
   I _____

113.5 Write sentences about yourself.

1. (interested) *I'm interested in sports.*
2. (afraid) I'm _____
3. (not very good) I'm not _____
4. (not interested) _____
5. (fed up) _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 114

listen to . . . , look at . . . , etc. (verb + preposition)

A

ask (somebody) **for** . . .
- A man stopped me and **asked** me **for** money.

belong to . . .
- Does this book **belong to** you? (= Is this your book?)

happen to . . .
- I can't find my pen. What's **happened to** it?

listen to . . .
- **Listen to** this music. It's great.

look at . . .
- He's **looking at** his watch.
- **Look at** these flowers! They're beautiful.
- Why are you **looking at** me like that?



look for . . .
- She's lost her key. She's **looking for** it.
- I'm **looking for** Sarah. Have you seen her?



speak/talk to somebody **about** something
- Did you **talk to** Paul **about** the problem?
- *(on the phone)* Can I **speak to** Chris, please?

take care of . . .
- When Pat is at work, a friend of hers **takes care** of her children.
- Don't lose this book. **Take care of** it.

thank somebody **for** . . .
- **Thank** you very much **for** your help.

think about . . . *or* **think of** . . .
- He never **thinks about** (*or* **of**) other people.
- Mark is **thinking of** (*or* **about**) buying a new computer.

wait for . . .
- **Wait for** me. I'm almost ready.

write (to) . . .
- I tried calling the company, but they didn't answer, so I **wrote to** them. (*or* I **wrote** them)

B

Call, e-mail, and **text**

call somebody, e-mail somebody, text somebody (no preposition)
- I have to **call** my parents tonight. (*not* call to . . .)
- *A:* Could you use your cell phone when you were in Europe?
  B: No. My friends and family **e-mailed** me instead of calling.
- Let Sam know where to meet us. **E-mail** or **text** him before he leaves work.

C

Depend

We say **depend on** . . . :
- *A:* Do you like eating in restaurants?
  B: Sometimes. It **depends on** the restaurant. (*not* it depends of)

You can say **it depends what/where/how** (etc.) with or without **on**:
- *A:* Do you want to come out with us?
  B: It **depends where** you're going. *or* It **depends on where** you're going.

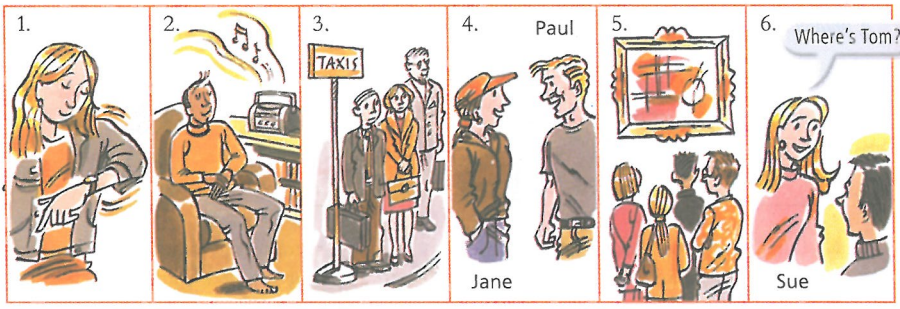
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

wait → Unit 55 preposition + -ing → Unit 113

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

114.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with *to*/*for*/*at*, etc.



1. She's looking *at* her watch.
2. He's listening _____ the radio.
3. They're waiting _____ a taxi.
4. Paul is talking _____ Jane.
5. They're looking _____ a picture.
6. Sue is looking _____ Tom.

114.2 Complete the sentences with a preposition (*to*/*for*/*about*, etc.) if necessary.

1. Thank you very much *for* your help.
2. This isn't my umbrella. It belongs _____ a friend of mine.
3. Who's going to take care _____ your dog while you're out of town?
4. *(on the phone)* Can I speak _____ Steven Davis, please?
5. *(on the phone)* Thank you _____ calling. Good-bye.
6. Excuse me, I'm looking _____ Hill Street. Can you tell me where it is?
7. We're thinking _____ going to Australia next year.
8. We asked the waiter _____ tea, but he brought us coffee.
9. "Do you like to read books?" "It depends _____ the book."
10. John was talking, but nobody was listening _____ what he was saying.
11. I want to take your picture. Please look _____ the camera and smile.
12. We waited _____ Karen until 2:00, but she didn't come.
13. What happened _____ Ella last night? Why didn't she come to the party?
14. Don't forget to call _____ your mother tonight.
15. He's alone all day. He never talks _____ anybody.
16. "How much does it cost to stay at this hotel?" "It depends _____ the room."
17. It will be faster if you e-mail _____ me, but you can also write _____ me at this address.
18. Catherine is thinking _____ changing jobs.
19. I looked _____ the newspaper, but I didn't read it carefully.
20. When you're sick, you need somebody to take care _____ you.
21. Barry is looking _____ a job. He wants to work in a hotel.
22. I don't want everyone to hear my conversation with Jane. I'll text _____ her.

114.3 Answer these questions with *It depends . . .*

1. Do you want to go out with us?
2. Do you like to eat in restaurants?
3. Do you enjoy watching TV?
4. Can you do something for me?
5. Are you leaving town this weekend?
6. Can you lend me some money?

It depends where you're going.
It depends on the restaurant.
It depends _____
It _____
_____
_____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 115

go in, fall off, run away, etc. (phrasal verbs 1)

A *phrasal verb* is a verb (**go/look/be**, etc.) + **in/out/up/down**, etc.

in



get in

- Kate opened the door of the car and **got in**. (= **into** the car)
- I waited outside the store. I didn't **go in**.

out



look out

- I went to the window and **looked out**.
- A car stopped, and a woman **got out**. (= **out of** the car)

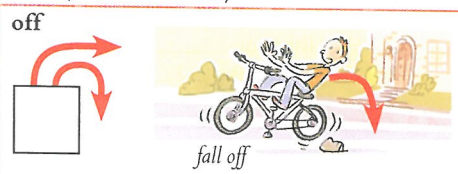
on



get on

- The bus came, and I **got on**.

off



fall off

- Be careful! Don't **fall off**.

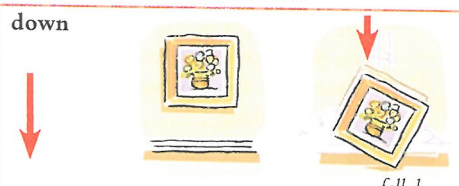
up



stand up

- She **stood up** and left the room.
- I usually **get up** early. (= get out of bed)
- We **looked up** at the stars in the sky.

down



fall down

- The picture **fell down**.
- Would you like to **sit down**?
- **Lie down** on the floor.

away *or* **off**



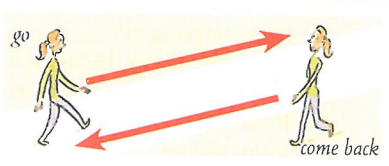
run away

- The thief **ran away**. (*or* . . . **ran off**)
- Emma got into the car and **drove away**. (*or* . . . **drove off**)

be/go away (= in/to another place)

- Tim has **gone away** for a few days.

back



- Go away and don't **come back**!
- We went out for dinner and then **went back** to our hotel.

be back

- Tim is away. He'll **be back** on Monday.

over



move over *pull over*

- There was an empty seat, so he **moved over**.
- I was tired of driving and **pulled over**.

around



turn around

- Somebody shouted my name, so I **turned around**.
- We went for a long walk. After an hour we **turned around** and went back.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

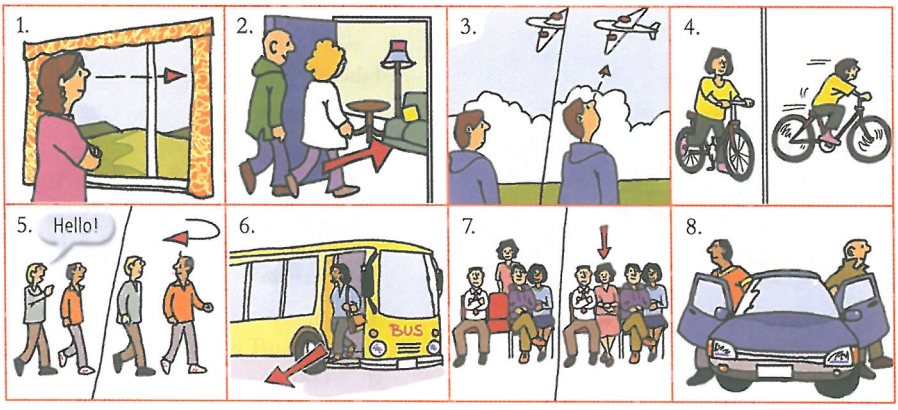
get → Unit 57 put on / take off, etc. (phrasal verbs 2) → Unit 116 more phrasal verbs → Appendix 6

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

115.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use these verbs + ***in/out/up***, etc.

got got ~~looked~~ looked rode sat turned went



1. I went to the window and *looked out* .
2. The door was open, so we _____ .
3. He heard a plane, so he _____ .
4. She got on her bike and _____ .
5. I said hello, and he _____ .
6. The bus stopped, and she _____ .
7. There was a free seat, so she _____ .
8. A car stopped, and two men _____ .

115.2 Complete the sentences. Use ***out/away/back***, etc.

1. "What happened to the picture on the wall?" "It fell *down* ."
2. Please don't walk _____ . I have something to tell you.
3. Lisa heard a noise in back of her, so she turned _____ to see what it was.
4. I'm going _____ now to do some shopping. I'll be _____ at 5:00.
5. I'm really tired. I'm going to lie _____ on the sofa.
6. I can't see the movie screen. Would you please move _____ ?
7. Mark is from Utah. He lives in Boston now, but he wants to go _____ to Utah.
8. We don't have a key to the house, so we can't get _____ .
9. I was very tired this morning. I couldn't get _____ .
10. *A:* "When are you going _____ ?"
    B: "On the fifth. And I'm coming _____ on the twenty-fourth."

115.3 Before you do this exercise, study the verbs in Appendix 6 (page 242). Complete the sentences. Choose a verb from the box + ***on/off/up***, etc. If necessary, put the verb into the correct form.

break	get	go	slow	take	work
fall	give	hold	speak	~~wake~~	

+ along/on/off/up/down/over/out

1. I went to sleep at 10:00 and *woke up* at 8:00 the next morning.
2. "It's time to go." "_____ a minute. I'm not ready yet."
3. The train _____ and finally stopped.
4. I like flying, but I'm always nervous when the plane _____ .
5. Tony doesn't see his sister much. They don't _____ very well.
6. It's difficult to hear you. Can you _____ a little?
7. This car isn't very good. It has _____ many times.
8. When babies try to walk, they sometimes _____ .
9. Ben isn't in good shape because he doesn't _____ at the gym anymore.
10. I tried to find a job, but I _____ . It was impossible.
11. The fire alarm _____ , and everyone had to leave the building.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

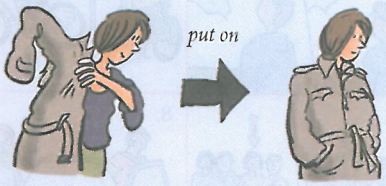
UNIT 116

put on your shoes put your shoes on (phrasal verbs 2)

A

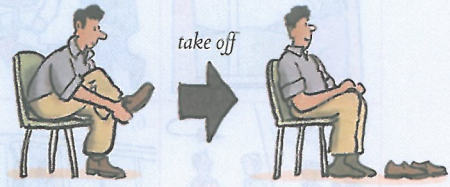
Sometimes a phrasal verb (**put on** / **take off**, etc.) has an *object*. For example:

verb **put on** *object* your coat



You can say:
put on your coat
or **put** your coat **on**

verb **take off** *object* your shoes



You can say:
take off your shoes
or **take** your shoes **off**

But **it**/**them** *(pronouns)* always go before **on**/**off**, etc.:

put **it on** (*not* put on it)

- It was cold, so I **put on** my coat. (*or* I **put** my coat **on**)
- Here's your coat. **Put it on**.

take **them off** (*not* take off them)

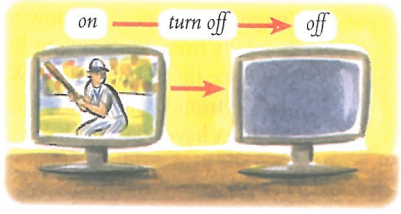
- I'm going to **take off** my shoes. (*or* **take** my shoes **off**)
- Your shoes are dirty. **Take them off**.

B

Some more phrasal verbs + *object*:

turn on / **turn off** (lights, machines, faucets, etc.):

- It was dark, so I **turned on** the light. (*or* I **turned** the light **on**)
- I don't want to watch this program. You can **turn it off**.



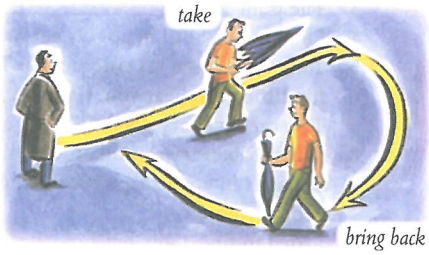
pick up / **put down**:

- Those are my keys on the floor. Can you **pick them up** for me?
- I stopped reading and **put** my book **down**. (*or* **put down** my book)



bring back / **take back** / **give back** / **put back**:

- You can take my umbrella, but please **bring it back**.
- I **took** my new sweater **back** to the store. It was too small for me.
- I have Rachel's keys. I have to **give them back** to her.
- I read the letter and then **put it back** in the envelope.

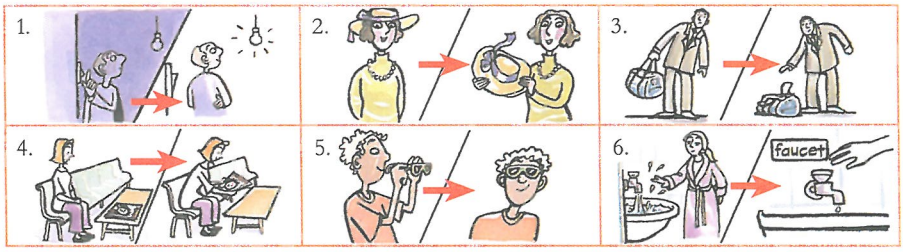


www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Exercises

116.1 Look at the pictures. What did these people do?



1. He *turned on the light* .
2. She _____ .
3. He _____ .
4. She _____ .
5. He _____ .
6. She _____ .

116.2 You can write these sentences in three different ways. Complete the table.

1.	I turned on the radio.	*I turned the radio on.*	*I turned it on.*
2.	He put on his jacket.	He _____	He _____
3.	She _____	She took her glasses off.	_____
4.	I picked up the phone.	_____	_____
5.	They gave back the key.	_____	_____
6.	_____	We turned the lights off.	_____

116.3 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs with ***it*** or ***them***.

bring back **pick up** **take back** **turn off** ~~**turn on**~~

1. I wanted to watch something on television, so I *turned it on* .
2. My new lamp doesn't work. I'm going to _____ to the store.
3. There were some gloves on the floor, so I _____ and put them on the table.
4. When I finished working on the computer, I _____ .
5. Thank you for lending me these books. I won't forget to _____ .

116.4 Before you do this exercise, study the verbs in Appendix 7 (page 243). Complete the sentences using one of the following verbs. Sometimes you will also need to use ***it/them/me***.

fill out **knock over** **put out** ~~**tear down**~~ **try on**
give up **look up** **show around** **throw away** ~~**turn down**~~

1. They *tore* a lot of houses *down* when they built the new road.
2. That music is very loud. Can you *turn it down* ?
3. I _____ a glass and broke it.
4. "What does this word mean?" "Here's a dictionary. You can _____ ."
5. I want to keep these magazines. Please don't _____ .
6. I _____ a pair of shoes at the store, but I didn't buy them.
7. I visited a school last week. One of the teachers _____ .
8. "Do you play the piano?" "No, I started to learn, but I _____ after a month."
9. Somebody gave me a form and told me to _____ .
10. Smoking isn't allowed here. Please _____ your cigarette _____ .

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

APPENDIX 1
Active and passive

1.1 Present and past

	Active	Passive
Simple present	■ We **make** butter from milk. ■ Somebody **cleans** these rooms every day. ■ People never **invite** me to parties. ■ How **do** they **make** butter?	■ Butter **is made** from milk. ■ These rooms **are cleaned** every day. ■ I **am** never **invited** to parties. ■ How **is** butter **made**?
Simple past	■ Somebody **stole** my car last week. ■ Somebody **stole** my keys yesterday. ■ They **didn't invite** me to the party. ■ When **did** they **build** these houses?	■ My car **was stolen** last week. ■ My keys **were stolen** yesterday. ■ I **wasn't invited** to the party. ■ When **were** these houses **built**?
Present continuous	■ They **are building** a new airport at this time. (= it isn't finished) ■ They **are building** some new houses near the river.	■ A new airport is **being built** at this time. ■ Some new houses **are being built** near the river.
Past continuous	■ When I was here a few years ago, they **were building** a new airport. (= it wasn't finished at that time)	■ When I was here a few years ago, a new airport **was being built**.
Present perfect	■ Look! They **have painted** the door. ■ These shirts are clean. Somebody **has washed** them. ■ Somebody **has stolen** my car.	■ Look! The door **has been painted**. ■ These shirts are clean. They **have been washed**. ■ My car **has been stolen**.
Past perfect	■ Tina said that somebody **had stolen** her car.	■ Tina said that her car **had been stolen**.

1.2 *Will / can / must / have to*, etc.

Active	*Passive*
■ Somebody **will clean** the office tomorrow.	■ The office **will be cleaned** tomorrow.
■ Somebody **must clean** the office at night.	■ The office **must be cleaned** at night.
■ I think they'**ll invite** you to the party.	■ I think you'**ll be invited** to the party.
■ They **can't repair** my watch.	■ My watch **can't be repaired**.
■ You **should wash** this sweater by hand.	■ This sweater **should be washed** by hand.
■ They **are going to build** a new airport.	■ A new airport **is going to be built**.
■ Somebody **has to wash** these clothes.	■ These clothes **have to be washed**.
■ They **had to take** the injured man to the hospital.	■ The injured man **had to be taken** to the hospital.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

APPENDIX 2
List of irregular verbs (see Unit 25)

Infinitive	*Simple past*	*Past participle*
be	was/were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bite	bit	bitten
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	gotten
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let

Infinitive	*Simple past*	*Past participle*
lie	lay	lain
light	lit	lit
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant (ment)*	meant (ment)*
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
quit	quit	quit
read (reed)*	read (red)*	read (red)*
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
say	said (sed)*	said (sed)*
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	shown
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

* *pronunciation*

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

APPENDIX 3
Irregular verbs in groups

The simple past and past participle are the same:

1.

cost	→	**cost**
cut	→	**cut**
hit	→	**hit**
hurt	→	**hurt**

let	→	**let**
put	→	**put**
quit	→	**quit**
shut	→	**shut**

2.

lend	→	**lent**
send	→	**sent**
spend	→	**spent**
build	→	**built**

lose	→	**lost**
shoot	→	**shot**
light	→	**lit**
sit	→	**sat**

keep	→	**kept**
sleep	→	**slept**

feel	→	**felt**
leave	→	**left**
meet	→	**met**
mean	→	**meant** (ment)*

3.

bring	→	**brought**
buy	→	**bought**
fight	→	**fought**
think	→	**thought**

catch	→	**caught**
teach	→	**taught**

4.

sell	→	**sold**
tell	→	**told**

find	→	**find**
have	→	**had**
hear	→	**heard** (herd)*
hold	→	**held**
read	→	**read** (red)*
say	→	**said** (sed)*

pay	→	**paid**
make	→	**made**

stand	→	**stood**
understand	→	**understood**

* *pronunciation*

The simple past and past participle are different:

1.

break	→	**broke**	→ **broken**
choose	→	**chose**	→ **chosen**
speak	→	**spoke**	→ **spoken**
steal	→	**stole**	→ **stolen**
wake	→	**woke**	→ **woken**

2.

drive	→	**drove**	→ **driven**
ride	→	**rode**	→ **ridden**
rise	→	**rose**	→ **risen**
write	→	**wrote**	→ **written**

beat	→	**beat**	→ **beaten**
bite	→	**bit**	→ **bitten**
hide	→	**hid**	→ **hidden**

3.

eat	→	**ate**	→ **eaten**
fall	→	**fell**	→ **fallen**
forget	→	**forgot**	→ **forgotten**
get	→	**got**	→ **gotten**
give	→	**gave**	→ **give**
see	→	**saw**	→ **seen**
take	→	**took**	→ **taken**

4.

blow	→	**blew**	→ **blown**
grow	→	**grew**	→ **grown**
know	→	**knew**	→ **known**
throw	→	**threw**	→ **thrown**
fly	→	**flew**	→ **flown**
draw	→	**drew**	→ **drawn**
show	→	**showed**	→ **shown**

5.

begin	→	**began**	→ **begun**
drink	→	**drank**	→ **drunk**
swim	→	**swam**	→ **swum**
ring	→	**rang**	→ **rung**
sing	→	**sang**	→ **sung**
run	→	**ran**	→ **run**

6.

come	→	**came**	→ **come**
become	→	**became**	→ **become**

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

APPENDIX 4
Short forms (he's / I'd / don't, etc.)

4.1 In spoken English we usually pronounce ***I am*** as one word. The short form (***I'm***) is a way of writing this:

I am	→	**I'm**
it is	→	**it's**
they have	→	**they've**, etc.

- **I'm** feeling tired this morning.
- "Do you like this jacket?" "Yes, **it's** nice."
- "Where are your friends?" "**They've** gone home."

When we write short forms, we use ' *(an apostrophe)*:
I~~a~~m→ **I'm** he~~i~~s→ **he's** you~~ha~~ve→ **you've** she~~wi~~ll → **she'll**

4.2 We use these forms with ***I/he/she***, etc.:

am →	**'m**	**I'm**						
is →	**'s**		**he's**	**she's**	**it's**			
are →	**'re**					**we're**	**you're**	**they're**
have →	**'ve**	**I've**				**we've**	**you've**	**they've**
has →	**'s**		**he's**	**she's**	**it's**			
had →	**'d**	**I'd**	**he'd**	**she'd**		**we'd**	**you'd**	**they'd**
will →	**'ll**	**I'll**	**he'll**	**she'll**		**we'll**	**you'll**	**they'll**
would →	**'d**	**I'd**	**he'd**	**she'd**		**we'd**	**you'd**	**they'd**

- **I've** got some new shoes.
- We'**ll** probably go out tonight.
- It'**s** 10:00. You'**re** late again.

's = is *or* **has**:
- She'**s** going out tonight. (she'**s** going = she **is** going)
- She'**s** gone out. (she'**s** gone = she **has** gone)

'd = would *or* **had**:
- *A:* What would you like to eat?
  B: I'**d** like a salad, please. (I'**d** like = I **would** like)
- I told the police that I'**d** lost my passport. (I'**d** lost = I **had** lost

Do not use **'m/'s/'d**, etc. at the end of a sentence (see Unit 41):
- "Are you tired?" "Yes, I **am**." (*not* Yes, I'm.)
- She isn't tired, but he **is**. (*not* he's)

4.3 We use short forms with ***I/you/he/she***, etc., but you can use short forms (especially **'s**) with other words, too:
- **Who's** your favorite singer? (= who **is**)
- **What's** the time? (= what **is**)
- **There's** a big tree in the yard. (= there **is**)
- **My sister's** working in London. (= my sister **is** working)
- **Paul's** gone out. (= Paul **has** gone out)
- **What color's** your car? (= What color **is** your car?)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

APPENDIX 4
Short forms (he's / I'd / don't, etc.)

4.4 Negative short forms (see Unit 44):

isn't	(= is not)	**don't**	(= do not)	**can't**	(= cannot)
aren't	(= are not)	**doesn't**	(= does not)	**couldn't**	(= could not)
wasn't	(= was not)	**didn't**	(= did not)	**won't**	(= will not)
weren't	(= were not)			**wouldn't**	(= would not)
hasn't	(= has not)			**shouldn't**	(= should not)
haven't	(= have not)			**mustn't**	(= must not)
hadn't	(= had not)				

- We went to her house, but she **wasn't** at home.
- "Where's David?" "I **don't** know. I **haven't** seen him."
- You work all the time. You **shouldn't** work so hard.
- I **won't** be here tomorrow. (= I will not)

4.5 *'s (apostrophe + s)*

's can mean different things:

(1) **'s** = **is** *or* **has** (see section 4.2 of this appendix)

(2) **let's** = let **us** (see Unit 37)

- It's a beautiful day. **Let's** go outside. (= **Let us** go outside.)

(3) Kate**'s** camera = her camera
my brother**'s** car = his car
the manager**'s** office = his/her office, etc.
(see Unit 65)

Compare:

- **Kate's** camera was very expensive. (**Kate's** camera = **her** camera)
- **Kate's** a very good photographer. (**Kate's** = Kate **is**)
- **Kate's** got a new camera. (Kate**'s** got = Kate **has** got)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

APPENDIX 5
Spelling

5.1 Words + -s and -es (birds/watches, etc.)

noun + s (plural) (see Unit 67)

bird → birds mistake → mistakes hotel → hotels

verb + s (he/she/it -s) (see Unit 5)

think → thinks live → lives remember → remembers

but

+ es after -s / -sh / -ch / -x

bus → buses pass → passes address → addresses
dish → dishes wash → washes finish → finishes
watch → watches teach → teaches sandwich → sandwiches
box → boxes

also

potato → potatoes tomato → tomatoes
do → does go → goes

-f / -fe → -ves

shelf → shelves knife → knives *but* roof → roofs

5.2 Words ending in -y (baby → babies / study → studied, etc.)

-y → -ies

study → studies (*not* studys) family → families (*not* familys)
story → stories city → cities baby → babies
try → tries marry → marries fly → flies

-y → -ied (see Unit 11)

study → studied (*not* studyed)
try → tried marry → married copy → copied

-y → -ier / -iest (see Units 88, 91)

easy → easier/easiest (*not* easyer/easyest)
happy → happier/happiest lucky → luckier/luckiest
heavy → heavier/heaviest funny → funnier/funniest

-y → -ily (see Unit 87)

easy → easily (*not* easyly)
happy → happily heavy → heavily lucky → luckily

y does not change to i if the ending is -ay/-ey/-oy/-uy:

holiday → holidays (*not* holidaies)
enjoy → enjoys/enjoyed stay → stay/stayed buy → buys key → keys

but

say → said pay → paid *(irregular verbs)*

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

APPENDIX 5
Spelling

5.3 *-ing*

Verbs that end in **-e** (make/write/drive, etc.) → **-ing**

make → making **write → writing** **come → coming** **dance → dancing**

Verbs that end in **-ie → -ying**:

lie → lying **die → dying** **tie → tying**

5.4 stop → stopped, big → bigger, etc.

Vowels and consonants:

Vowel letters: a e i o u

Consonant letters: b c d f g k l m n p r s t w y

Sometimes a word ends in a *vowel* + a *consonant*. For example: **stop**, **big**, **get**.
Before **-ing/-ed/-er/-est**, the consonant (**p/g/t**, etc.) becomes **pp/gg/tt**, etc.
For example:

	V+C					V = *vowel*
stop	ST	O	P	p → **pp**	stopping	stopped	C = *consonant*
run	R	U	N	n → **nn**	running	
get	G	E	T	t → **tt**	getting	
swim	SW	I	M	m → **mm**	swimming	
big	B	I	G	g → **gg**	bigger	biggest
hot	H	O	T	t → **tt**	hotter	hottest
thin	TH	I	N	n → **nn**	thinner	thinnest

This does *not* happen:
(1) if the word ends in *two* consonant letters (C + C):

	C+C				
help	HE	L	P	helping	helped
work	WO	R	K	working	worked
fast	FA	S	T	faster	fastest

(2) if the word ends in two vowel letters + a consonant letter (V + V + C):

	V+V+C					
need	N	E	E	D	needing	needed
wait	W	A	I	T	waiting	waited
cheap	CH	E	A	P	cheaper	cheapest

(3) in longer words (two syllables or more) if the last part of the word is *not* stressed:

	stress		
happen	**HAP**-pen	→	happening/happened (*not* happenned)
visit	**VIS**-it	→	visiting/visited
remember	re-**MEM**-ber	→	remembering/remembered
but			
prefer	pre-**FER**	*(stress at the end)* →	preferring/preferred
begin	be-**GIN**	*(stress at the end)* →	beginning

(4) if the word ends in **-y** or **-w**. (At the end of words, **y** and **w** are not consonants.)
enjoy → enjoying/enjoyed **snow** → snowing/snowed **few** → fewer/fewest

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

APPENDIX 6
Phrasal verbs (take off / give up, etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs (see Unit 115).

out

look out / watch out = *be careful*
- **Look out!** There's a car coming.

work out = *exercise* (to become stronger or more fit)
- Sarah **works out** at the gym two or three times a week.


work out

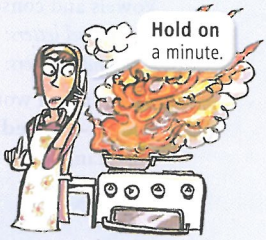
on

come on = *be quick / hurry*
- **Come on!** Everybody is waiting for you.

go on = *continue*
- I'm sorry I interrupted. **Go on.** (= continue what you were saying)
- How long will this hot weather **go on**?

keep on = *continue (talking, etc.)*
- I asked them to be quiet, but they **kept on** talking.

hold on = *wait*
- Can you **hold on** a minute? (= can you wait?)



off

take off = *leave the ground (for planes)*
- The plane **took off** 20 minutes late but arrived on time.


take off

go off = *explode (a bomb, etc.) or ring (an alarm, an alarm clock, etc.)*
- A bomb **went off** and caused a lot of damage.
- A car alarm **goes off** if somebody tries to break into the car.


go off

up

clean up = *make neat or clean*
- After the party, it took two hours to **clean up**.

give up = *stop trying*
- I know it's difficult, but don't **give up**. (= don't stop trying)

grow up = *become an adult*
- What does your son want to do when he **grows up**?

hurry up = *do something more quickly*
- **Hurry up!** We don't have much time.

speak up = *speak more loudly*
- I can't hear you. Can you **speak up**, please?

wake up = *stop sleeping*
- I often **wake up** in the middle of the night.



grow up


wake up

down

slow down = *go more slowly*
- You're driving too fast. **Slow down!**

break down = *stop working (for cars, machines, etc.)*
- Sue was very late because her car **broke down**.

break down



along

get along = *be together without problems*
- Sam doesn't visit his parents often. He doesn't **get along** with his father.

over

fall over = *lose your balance*
- I **fell over** because my shoes were too big for me.


fall over

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

APPENDIX 7 Phrasal verbs + object (put out a fire / try on clothes, etc.)

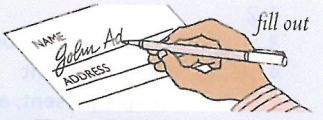
This is a list of some important phrasal verbs + object (see Unit 116).

out

fill out a form = *complete a form*
- Can you **fill out this form**, please?

put out a fire, a cigarette, etc.
- The fire department arrived and **put the fire out**.

cross out a mistake, a word, etc.
- If you make a mistake, **cross it out**.



fill out


put out


cross out

on

try on clothes = *put on clothes to see if they fit you*
- *(in a store)* Where can I **try** these pants **on**?

up

give up something = *stop doing/having something*
- Sue **gave up her job** when her baby was born. (= she stopped working)
- Tom's doctor told him he had to **give up** smoking.

look up a word in a dictionary, etc.
- I didn't know the meaning of the word, so I **looked it up** in a dictionary.

turn up the TV, radio, music, heat, etc. = *make it louder or warmer*
- Can you **turn the radio up**? I can't hear it.

wake up somebody who is sleeping
- I have to get up early tomorrow. Can you **wake me up** at 6:30?

down

tear down a building = *demolish it*
- They are going to **tear down** the school and build a new one.

turn down the TV, radio, music, heat, etc. = *make it quieter or less warm*
- The music is too loud. Can you **turn it down**?

tear down



over

knock over a cup, a glass, a person, etc.
- Be careful. Don't **knock your cup over**.


knock over

away

throw away garbage, things you don't want
- These apples are bad. Should I **throw them away**?
- Don't **throw away that picture**. I want it.

put something **away** = *put it in the place where you usually keep it*
- After they finished playing, the children **put their toys away**.

throw away



back

pay somebody **back** = *give back money that you borrowed*
- Thank you for lending me the money. I'll **pay you back** next week.

around

show somebody **around** = *take somebody on a tour of a place*
- We visited a factory last week. The manager **showed us around**.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

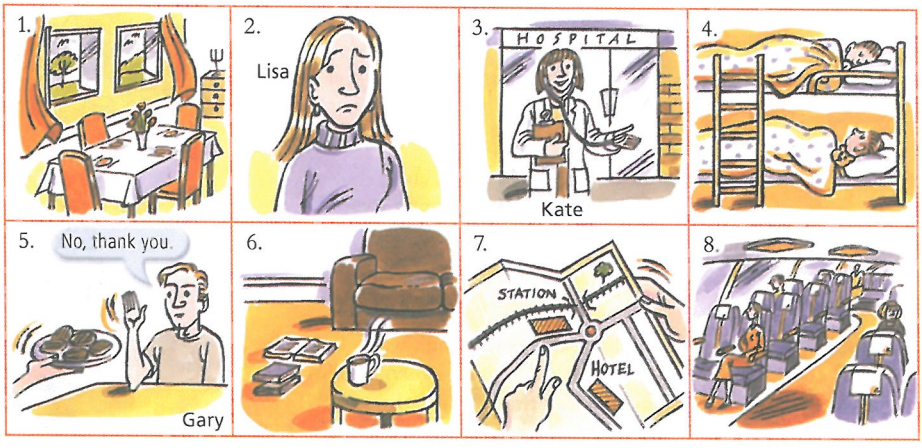
Additional Exercises

List of exercises:

1–2	*am/is/are*	Units 1–2
3	Present continuous	Units 3–4
4	Simple present	Units 5–7
5–7	Simple present, *am/is/are* and *have (got)*	Units 1–2, 5–7, 9
8–9	Present continuous and simple present	Units 3–8
10–13	*was/were* and simple past	Units 10–12
14	Simple past and past continuous	Units 11–14
15	Present and past	Units 3–14
16–18	Present perfect	Units 16–21
19–22	Present perfect and simple past	Units 19–21
23	Present, past, and present perfect	Units 3–21
24–27	Passive	Units 22–23, Appendix 1
28	Future	Units 26–29
29	Past, present, and future	Units 3–21, 26–29
30–31	Past, present, and future	Units 3–23, 26–29, 53, 55, 99, 106
32	*-ing* and *to . . .*	Units 52–56, 106, 113
33–34	*a* and *the*	Units 66, 70–74
35	Prepositions	Units 104–109, 112

am/is/are — Units 1–2

1 Write sentences for the pictures. Use the words in the boxes + ***is/isn't/are/aren't.***



~~The windows~~	on the table	1. The windows are open.
~~Lisa~~	hungry	2. Lisa isn't happy.
Kate	asleep	3. Kate _____
The children	~~open~~	4. _____
Gary	full	5. _____
The books	near the station	6. _____
The hotel	a doctor	7. _____
The bus	~~happy~~	8. _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

2 Complete the sentences.

1. "Are you hungry?" "No, but *I'm* thirsty."
2. "*How are* your parents?" "They're fine."
3. "Is Anna at home?" "No, _____ at work."
4. "_____ my keys?" "On your desk."
5. Where is Paul from? _____ American or Canadian?
6. _____ very hot today. The temperature is 38 degrees Celsius.
7. "Are you a teacher?" "No, _____ a student."
8. "_____ your umbrella?" "Green."
9. Where's your car? _____ in the parking lot?
10. "_____ tired?" "No, I'm fine."
11. "These shoes are nice. How _____ ?" "Seventy-five dollars."

Present continuous (*I'm working / are you working?*, etc.) — Units 3–4

3 Use the words in parentheses to write sentences.

1. *A:* Where are your parents?
   B: *They're watching TV.* (they / watch / TV)
2. *A:* Paula is going out.
   B: *Where's she going?* (where / she / go?)
3. *A:* Where's David?
   B: _____ (he / take / a shower)
4. *A:* _____ (the children / play?)
   B: No, they're asleep.
5. *A:* _____ (it / rain?)
   B: No, not any more.
6. *A:* Where are Sue and Steve?
   B: _____ (they / come / now)
7. *A:* _____ (why / you / stand / here?)
   B: _____ (I / wait / for somebody)

Simple present (*I work / she doesn't work / do you work?*, etc.) — Units 5–7

4 Complete the sentences. Use the simple present.

1. *Sue always gets* to work early. (Sue / always / get)
2. *We don't watch* TV very often. (we / not / watch)
3. How often *do you wash* your hair? (you / wash)
4. I want to go to the movies, but _____ to go. (Sam / not / want)
5. _____ to go out tonight? (you / want)
6. _____ near here? (Helen / live)
7. _____ a lot of people. (Sarah / know)
8. I enjoy traveling, but _____ very much. (I / not / travel)
9. What time _____ in the morning? (you / usually / get up)
10. My parents are usually at home at night.
    _____ very often. (they / not / go out)
11. _____ work at 5:00. (Tom / always / leave)
12. *A:* What _____ ? (Julia / do)
    B: _____ in a hotel. (she / work)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Simple present, *am/is/are* and *have (got)* — Units 1–2, 5–7, 9

5 Read the questions and Claire's answers. Then write sentences about Claire.

1.	Are you married?	No.
2.	Do you live in Houston?	Yes.
3.	Are you a student?	Yes.
4.	Do you have a car?	No.
5.	Do you go out a lot?	Yes.
6.	Do you have a lot of friends?	Yes.
7.	Do you like Houston?	No.
8.	Do you like to dance?	Yes.
9.	Are you interested in sports?	No.

Claire

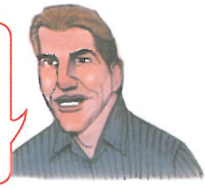


1. She isn't married.
2. She lives in Houston.
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____

6 Complete the questions.

1. _What's your name_____ ?
_____ married?
Where _____ ?
_____ any children?
How _____ ?

Brian.
Yes, I am.
On State Street.
Yes, a daughter.
She's three.



2. _____ ?
_____ ?
_____ your job?
_____ a car?
_____ to work by car?

I'm 29.
I work in a supermarket.
No, I hate it.
Yes, I do.
No, I usually go by bus.



3. _Who is this man_____ ?
_____ ?
_____ ?
_____ in New York?



That's my brother.
Michael.
He's a travel agent.
No, in Los Angeles.

7 Write sentences from these words. All the sentences are present.

1. (Sarah often / tennis) Sarah often plays tennis.
2. (my parents / a new car) My parents have a new car. OR My parents have got a new car.
3. (my shoes / dirty) My shoes are dirty.
4. (Sonia / 32 years old) Sonia _____
5. (I / two sisters) _____
6. (we often / TV at night) _____
7. (Jane never / a hat) _____
8. (my car / a flat tire) _____
9. (these flowers / beautiful) _____
10. (Mary / German very well) _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Present continuous (*I'm working*) and simple present (*I work*)

Units 3–8

8 Complete the sentences.



9 Which is right?

1. "~~Are you speaking~~ / Do you speak English?" "Yes, a little." (*Do you speak* is right)
2. Sometimes we're going / we go away on weekends.
3. It's a nice day today. The sun is shining / shines.
4. *(You meet Kate in the street.)* Hello, Kate. Where are you going / do you go?
5. How often are you taking / do you take a vacation?
6. Emily is a writer. She's writing / She writes children's books.
7. I'm never reading / I never read newspapers.
8. "Where are Michael and Jane?" "They're watching / They watch TV in the living room."
9. Helen is in her office. She's talking / She talks to somebody.
10. What time are you usually having / do you usually have dinner?
11. John isn't at home right now. He's visiting / He visits some friends.
12. "Would you like some coffee?" "No, thanks. I'm not drinking / I don't drink coffee."

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

was/were and simple past (*I worked / did you work?*, etc.) — Units 10–12

10 **Complete the sentences. Use one word only.**

1. I got up early and *took* a shower.
2. Tom was tired last night, so he _____ to bed early.
3. I _____ this pen on the floor. Is it yours?
4. Kate got married when she _____ 23.
5. Helen is learning to drive. She _____ her first lesson yesterday.
6. "I've got a new job." "Yes, I know. David _____ me."
7. "Where did you buy that book?" "It was a present. Jane _____ it to me."
8. We _____ hungry, so we had something to eat.
9. "Did you enjoy the movie?" "Yes, I _____ it was very good."
10. "Did Andy come to your party?" "No, we _____ him, but he didn't come."

11 **Look at the questions and Kevin's answers. Write sentences about Kevin when he was a child.**



When you were a child . . .		
Were you tall?	No.	1. *He wasn't tall.*
Did you like school?	Yes.	2. *He liked school.*
Were you good at sports?	Yes.	3. He _____
Did you play basketball?	Yes.	4. _____
Did you work hard at school?	No.	5. _____
Did you have a lot of friends?	Yes.	6. _____
Did you have a bicycle?	No.	7. _____
Were you a quiet child?	No.	8. _____

12 **Complete the questions.**





1. *Did you have* a nice vacation?	Yes, it was great, thanks.
2. *Where did you go* ?	To the Bahamas.
3. _____ there?	Five days.
4. _____ the Bahamas?	Yes, very much.
5. _____ ?	I have friends there, so I stayed with them.
6. _____ good?	Yes, it was warm and sunny.
7. _____ back?	Yesterday.

13 **Put the verb in the right form (positive, negative, or question).**

1. It was a good party. *I enjoyed* it. (I / enjoy)
2. "*Did you do* the dishes?" (you / do) "No, *I didn't have* time." (I / have)
3. "Did you call Adam?" "No, I'm sorry, _____." (I / forget)
4. I like your new watch. Where _____ it? (you / get)
5. I saw Lucy at the party, but _____ to her. (I / speak)
6. *A:* _____ a nice weekend? (you / have)
   B: Yes, I visited some friends of mine.
7. Paul wasn't well yesterday, so _____ to work. (he / go)
8. "Is Mary here?" "Yes, _____ five minutes ago." (she / arrive)
9. Where _____ before he moved here? (Robert / live)
10. The restaurant wasn't expensive. _____ very much. (the meal / cost)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Simple past (*I worked*) and past continuous (*I was working*) — Units 11–14

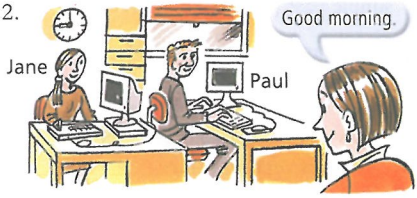
14 Complete the sentences. Use the simple past or past continuous.

1.



It *was raining* (rain) when we *went* (go) out.

2.



When I arrived at the office, Jane and Paul _____ (work) at their desks.

3.



I _____ (open) the window because it was hot.

4.



The phone _____ (ring) when Sue _____ (cook) dinner.

5.



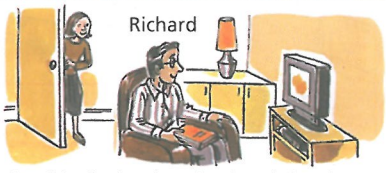
I _____ (hear) a noise outside, so I _____ (look) out of the window.

6.



Tom _____ (look) out of the window when the accident _____ (happen).

7.



Richard had a book in his hand, but he _____ (not/read) it. He _____ (watch) TV.

8.



Erin bought a magazine, but she _____ (not/read) it. She didn't have time.

9.



I _____ (finish) lunch, _____ (pay) the bill, and _____ (leave) the restaurant.

10.



I _____ (see) Kate this morning. I _____ (walk) along the street and she _____ (wait) for the bus.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Present and past — Units 3–14

15 Complete the sentences. Use one of these forms:

simple present (**I work/drive**, etc.)	present continuous (**I am working/driving**, etc.)
simple past (**I worked/drove**, etc.)	past continuous (**I was working/driving**, etc.)

1. You can turn off the TV. I *'m not watching* (not / watch) it.
2. Last night Jenny *fell* (fall) asleep while she *was reading* (read).
3. Listen! Somebody _____ (play) the piano.
4. "Do you have my key?" "No, I _____ (give) it back to you."
5. David is very lazy. He _____ (not / like) to work hard.
6. Where _____ (your parents / go) on vacation last year?
7. I _____ (see) Diane yesterday. She _____ (drive) her new car.
8. *A:* _____ (you / watch) TV very much?
   B: No, I don't have a TV.
9. *A:* What _____ (you / do) at 6:00 last Sunday morning?
   B: I was in bed asleep.
10. Andy isn't at home very much. He _____ (go) out a lot.
11. I _____ (try) to find a job right now. It's very hard.
12. I'm tired this morning. I _____ (not / sleep) very well last night.

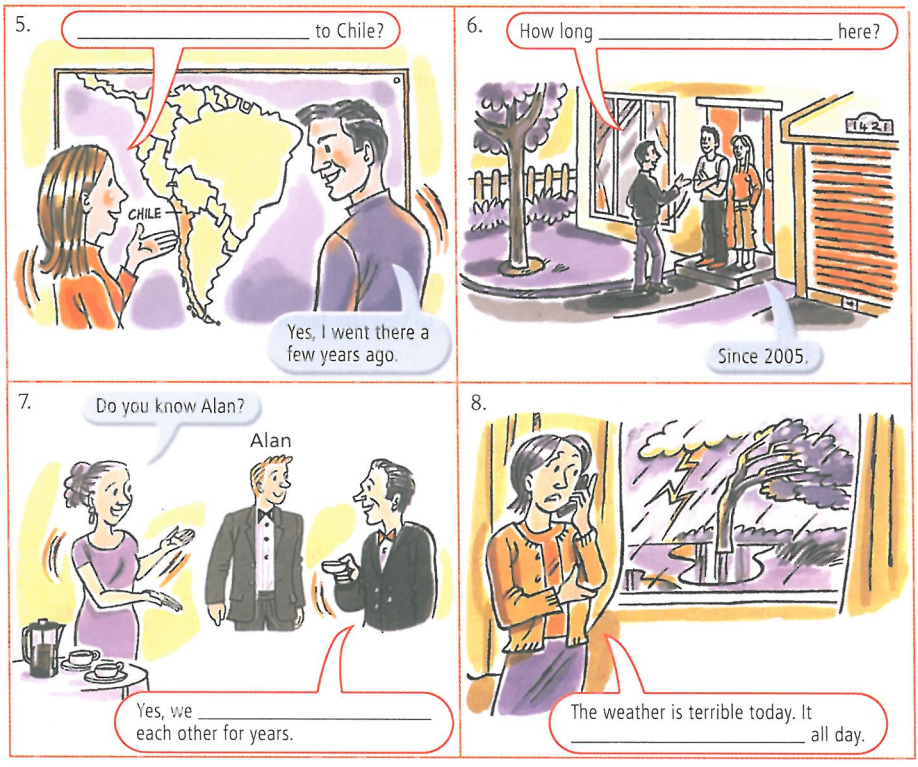
Present perfect (*I have done / she has been*, etc.) — Units 16–21

16 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the present perfect.



www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com



17 Complete the sentences (1, 2, or 3 words).

1. Mark and Liz are married. They *have been* married for five years.
2. David has been watching TV *since* 5:00.
3. Martin is at work. He _____ at work since 8:30.
4. "Did you just arrive in Miami?" "No, I've been here _____ five days."
5. I've known Helen _____ we were in high school.
6. "My brother lives in Los Angeles." "Really? How long _____ there?"
7. George has had the same job _____ 20 years.
8. Some friends of ours are staying with us. They _____ here since Monday.

18 Complete the sentences. Write about yourself.

1. I've never *ridden a horse.*
2. I've *been to Montreal* many times.
3. I've just _____
4. I've _____
   (once / twice / a few times / many times)
5. I haven't _____ yet.
6. I've never _____
7. I've _____ since _____
8. I've _____ for _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Present perfect (*I have done*, etc.) and simple past (*I did*, etc.) — Units 19–21

19 Present perfect or simple past? Complete the sentences (positive or negative).

1. *A:* Do you like London?
   B: I don't know. I *haven't been* there.
2. *A:* Have you seen Kate?
   B: Yes, I *saw* her five minutes ago.
3. *A:* That's a nice sweater. Is it new?
   B: Yes, I _____ it last week.
4. *A:* Are you tired this morning?
   B: Yes, I _____ to bed late last night.
5. *A:* Is the new French movie good?
   B: Yes, really good. I _____ it three times.
6. *A:* Do you like your new job?
   B: I _____. My first day is next Monday.
7. *A:* The weather isn't very nice today, is it?
   B: No, but it _____ nice yesterday.
8. *A:* Was Helen at the party on Saturday?
   B: I don't think so. I _____ her there.
9. *A:* Is your son still in school?
   B: No, he _____ college two years ago.
10. *A:* Is Silvia married?
    B: Yes, she _____ married for five years.
11. *A:* Have you heard of George Washington?
    B: Of course. He _____ the first president of the United States.
12. *A:* How long does it take to make a pizza?
    B: I don't know. I _____ a pizza.

20 Write sentences with the present perfect or simple past.

1. *A:* Have you been to Thailand?
   B: Yes, *I went there last year.* (I / go / there / last year)
2. *A:* Do you like London?
   B: I don't know. *I've never been there.* (I / never / there)
3. *A:* Where is Paul these days?
   B: He's living in Chicago. He _____ (live / there / since last May)
4. *A:* Has Catherine gone home?
   B: Yes, _____ (she / leave / at 4:00)
5. *A:* New York is my favorite city.
   B: It is? _____ ? (how many times / you / there?)
6. *A:* You look tired.
   B: Yes, _____ (I / tired / all day)
7. *A:* I can't find my address book. Have you seen it?
   B: _____ (it / on the table / last night)
8. *A:* Do you know the Japanese restaurant on First Street?
   B: Yes, _____ (I / eat / there a few times)
9. *A:* Paula and Sue are here.
   B: Are they? _____ ? (what time / they / get / here?)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

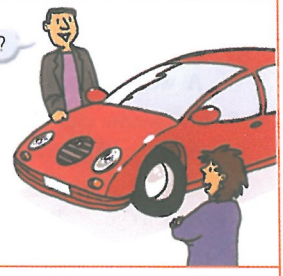
مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

21 Present perfect or simple past? Complete the sentences.

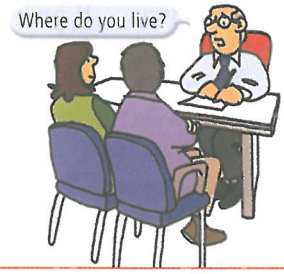
1. *A:* *Have you been* to France?
   B: Yes, many times.
   A: When _____ the last time?
   B: Two years ago.



2. *A:* Is this your car?
   B: Yes, it is.
   A: How long _____ it?
   B: It's new. I _____ it yesterday.



3. *A:* Where do you live?
   B: On Maple Street.
   A: How long _____ there?
   B: Five years. Before that _____ on Mill Road.
   A: How long _____ on Mill Road?
   B: About three years.



4. *A:* What do you do?
   B: I work in a store.
   A: How long _____ there?
   B: Nearly two years.
   A: What _____ before that?
   B: I _____ a taxi driver.



22 Write sentences about yourself.

1. (yesterday morning) *I was late for work yesterday morning.*
2. (last night) _____
3. (yesterday afternoon) _____
4. (. . . days ago) _____
5. (last week) _____
6. (last year) _____

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Present, past, and present perfect — Units 3–21

23 Which is right?

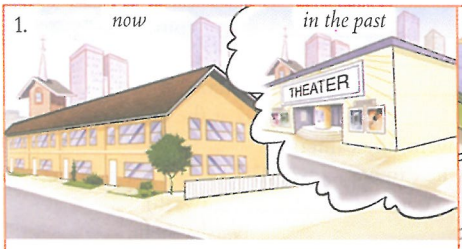
1. "*Is Sue working? (C)*" "No, she's on vacation."
   A Does Sue work? **B** Is working Sue? **C** Is Sue working? **D** Does work Sue?
2. "Where _____?" "In Dallas."
   A lives your uncle **B** does your uncle live **C** your uncle lives **D** does live your uncle
3. I speak Italian, but _____ French.
   A I no speak **B** I'm not speaking **C** I doesn't speak **D** I don't speak
4. "Where's Tom?" "_____ a shower at the moment."
   A He's taking **B** He take **C** He takes **D** He has taken
5. Why _____ angry with me yesterday?
   A were you **B** was you **C** you were **D** have you been
6. My favorite movie is *Cleo's Dream*. _____ it four times.
   A I'm seeing **B** I see **C** I was seeing **D** I've seen
7. I _____ out last night. I was too tired.
   A don't go **B** didn't went **C** didn't go **D** haven't gone
8. Liz is from Chicago. She _____ there all her life.
   A is living **B** has lived **C** lives **D** lived
9. My friend _____ for me when I arrived.
   A waited **B** has waited **C** was waiting **D** has been waiting
10. "How long _____ English?" "Six months."
    A do you learn **B** are you learning **C** you are learning **D** have you been learning
11. Joel is Canadian, but he lives in Peru. He has been there _____.
    A for three years **B** since three years **C** three years ago **D** during three years
12. "What time _____?" "About an hour ago."
    A has Lisa called **B** Lisa has called **C** did Lisa call **D** is Lisa calling
13. What _____ when you saw her?
    A did Sue wear **B** was Sue wearing **C** has Sue worn **D** was wearing Sue
14. "Can you drive?" "No, _____ a car, but I want to learn."
    A I never drive **B** I'm never driving **C** I've never driven **D** I was never driving
15. I saw Helen at the station when I was going to work this morning, but she _____ me.
    A didn't see **B** don't see **C** hasn't seen **D** didn't saw

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

24 Complete the sentences.

1.



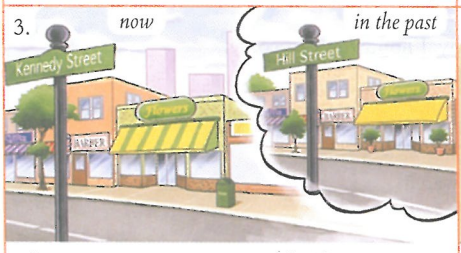
These houses *were built* (build) 20 years ago. Before that there was a movie theater here, but the building _____ (damage) in a fire and had to _____ (tear down).

2.



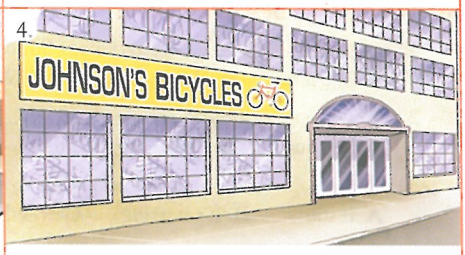
This bridge _____ (build) in 1955. Now it _____ (use) by hundreds of people every day. The bridge _____ (paint) now.

3.



This street _____ (call) Kennedy Street. It used to _____ (call) Hill Street, but the name _____ (change) a few years ago.

4.



This is a bicycle factory. Bicycles _____ _____ (make) here since 1961. It's the largest bicycle factory in the country. Thousands of bicycles _____ _____ (produce) here every year.

25 Complete the sentences.

1. We *were invited* (invite) to the party, but we didn't go.
2. The museum is very popular. Every year it _____ (visit) by thousands of people.
3. Many buildings _____ (damage) in the storm last week.
4. A new road is going to _____ (build) next year.
5. "Where's your jacket?" "It _____ (clean). It will be ready tomorrow."
6. She's famous now, but in a few years her name will _____ (forget).
7. "Are you happy with your washing machine?" "Not really. It _____ _____ (repair) three times since we bought it."
8. Milk should _____ (keep) in a fridge.
9. _____ (you / ever / bite) by a snake?
10. My bag _____ (steal) from my car yesterday afternoon.

26 Write a new sentence with the same meaning.

1. Somebody has stolen my keys. *My keys have been stolen.*
2. Somebody stole my car last week. My car _____.
3. Somebody wants you on the phone. You _____.
4. Somebody has eaten all the bananas. All the _____.
5. Somebody will repair the machine. The _____.
6. Somebody is watching us. We _____.
7. Somebody has to do the housework. The _____.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

27 Active or passive? Complete the sentences.

1. They *are building* (build) a new airport now.
2. These shirts are clean now. They *have been washed* OR *were washed* (wash).
3. "How did you fall?" "Somebody _____ (push) me."
4. "How did you fall?" "I _____ (push)."
5. I can't find my bag. Somebody _____ (take) it!
6. My watch is broken. It _____ (repair) at the moment.
7. Who _____ (invent) the camera?
8. When _____ (the camera / invent)?
9. These shirts are clean now. They _____ (wash).
10. These shirts are clean now. I _____ (wash) them.
11. The letter was for me, so why _____ (they / send) it to you?
12. The information will _____ (send) to you as soon as possible.

Future

Units 26–29

28 Which is the best alternative?

1. *We're having (B)* a party next Sunday. I hope you can come.
   A We have **B** We're having **C** We'll have
2. Do you know about Karen? _____ her job. She told me last week.
   A She quits **B** She's going to quit **C** She'll quit
3. There's a program on TV that I want to watch. _____ in five minutes.
   A It starts **B** It's starting **C** It will start
4. The weather is nice now, but I think _____ later.
   A it rains **B** it's raining **C** it will rain
5. "What _____ next weekend?" "Nothing. I have no plans."
   A do you do **B** are you doing **C** will you do
6. "When you see Tina, can you ask her to call me?" "OK, _____ her."
   A I ask **B** I'm going to ask **C** I'll ask
7. "What would you like to drink, tea or coffee?" "_____ tea, please."
   A I have **B** I'm going to have **C** I'll have
8. Don't take that newspaper away. _____ it.
   A I read **B** I'm going to read **C** I'll read
9. Rachel is sick, so _____ to the party tomorrow night.
   A she doesn't come **B** she isn't coming **C** she won't come
10. I want to meet Sarah at the station. What time _____ ?
    A does her train arrive **B** is her train going to arrive **C** is her train arriving
11. "Will you be at home tomorrow night?" "No _____ ."
    A I go out **B** I'm going out **C** I'll go out
12. "_____ you tomorrow?" "Yes, fine."
    A Do I call **B** Am I going to call **C** Shall I call

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

29 Complete the sentences.

1. *A:* *Did you go* (you / go) out last night?
   B: No, _____ (I / stay) home.
   A: What _____ (you / do)?
   B: _____ (I / watch) TV.
   A: _____ (you / go) out tomorrow night?
   B: Yes, _____ (I / go) to the movies.
   A: What movie _____ (you / see)?
   B: _____ (I / not / know). _____ (I / not / decide) yet.

2. *A:* Are you visiting here?
   B: Yes, we are.
   A: How long _____ (you / be) here?
   B: _____ (we / arrive) yesterday.
   A: And how long _____ (you / stay)?
   B: Until the end of next week.
   A: And _____ (you / like) it here?
   B: Yes, _____ (we / have) a wonderful time.



3. *A:* Oh, _____ (I / just / remember) – _____ (Karen / call) while you were out.
   B: _____ (she / always / call) when I'm not here.
   _____ (she / leave) a message?
   A: No, but _____ (she / want) you to call her back as soon as possible.
   B: OK, _____ (I / call) her now.
   _____ (you / know) her number?
   A: It's in my address book. _____ (I / get) it for you.

4. *A:* _____ (I / go) out with Chris and Steve tonight.
   _____ (you / want) to come with us?
   B: Yes, where _____ (you / go)?
   A: To the Italian restaurant on North Avenue. _____ (you / ever / eat) there?
   B: Yes, _____ (I / be) there two or three times. In fact I _____ (go) there last night, but I'd love to go again!

5. *A:* _____ (I / lose) my glasses again.
   _____ (you / see) them?
   B: _____ (you / wear) them when _____ (I / come) in.
   A: Well, _____ (I / not / wear) them now, so where are they?
   B: _____ (you / look) in the kitchen?
   A: No, _____ (I / go) and look now.



www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Past, present, and future — Units 3–23, 26–29, 53, 55, 99, 106

30 Rachel is talking about her best friend, Carolyn. Put the verbs in the correct form.





Rachel

Carolyn is my best friend. I remember very well the first time (1) _____ (we / meet). It was our first day at high school, and (2) _____ (we / sit) next to each other in the first class. (3) _____ (we / not / know) any other students in our class, and so (4) _____ (we / become) friends. We found that (5) _____ (we / like) the same things, especially music and sports, and so (6) _____ (we / spend) a lot of time together. (7) _____ (we / finish) school five years ago, but (8) _____ (we / meet) as often as we can. For the last six months Carolyn (9) _____ (be) in Mexico – right now (10) _____ (she / work) in a school as a teaching assistant. (11) _____ (she / come) back to the States next month, and when (12) _____ (she / come) back, (13) _____ (we / have) lots of things to talk about. (14) _____ (it / be) really nice to see her again.

31 Nick and his friend Jon are from London. They are traveling around the world. Read the e-mails between Nick and his parents, and put the verbs in the correct form.

Dear Mom and Dad,

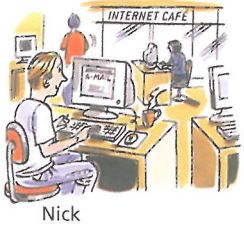
We're in Los Angeles, the first stop on our round-the-world trip! (1) *We arrived* (we / arrive) here yesterday, and now (2) _____ (we / stay) at a hotel near the airport. The flight was twelve hours, but (3) _____ (we / enjoy) it. (4) _____ (we / watch) some movies and (5) _____ (sleep) for a few hours, which is unusual for me – usually (6) _____ (I / not / sleep) well on planes.

Today is a rest day for us and (7) _____ (we / not / do) anything special, but tomorrow (8) _____ (we / go) to Hollywood (9) _____ (see) the movie studios. (10) _____ (we / not / decide) yet what to do after Los Angeles. Jon (11) _____ (want) to drive up the coast to San Francisco, but I'd prefer (12) _____ (go) south to San Diego.

I hope all is well with you – (13) _____ (I / send) you another e-mail next week.

Love,

Nick



Nick



www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Dear Nick,

Thanks for your e-mail. It's good to hear that (14) _____ (you / have) a good time. We're fine – Ellie and Jo (15) _____ (study) hard for their exams next month. Dad has been busy at work, and last week (16) _____ (he / have) a lot of important meetings. He's a little tired – I think (17) _____ (he / need) a good rest.

Keep in touch!
Love,
Mom

A month later . . .

Hi Mom and Dad,

(18) _____ (we / be) in California for a month now.
(19) _____ (we / get) back to Los Angeles yesterday after
(20) _____ (see) many wonderful places. I think the place
(21) _____ (I / like) most was Yosemite National Park – it's beautiful there and (22) _____ (we / go) cycling a lot. The day before (23) _____ (we / leave), Jon
(24) _____ (have) an accident on his bike. Luckily
(25) _____ (he / not / injure), but the bike
(26) _____ (damage).

(27) _____ (we / change) our travel plans since my last message: now (28) _____ (we / leave) for Hawaii on Monday (not Tuesday). (29) _____ (we / stay) there for a week before
(30) _____ (fly) to New Zealand.
(31) _____ (that / be) different, I'm sure!

All the best to Ellie and Jo for their exams.
Love,
Nick



Hi Nick,

Have a good time in Hawaii! Ellie and Jo (32) _____ (finish) their exams yesterday – (33) _____ (I / let) you know when (34) _____ (we / get) the results.

We're all OK. Dad and I (35) _____ (look) forward to our vacation next month. (36) _____ (we / go) to Italy for two weeks – (37) _____ (we / send) you an e-mail from there.

Take care!
Love,
Mom

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

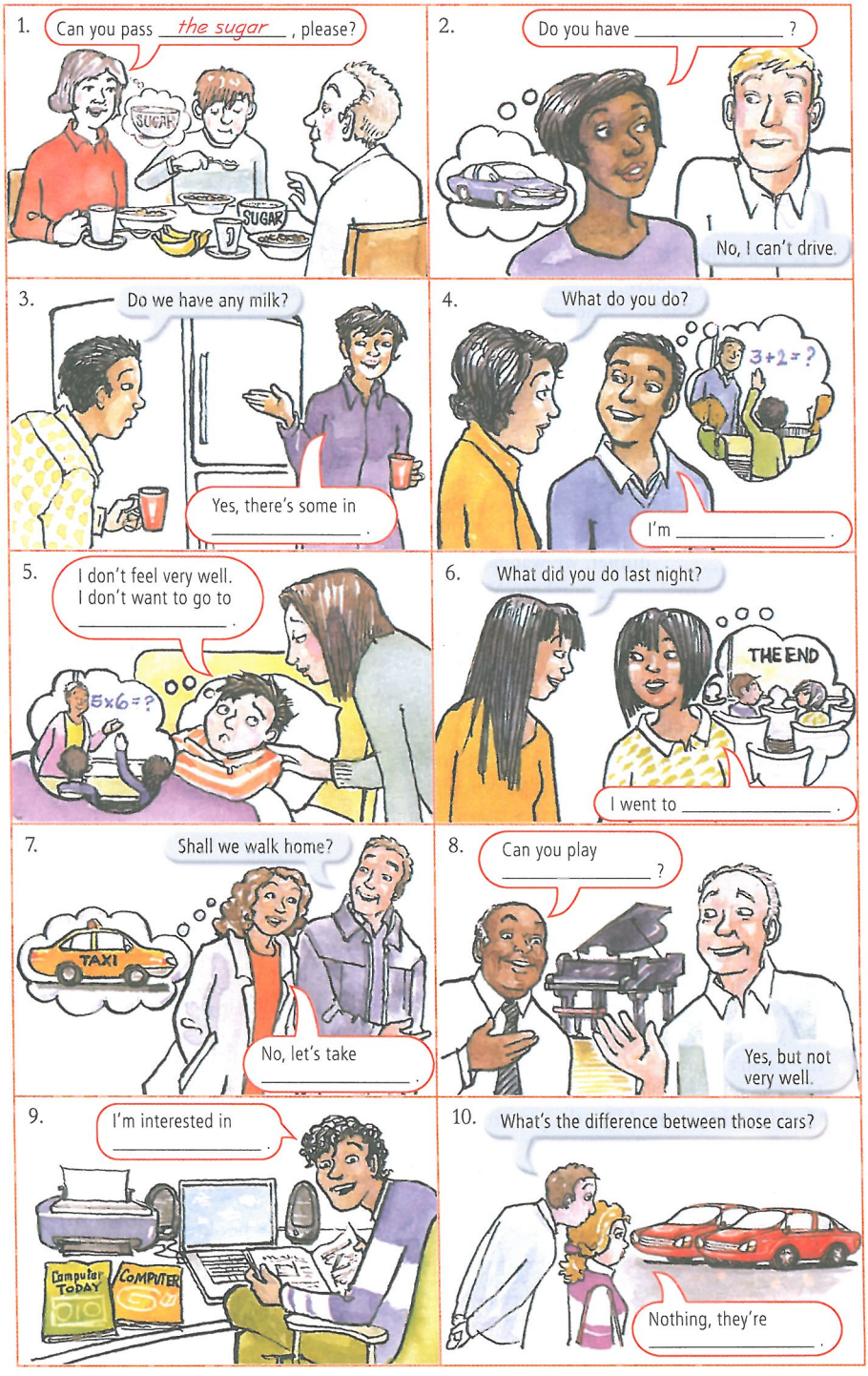
32 Which is correct?

1. Don't forget *to turn (B)* off the light before you go out.
   A turn **B** to turn **C** turning
2. It's late. I should _____ now.
   A go **B** to go **C** going
3. I'm sorry, but I don't have time _____ to you now.
   A for talking **B** to talk **C** talking
4. Gary is always in the kitchen. He enjoys _____ .
   A cook **B** to cook **C** cooking
5. We've decided _____ away for a few days.
   A go **B** to go **C** going
6. You're making too much noise. Can you please stop _____ ?
   A shout **B** to shout **C** shouting
7. Would you like _____ to dinner on Sunday?
   A come **B** to come **C** coming
8. That bag is too heavy for you. Let me _____ you.
   A help **B** to help **C** helping
9. There's a swimming pool near my house. I go _____ every day.
   A to swim **B** to swimming **C** swimming
10. Did you use a dictionary _____ the letter?
    A to translate **B** for translating **C** for translate
11. I'd love _____ a car like yours.
    A have **B** to have **C** having
12. Could you _____ me with this bag, please?
    A help **B** to help **C** helping
13. I don't mind _____ here, but I'd prefer to sit by the window.
    A sit **B** to sit **C** sitting
14. Do you want _____ you?
    A that I help **B** me to help **C** me helping
15. I usually read the newspaper before _____ work.
    A start **B** to start **C** starting
16. I wasn't feeling very well, but the medicine made me _____ better.
    A feel **B** to feel **C** feeling
17. Shall I call the restaurant _____ a table?
    A for reserve **B** for reserving **C** to reserve
18. Tom looked at me without _____ anything.
    A say **B** saying **C** to say

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

33 Complete the sentences.



www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

34 Write *a/an* or *the* if necessary. If *a/an/the* are not necessary, leave an empty space (–).

1. Who is *the* best player on your team?
2. I don't watch – TV very often.
3. "Is there *a* bank near here?" "Yes, at *the* end of this block."
4. I can't ride _____ horse.
5. _____ sky is very clear tonight.
6. Do you live here, or are you _____ tourist?
7. What did you have for _____ lunch?
8. Who was _____ first president of _____ United States?
9. "What time is it?" "I don't know. I don't have _____ watch."
10. I'm sorry, but I've forgotten your name. I can never remember _____ names.
11. What time is _____ next train to Boston?
12. Kate never sends _____ e-mails. She prefers to call people.
13. "Where's Sue?" "She's in _____ backyard."
14. Excuse me, I'm looking for _____ Majestic Hotel. Is it near here?
15. Gary was sick _____ last week, so he didn't go to _____ work.
16. Everest is _____ highest mountain in _____ world.
17. I usually listen to _____ radio while I'm having _____ breakfast.
18. I like _____ sports. My favorite sport is _____ basketball.
19. Julia is _____ doctor. Her husband is _____ art teacher.
20. My apartment is on _____ second floor. Turn left at _____ top of _____ stairs, and it's on _____ right.
21. After _____ dinner, we watched _____ TV.
22. I've been to _____ northern Mexico but not to _____ south.

Prepositions

Units 104–109, 112

35 Write a preposition (*in/for/by,* etc.).

1. Helen is studying math *in* college.
2. What is the longest river _____ Europe?
3. Is there anything _____ TV tonight?
4. We arrived _____ the hotel after midnight.
5. "Where's Mike?" "He's _____ vacation."
6. Tom hasn't gotten up yet. He's still _____ bed.
7. Lisa is away. She's been away _____ Monday.
8. The next meeting is _____ April 15.
9. We traveled across Canada _____ train.
10. There's too much sugar _____ my coffee.
11. Kevin lived in Las Vegas _____ six months. He didn't like it very much.
12. Were there a lot of people _____ the party?
13. I don't know any of the people _____ this photo.
14. The train was very slow. It stopped _____ every station.
15. I like this room. I like the pictures _____ the walls.
16. "Did you paint that picture?" "No, it was given to me _____ a friend of mine."
17. I'm going away _____ a few days. I'll be back _____ Thursday.
18. Silvia has gone _____ Italy. She's _____ Milan right now.
19. Emma quit school _____ sixteen and got a job _____ a bookstore.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Study Guide

This guide will help you decide which units you need to study.

Each sentence can be completed using one or more of the alternatives (A, B, C, etc.). You have to decide which alternative (A, B, C, etc.) is right. SOMETIMES MORE THAN ONE ALTERNATIVE IS CORRECT.

If you don't know or if you are not sure which alternatives are correct, study the unit(s) in the list on the right. You will find the correct sentence in the unit.

There is an Answer Key to this Study Guide on page 306.

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT, STUDY UNIT(S)

Present

1.1	_____ . Can you close the window, please? **A** I cold **B** I'm cold **C** I have cold **D** It has cold	1
1.2	Tom _____ in politics. **A** isn't interested **B** not interested **C** doesn't interested **D** doesn't interest	1
1.3	"_____ ?" "No, she's out." **A** Is at home your mother **B** Does your mother at home **C** Is your mother at home **D** Are your mother at home	2
1.4	These postcards are nice. _____ **A** How much are they? **B** How many are they? **C** How much they are? **D** How much is they?	2
1.5	Look, there's Sarah. _____ a brown coat. **A** She wearing **B** She has wearing **C** She is wearing **D** She's wearing	3, 24
1.6	You can turn off the television. _____ it. **A** I'm not watch **B** I'm not watching **C** I not watching **D** I don't watching	3, 24
1.7	"_____ today?" "Yes, he is." **A** Is working Paul **B** Is work Paul **C** Is Paul work **D** Is Paul working	4, 24
1.8	Look, there's Emily! _____ **A** Where she is going? **B** Where she go? **C** Where's she going? **D** Where she going?	4, 24
1.9	The earth _____ around the sun. **A** going **B** go **C** goes **D** does go **E** is go	5, 24
1.10	We _____ late on weekends. **A** often sleep **B** sleep often **C** often sleeping **D** are often sleep	5, 24, 95
1.11	We _____ television very often. **A** not watch **B** doesn't watch **C** don't watch **D** don't watching **E** watch not	6, 24

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT, STUDY UNIT(S)

1.12 "_____ on Sundays?" "No, not usually." — 7, 24
A Do you work **B** Are you work **C** Does you work
D Do you working **E** Work you

1.13 I don't understand this sentence. What _____ ? — 7, 24
A mean this word **B** means this word **C** does mean this word
D does this word mean **E** this word means

1.14 Please be quiet. _____ — 8, 24
A I working. **B** I work. **C** I'm working. **D** I'm work.

1.15 Tom _____ a shower every morning. — 8
A takes **B** taking **C** is taking **D** take

1.16 What _____ on weekends? — 7, 8, 24
A do you usually **B** are you usually doing **C** are you usually do
D do you usually do **E** you do usually

1.17 Sarah isn't feeling well. _____ a headache. — 9, 59
A She have **B** She have got **C** She has **D** She's got

1.18 Mr. and Mrs. Harris _____ any children. — 9, 59
A don't have **B** doesn't have **C** no have **D** haven't got
E hasn't got

Past

2.1 The weather _____ last week. — 10
A is nice **B** was nice **C** were nice **D** nice **E** had nice

2.2 Why _____ late this morning? — 10
A you was **B** did you **C** was you **D** you were **E** were you

2.3 Terry _____ in a bank from 2001 to 2008. — 11
A work **B** working **C** works **D** worked **E** was work

2.4 Caroline _____ to the movies three times last week. — 11
A go **B** went **C** goes **D** got **E** was

2.5 I _____ television yesterday. — 12, 24
A didn't watch **B** didn't watched **C** wasn't watched
D don't watch **E** didn't watching

2.6 "How _____ ?" "I don't know. I didn't see it." — 12
A happened the accident **B** did happen the accident
C does the accident happen **D** did the accident happen
E the accident happened

2.7 What _____ at 11:30 yesterday? — 13
A were you doing **B** was you doing **C** you were doing
D were you do **E** you was doing

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

2.8 Jack was reading a book when the phone _____ . — 14
A ringing **B** ring **C** rang **D** was ringing **E** was ring

2.9 I saw Lucy and Steve this morning. They _____ at the bus stop. — 14
A waiting **B** waited **C** were waiting **D** was waiting
E were waited

2.10 Dave _____ in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket. — 15
A working **B** works **C** work **D** use to work
E used to work

Present perfect

3.1 "Where's Rebecca?" "_____ to bed." — 19
A She is gone **B** She has gone **C** She goes **D** She have gone
E She's gone

3.2 "Are Diane and Paul here?" "No, they _____ ." — 20
A don't arrive yet **B** have already arrived **C** haven't already arrived
D haven't arrived yet

3.3 My sister _____ by plane. — 16, 24
A has never travel **B** has never traveled **C** is never traveled
D has never been traveled **E** have never traveled

3.4 _____ that woman before, but I can't remember where. — 16, 24
A I see **B** I seen **C** I've saw **D** I've seen **E** I've seeing

3.5 "How long _____ married?" "Since 1998." — 17
A you are **B** you have been **C** has you been **D** are you
E have you been

3.6 "Do you know Lisa?" "Yes, _____ her for a long time." — 17
A I knew **B** I've known **C** I know **D** I am knowing

3.7 Richard has been in Canada _____ . — 18, 105
A for six months **B** since six months **C** six months ago
D in six months

3.8 "When did Tom leave?" "_____ ." — 18
A For ten minutes **B** Since ten minutes **C** Ten minutes ago
D In ten minutes

3.9 We _____ a vacation last year. — 21
A don't take **B** haven't taken **C** hasn't taken **D** didn't take
E didn't took

3.10 Where _____ on Sunday afternoon? I couldn't find you. — 21
A you were **B** you have been **C** was you **D** have you been
E were you

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT, STUDY UNIT(S)

Passive

4.1 This house _____ 100 years ago. — 22, 24
A is built **B** is building **C** was building **D** was built **E** built

4.2 We _____ to the party last week. — 22, 24
A didn't invite **B** didn't invited **C** weren't invited
D wasn't invited **E** haven't been invited

4.3 "Where _____ born?" "In Cairo." — 22
A you are **B** you were **C** was you **D** are you **E** were you

4.4 My car is at the garage. It _____ . — 23
A is being repaired **B** is repairing **C** have been repaired
D repaired **E** repairs

4.5 I can't find my keys. I think _____ . — 23
A they've been stolen **B** they are stolen **C** they've stolen
D they're being stolen

Verb forms

5.1 It _____ , so we didn't need an umbrella. — 24
A wasn't rained **B** wasn't rain **C** didn't raining **D** wasn't raining

5.2 Somebody _____ this window. — 25
A has broke **B** has broken **C** has breaked **D** has break

Future

6.1 Andrew _____ tennis tomorrow. — 26
A is playing **B** play **C** plays **D** is play

6.2 _____ out tonight? — 26
A Are you going **B** Are you go **C** Do you go **D** Go you
E Do you going

6.3 "What time is the concert tonight?" "It _____ at 7:30." — 26
A is start **B** is starting **C** starts **D** start **E** starting

6.4 What _____ to the wedding next week? — 27
A are you wearing **B** are you going to wear **C** do you wear
D you are going to wear

6.5 I think Kelly _____ her driver's test. — 28
A passes **B** will pass **C** will be pass **D** will passing

6.6 _____ to the movies on Saturday. Do you want to come with us? — 26, 28
A We go **B** We'll go **C** We're going **D** We will going

6.7 "_____ you tomorrow, OK?" "OK, bye." — 29
A I call **B** I calling **C** I'm calling **D** I'll call

6.8 There's a good program on TV tonight. _____ it. — 27, 29
A I watch **B** I'll watch **C** I'm going to watch **D** I'll watching

6.9 It's a nice day. _____ for a walk? — 29
A Do we go **B** Shall we go **C** Should we go **D** We go
E Go we

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT, STUDY UNIT(S)

Modals, imperative, etc.

7.1 _____ to the movies tonight, but I'm not sure. — 30
A I'll go **B** I'm going **C** I may go **D** I might go

7.2 "_____ here?" "Sure." — 30, 31
A Can I sit **B** Do I sit **C** May I sit **D** Can I to sit

7.3 I'm having a party next week, but Paul and Rachel _____. — 31
A can't come **B** can't to come **C** can't coming **D** couldn't come

7.4 Before Maria came to the United States, she _____ understand much English. — 31
A can **B** can't **C** not **D** couldn't **E** doesn't

7.5 We _____ walk home last night. There were no buses. — 32, 34
A have to **B** had to **C** must **D** must to **E** must have

7.6 You worked 10 hours today. You _____ tired. — 32
A must **B** can **C** must be **D** can be **E** must to be

7.7 It's a good movie. You _____ go and see it. — 33
A should to **B** ought to **C** ought **D** should **E** have

7.8 What time _____ go to the dentist tomorrow? — 34
A you must **B** you have to **C** have you to **D** do you have to

7.9 We _____ wait very long for the bus – it came in a few minutes. — 34
A don't have to **B** hadn't to **C** didn't have to **D** didn't had to **E** mustn't

7.10 "_____ some coffee?" "No, thank you." — 35
A Are you liking **B** You like **C** Would you like **D** Do you like

7.11 I don't really want to go out. _____ home. — 36
A I rather stay **B** I'd rather stay **C** I'd rather to stay **D** I'd prefer to stay

7.12 Please _____. Stay here with me. — 37
A don't go **B** you no go **C** go not **D** you don't go

7.13 It's a nice day. _____ out. — 37
A Let's to go **B** Let's go **C** Let's going **D** We go

There and *it*

8.1 Excuse me, _____ a hotel near here? — 38
A has there **B** is there **C** there is **D** is it

8.2 _____ a lot of accidents on this road. It's very dangerous. — 38
A Have **B** It has **C** There have **D** They are **E** There are

8.3 I was hungry when I got home, but _____ anything to eat. — 39
A there wasn't **B** there weren't **C** it wasn't **D** there hasn't been

8.4 _____ two miles from our house to downtown. — 40
A It's **B** It has **C** There is **D** There are

8.5 _____ true that you're moving to Dallas? — 40
A Is there **B** Is it **C** Is **D** Are you

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT, STUDY UNIT(S)

Auxiliary verbs

9.1 I haven't seen the movie, but my sister _____ . — 41
A does **B** is **C** has seen **D** has **E** hasn't

9.2 I don't like hot weather, but Sue _____ . — 41
A does **B** doesn't **C** do **D** does like **E** likes

9.3 "Nicole got married last week." "_____ ? Really?" — 42
A Got she **B** She got **C** She did **D** She has

9.4 You haven't met my mother, _____ ? — 42
A haven't you **B** have you **C** did you **D** you have
E you haven't

9.5 Bill doesn't watch TV. He doesn't read newspapers, _____ . — 43
A too **B** either **C** neither **D** never

9.6 "I'd like to go to Australia." "_____ ." — 43
A So do I **B** So am I **C** So would I **D** Neither do I
E So I would

9.7 Sue _____ much on weekends. — 44
A don't **B** doesn't **C** don't do **D** doesn't do

Questions

10.1 "When _____ ?" "I'm not sure. More than 100 years ago." — 45
A did the telephone invent **B** has the telephone invented
C was invented the telephone **D** was the telephone invented
E the telephone was invented

10.2 "I broke my finger last week." "How _____ that?" — 45
A did you **B** you did **C** you did do **D** did you do

10.3 Why _____ me last night? I was waiting for you to call. — 45
A didn't you call **B** you not call **C** you don't call **D** you didn't call

10.4 "Who _____ in this house?" "I don't know." — 46
A lives **B** does live **C** does lives **D** living

10.5 What _____ when you told him the story? — 46
A said Paul **B** did Paul say **C** Paul said **D** did Paul said

10.6 "Tom's father is in the hospital." "_____" — 47
A In which hospital he is? **B** In which hospital he is in?
C Which hospital he is in? **D** Which hospital is he in?

10.7 Did you have a good vacation? _____ — 47
A How was the weather like? **B** What was the weather like?
C What the weather was like? **D** Was the weather like?

10.8 _____ taller – Joe or Gary? — 48
A Who is **B** What is **C** Which is **D** Who has

10.9 There are four umbrellas here. _____ is yours? — 48, 76
A What **B** Who **C** Which **D** How **E** Which one

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT, STUDY UNIT(S)

10.10 How long _____ to cross the Atlantic by ship? 49
A is it **B** does it need **C** does it take **D** does it want

10.11 I don't remember what _____ at the party. 50
A Jenny was wearing **B** was wearing Jenny **C** was Jenny wearing

10.12 "Do you know _____ ?" "Yes, I think so." 50
A if Jack is at home **B** is Jack at home **C** whether Jack is at home
D that Jack is at home

Reported speech

11.1 I saw Steve a week ago. He said that _____ me, but he didn't. 51
A he call **B** he calls **C** he'll call **D** he's going to call
E he would call

11.2 "Why did Tim go to bed so early?" "He _____." 51
A said he was tired **B** said that he was tired **C** said me he was tired
D told me he was tired **E** told that he was tired

-ing and to . . .

12.1 You shouldn't _____ so hard. 52
A working **B** work **C** to work **D** worked

12.2 It's late. I _____ now. 52
A must to go **B** have go **C** have to going **D** have to go

12.3 Tina has decided _____ her car. 53
A sell **B** to sell **C** selling **D** to selling

12.4 I don't mind _____ early. 53
A get up **B** to get up **C** getting up **D** to getting up

12.5 Do you like _____ early? 53
A get up **B** to get up **C** getting up **D** to getting up

12.6 Do you want _____ you some money? 54
A me lend **B** me lending **C** me to lend **D** that I lend

12.7 He's very funny. He makes _____. 54
A me laugh **B** me laughing **C** me to laugh **D** that I laugh

12.8 Paula went to the store _____ some fruit. 55
A for get **B** for to get **C** for getting **D** to get **E** get

Go, get, do, make, and have

13.1 The water looks nice. I'm going _____. 56
A for a swim **B** on a swim **C** to swimming **D** swimming

13.2 I'm sorry your mother is sick. I hope she _____ better soon. 57
A has **B** makes **C** gets **D** goes

13.3 Kate _____ the car and drove away. 57
A went into **B** went in **C** got in **D** got into

13.4 "Shall I open the window?" "No, it's OK. I'll _____ it." 58
A do **B** make **C** get **D** open

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT, STUDY UNIT(S)

13.5 I'm sorry, I _____ a mistake. — 58
A did **B** made **C** got **D** had

13.6 _____ enough time to do everything you wanted? — 59
A Have you **B** Had you **C** Do you have **D** Did you have

Pronouns and possessives

14.1 I don't want this book. You can have _____. — 60, 63
A it **B** them **C** her **D** him

14.2 Sue and Kevin are going to the movies. Do you want to go with _____? — 60, 63
A her **B** they **C** them **D** him

14.3 I know Donna, but I don't know _____ husband. — 61, 63
A their **B** his **C** she **D** her

14.4 Hawaii is famous for _____ beaches. — 61
A his **B** its **C** it's **D** their

14.5 I didn't have an umbrella, so Helen gave me _____. — 62, 63
A her **B** hers **C** her umbrella **D** she's

14.6 I went to the movies with a friend of _____. — 62, 63
A mine **B** my **C** me **D** I **E** myself

14.7 We had a good vacation. We enjoyed _____. — 64
A us **B** our **C** ours **D** ourself **E** ourselves

14.8 Kate and Helen are good friends. They know _____ well. — 64
A each other **B** them **C** themselves **D** theirselves

14.9 Have you met _____? — 65
A the wife of Mr. Black **B** Mr. Black wife **C** the wife Mr. Black
D Mr. Black's wife **E** the Mr. Black's wife

14.10 Have you seen _____? — 65
A the car of my parents **B** my parent's car **C** my parents' car
D my parents car

A and *the*

15.1 I'm going to buy _____. — 66, 68
A hat and umbrella **B** a hat and a umbrella
C a hat and an umbrella **D** an hat and an umbrella

15.2 "What do you do?" "_____." — 66
A I dentist **B** I'm a dentist **C** I'm dentist **D** I do dentist

15.3 I'm going shopping. I need _____. — 67
A some new jeans **B** a new jeans **C** a new pair of jeans
D a new pair jeans

15.4 I like the people here. _____ very friendly. — 67
A She is **B** They are **C** They is **D** It is **E** He is

15.5 We can't get into the house without _____. — 68
A some key **B** a key **C** key

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT, STUDY UNIT(S)

15.6 I'd like _____ about hotels in Mexico City. — 69
A some information **B** some informations **C** an information

15.7 We enjoyed our vacation. _____ was very nice. — 70, 71
A Hotel **B** A hotel **C** An hotel **D** The hotel

15.8 The table is in _____. — 71
A middle of room **B** middle of the room
C the middle of the room **D** the middle of room

15.9 What did you have for _____? — 71
A the breakfast **B** breakfast **C** a breakfast

15.10 I finish _____ at 5:00 every day. — 72
A the work **B** work **C** a work

15.11 I'm tired. I'm going _____. — 72
A in bed **B** in the bed **C** to a bed **D** to the bed **E** to bed

15.12 We don't eat _____ very often. — 73
A the meat **B** some meat **C** a meat **D** meat

15.13 _____ is in New York. — 74
A The Times Square **B** Times Square

15.14 My friends are staying at _____. — 74
A the Regent Hotel **B** Regent Hotel

Determiners and pronouns

16.1 "I'm going on vacation next week." "Oh, _____ nice." — 75
A it's **B** this is **C** that's

16.2 "Is there a bank near here?" "Yes, there's _____ on the corner." — 76
A some **B** it **C** one **D** a one

16.3 This cup is dirty. Can I have _____? — 76
A clean one **B** a clean one **C** clean **D** a clean

16.4 I'm going shopping. I'm going to buy _____ clothes. — 77
A any **B** some

16.5 "Where's your luggage?" "I don't have _____." — 77
A one **B** some **C** any

16.6 Tracey and Jeff _____. — 78, 79
A have no children **B** don't have no children
C don't have any children **D** have any children

16.7 "How much money do you have?" "_____." — 78
A No **B** No one **C** Any **D** None

16.8 There is _____ in the room. It's empty. — 79, 80
A anybody **B** nobody **C** anyone **D** no one

16.9 "What did you say?" "_____." — 79, 80
A Nothing **B** Nobody **C** Anything **D** Anybody

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT, STUDY UNIT(S)

16.10 I'm hungry. I want _____ . — 80
A something for eat **B** something to eat **C** something for eating

16.11 It rained _____ last week. — 81
A all day **B** all days **C** every days **D** every day

16.12 _____ friends. — 81
A Everybody need **B** Everybody needs **C** Everyone need
D Everyone needs

16.13 _____ children like to play. — 82
A Most **B** The most **C** Most of **D** The most of

16.14 I like _____ those pictures. — 83
A both **B** both of **C** either **D** either of

16.15 I haven't read _____ these books. — 83
A neither **B** neither of **C** either **D** either of

16.16 Do you have _____ friends? — 84
A a lot of **B** much **C** many **D** much of **E** many of

16.17 We like movies, so we go to the movies _____ . — 84
A a lot of **B** much **C** many **D** a lot

16.18 There were _____ people in the theater. It was almost empty. — 85
A a little **B** few **C** little **D** a few of

16.19 They have _____ money, so they're not poor. — 85
A a little **B** a few **C** few **D** little **E** little of

Adjectives and adverbs

17.1 I don't speak any _____ . — 86
A foreign languages **B** languages foreign **C** languages foreigns

17.2 He ate his dinner very _____ . — 87
A quick **B** quicker **C** quickly

17.3 You speak English very _____ . — 87
A good **B** fluent **C** well **D** slow

17.4 Helen wants _____ . — 88
A a more big car **B** a car more big **C** a car bigger **D** a bigger car

17.5 "Do you feel better today?" "No, I feel _____ ." — 88
A good **B** worse **C** more bad **D** more worse

17.6 Athens is older _____ Rome. — 89
A as **B** than **C** that **D** of

17.7 I can run faster _____ . — 89
A than him **B** that he can **C** than he can **D** as he can **E** as he

17.8 Tennis isn't _____ soccer. — 90
A popular as **B** popular than **C** as popular than
D so popular that **E** as popular as

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

17.9 The weather today is the same _____ yesterday. 90
A as **B** that **C** than **D** like

17.10 The Best West Motel is _____ in town. 91
A the more expensive motel **B** the most expensive motel
C the motel most expensive **D** the motel the more expensive
E the motel more expensive

17.11 The movie was very bad. I think it's the _____ movie I've ever seen. 91
A worse **B** baddest **C** most bad **D** worst **E** more worse

17.12 Why don't you buy a car? You've got _____. 92
A enough money **B** money enough **C** enough of money

17.13 Is your English _____ a conversation? 92
A enough good to have **B** good enough for have **C** enough good for
D good enough to have

17.14 I'm _____ out. 93
A too tired for go **B** too much tired for going **C** too tired to go
D too much tired to go

Word order

18.1 Sue is interested in the news. She _____. 94
A reads every day a newspaper **B** reads a newspaper every day
C every day reads a newspaper

18.2 _____ coffee in the morning. 95
A I drink always **B** Always I drink **C** I always drink

18.3 _____ during the day. 95
A They are at home never **B** They are never at home
C They never are at home **D** Never they are at home

18.4 "Where's Emma?" "She _____." 96
A isn't here yet **B** isn't here already **C** isn't here still

18.5 I locked the door, and I gave _____. 97
A Sarah the keys **B** to Sarah the keys **C** the keys Sarah
D the keys to Sarah

Conjunctions and clauses

19.1 I can't talk to you now. I'll talk to you later when _____ more time. 99
A I'll have **B** I had **C** I have **D** I'm going to have

19.2 _____ late tonight, don't wait for me. 100
A If I'm **B** If I'll be **C** When I'm **D** When I'll be

19.3 I don't know the answer. If I _____ the answer, I'd tell you. 101
A know **B** would know **C** have known **D** knew

19.4 I like that jacket. _____ _____ it if it wasn't so expensive. 101
A I buy **B** I'll buy **C** I bought **D** I'd bought **E** I'd buy

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT, STUDY UNIT(S)

19.5 Emma lives in a house _____ is 100 years old. **102**
A who **B** that **C** which **D** it **E** what

19.6 The people _____ work in the office are very friendly. **102**
A who **B** that **C** they **D** which **E** what

19.7 Did you find the books _____ ? **103**
A who you wanted **B** that you wanted **C** what you wanted
D you wanted **E** you wanted it

19.8 I met _____ can speak six languages. **103**
A a woman who **B** a woman which **C** a woman **D** a woman she

Prepositions

20.1 Bye! See you _____ . **104**
A Friday **B** at Friday **C** in Friday **D** on Friday

20.2 Hurry! The train leaves _____ five minutes. **104**
A at **B** on **C** from **D** after **E** in

20.3 "How long will you be away?" "_____ Monday." **105**
A On **B** To **C** Until **D** Till **E** Since

20.4 We played basketball yesterday. We played _____ two hours. **106**
A in **B** for **C** since **D** during

20.5 I always have breakfast before _____ to work. **106**
A I go **B** go **C** to go **D** going

20.6 Write your name _____ the top of the page. **107**
A at **B** on **C** in **D** to

20.7 There are a lot of apples _____ those trees. **107**
A at **B** on **C** in **D** to

20.8 What's the largest city _____ the world? **108**
A at **B** on **C** in **D** of

20.9 The office is _____ the second floor. **108**
A at **B** on **C** in **D** to

20.10 I met a lot of people _____ the party. **109**
A on **B** to **C** in **D** at

20.11 I want to go _____ Mexico next year. **109**
A at **B** on **C** in **D** to

20.12 What time did you arrive _____ the hotel? **109**
A at **B** on **C** in **D** to

20.13 "Where is Don in this picture?" "Don is _____ Bob." **110**
A at front of **B** in the front of **C** in front of **D** in front from

20.14 I jumped _____ the wall into the garden. **111**
A on **B** through **C** across **D** over **E** above

20.15 Jane isn't at work this week. She's _____ vacation. **112**
A on **B** in **C** for **D** to **E** at

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT, STUDY UNIT(S)

20.16 Do you like traveling _____ ? **112**
A with train **B** with the train **C** in train **D** on train
E by train

20.17 I'm not very good _____ telling stories. **113**
A on **B** with **C** at **D** in **E** for

20.18 Tom left without _____ good-bye. **113**
A say **B** saying **C** to say **D** that he said

20.19 I have to call _____ tonight. **114**
A with my parents **B** to my parents **C** at my parents **D** my parents

20.20 "Do you like eating in restaurants?" "Sometimes. It depends _____ the restaurant." **114**
A in **B** at **C** of **D** on **E** over

Phrasal verbs

21.1 A car stopped and a woman got _____ . **115**
A off **B** down **C** out **D** out of

21.2 It was cold, so I _____ . **116**
A put on my coat **B** put my coat on **C** put the coat on me
D put me the coat on

21.3 I have Rachel's keys. I have to _____ _____ to her. **116**
A give back **B** give them back **C** give back them **D** give it back

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Answer Key to Exercises

UNIT 1

1.1
2. they're
3. it isn't / it's not
4. that's
5. I'm not
6. you aren't / you're not

1.2
2. 'm/am
3. is
4. are
5. 's/is
6. are
7. is . . . are
8. 'm/am . . . is

1.3
2. I'm / I am
3. He's / He is
4. they're / they are
5. It's / It is
6. You're / You are
7. She's / She is
8. Here's / Here is

1.4
Example answers:
1. My name is Robert.
2. I'm from Brazil.
3. I'm 25.
4. I'm a cook.
5. My favorite colors are black and white.
6. I'm interested in plants.

1.5
2. They're / They are cold.
3. He's / He is hot.
4. He's / He is afraid.
5. They're / They are hungry.
6. She's / She is angry.

1.6
2. It's/ It is windy today. *or* It isn't/It's not windy today.
3. My hands are cold. *or* My hands aren't / are not cold.
4. Brazil is a very big country.
5. Diamonds aren't / are not cheap.
6. Toronto isn't / is not in the United States.
8. I'm/I am hungry. *or* I'm not / I am not hungry.
9. I'm/I am a good swimmer. *or* I'm not / I am not a good swimmer.
10. I'm / I am interested in politics. *or* I'm not / I am not interested in politics.

UNIT 2

2.1
2. f
3. h
4. c
5. a
6. e
7. b
8. i
9. d

2.2
3. Is your job interesting?
4. Are the stores open today?
5. Where are you from?
6. Are you interested in sports?
7. Is the post office near here?
8. Are your children at school?
9. Why are you late?

2.3
2. Where's / Where is
3. How old are
4. How much are
5. What's / What is
6. Who's / Who is
7. What color are

2.4
2. Are you Australian?
3. How old are you?
4. Are you a teacher?
5. Are you married?
6. Is your wife a lawyer?
7. Where's/Where is she from?
8. What's/What is her name?
9. How old is she?

2.5
2. Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
3. Yes, it is. *or* No, it isn't. / No, it's not.
4. Yes, they are. *or* No, they aren't. / No, they're not.
5. Yes, it is. *or* No, it isn't. / No, it's not.
6. Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.

UNIT 3

3.1
2. 's/is waiting
3. 're/are playing
4. He's/He is lying
5. They're/They are having
6. She's/She is sitting

3.2
2. 's/is cooking
3. 're/are standing
4. 's/is swimming
5. 're/are staying
6. 's/is taking
7. 're/are building
8. 'm/am leaving

3.3
3. She's/She is sitting on the floor.
4. She isn't/She's not reading a book.
5. She isn't/She's not playing the piano.
6. She's/She is laughing.
7. She's/She is wearing a hat.
8. She isn't/She's not writing a letter.

3.4
3. I'm sitting on a chair. *or* I'm not sitting on a chair.
4. I'm eating. *or* I'm not eating.
5. It's raining. *or* It isn't raining. / It's not raining.
6. I'm studying English.
7. I'm listening to music. *or* I'm not listening to music.
8. The sun is shining. *or* The sun isn't shining.
9. I'm wearing shoes. *or* I'm not wearing shoes.
10. I'm not reading a newspaper.

UNIT 4

4.1
2. Are you leaving now?
3. Is it raining?
4. Are you enjoying the movie?
5. Is that clock working?
6. Are you waiting for a bus?

4.2
2. Where is she going?
3. What are you eating?
4. Why are you crying?
5. What are they looking at?
6. Why is he laughing?

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

4.3
3. Are you listening to me?
4. Where are your friends going?
5. Are your parents watching television?
6. What is Jessica cooking?
7. Why are you looking at me?
8. Is the bus coming?

4.4
2. Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
3. Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
4. Yes, it is. *or* No, it isn't. / No, it's not.
5. Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
6. Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.

UNIT 5

5.1
2. thinks
3. flies
4. dances
5. has
6. finishes

5.2
2. live
3. She eats
4. He plays
5. They go
6. He sleeps

5.3
2. open
3. closes
4. teaches
5. meet
6. washes
7. costs
8. cost
9. boils
10. like . . . likes

5.4
2. I never go to the movies.
3. Martina always works hard.
4. Children usually like chocolate.
5. Julia always enjoys parties.
6. I often forget people's names.
7. Tim never watches television.
8. We usually have dinner at 6:30.
9. Jenny always wears nice clothes.

5.5
Example answers:
2. I sometimes read in bed.
3. I often get up before 7:00.
4. I never go to work by bus.
5. I always drink coffee in the morning.

UNIT 6

6.1
2. Jane doesn't play the piano very well.
3. They don't know my phone number.
4. We don't work very hard.
5. Mike doesn't have a car.
6. You don't do the same thing every day.

6.2
1. Carol doesn't like classical music.
   I like (*or* I don't like) classical music.
2. Bill and Rose don't like boxing.
   Carol likes boxing.
   I like (*or* I don't like) boxing.
3. Bill and Rose like horror movies.
   Carol doesn't like horror movies.
   I like (*or* I don't like) horror movies.

6.3
Example answers:
2. I never go to the theater.
3. I don't ride a bicycle very often.
4. I never eat in restaurants.
5. I travel by train a lot.

6.4
2. doesn't use
3. don't go
4. doesn't wear
5. don't know
6. doesn't cost
7. don't see

6.5
3. don't know
4. doesn't talk
5. drinks
6. don't believe
7. like
8. doesn't eat

UNIT 7

7.1
2. Do you play tennis?
3. Does Lucy live near here?
4. Do Tom's friends play tennis? / Do they play tennis?
5. Does your brother speak English? / Does he speak English?
6. Do you do yoga every morning?
7. Does Paul often travel on business? / Does he often travel on business?
8. Do you want to be famous?
9. Does Anna work hard? / Does she work hard?

7.2
3. How often do you watch TV?
4. What do you want for dinner?
5. Do you like football?
6. Does your brother like football?
7. What do you do in your free time?
8. Where does your sister work?
9. Do you ever go to the movies?
10. What does this word mean?
11. Does it often snow here?
12. What time do you usually go to bed?
13. How much does it cost to call Mexico?
14. What do you usually have for breakfast?

7.3
2. Do you enjoy / Do you like
3. do you start
4. Do you work
5. do you get
6. does he do
7. does he teach
8. Does he enjoy / Does he like

7.4
2. Yes, I do. *or* No, I don't.
3. Yes, I do. *or* No, I don't.
4. Yes, it does. *or* No, it doesn't.
5. Yes, I do. *or* No, I don't.

UNIT 8

8.1
2. No, she isn't.
   Yes, she does.
   She's playing the piano.
3. Yes, he does.
   Yes, he is.
   He's washing a window.
4. No, they aren't.
   Yes, they do.
   They teach.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

8.2

2. don't
3. are
4. does
5. 's/is . . . don't
6. do
7. does
8. doesn't

8.3

4. 's / is singing
5. She wants
6. do you read
7. you're / you are sitting
8. I don't / I do not understand
9. I'm / I am going . . . Are you coming
10. does your father finish
11. I'm not / I am not listening
12. He's / He is cooking
13. doesn't usually drive . . . usually walks
14. doesn't like . . . She prefers

UNIT 9

9.1

2. he's got
3. they've got
4. she hasn't got
5. it's got
6. I haven't got

9.2

2. He's got a computer. *or* He has a computer.
3. He hasn't got a dog. *or* He doesn't have a dog.
4. He hasn't got a cell phone. *or* He doesn't have a cell phone.
5. He's got a watch. *or* He has a watch.
6. He's got two brothers and a sister. *or* He has two brothers and a sister.
7. I've got a computer. / I have a computer. *or* I haven't got a computer. / I don't have a computer.
8. I've got a dog. / I have a dog. *or* I haven't got a dog. / I don't have a dog.
9. I've got a bike. / I have a bike. *or* I haven't got a bike. / I don't have a bike.
10. *(Example answer)* I've got a brother and a sister.

9.3

3. He has a new job.
4. They don't have much money.
5. Do you have an umbrella?
6. We have a lot of work to do.
7. I don't have your phone number.
8. Does your father have a car?
9. How much money do we have?

9.4

3. has
4. don't
5. got
6. have
7. doesn't

9.5

3. have four wheels.
4. has a lot of friends.
5. don't have a key.
6. has six legs.
7. don't have much time.

UNIT 10

10.1

2. Jack and Kate were at the movies.
3. Sue was at the station.
4. Mr. and Mrs. Hall were in/at a restaurant.
5. Ben was at the beach.
6. *(Example answer)* I was at work.

10.2

2. is . . . was
3. 'm/am
4. was
5. were
6. 're/are
7. Was
8. was
9. are . . . were

10.3

2. wasn't . . . was
3. was . . . were
4. "**Were** Kate and Bill at the party?" "Kate **was** there, but Bill **wasn't**." *or* "Kate **wasn't** there, but Bill **was**."
5. were
6. weren't . . . were

10.4

2. Was your exam difficult?
3. Where were Sue and Chris last week?
4. How much was your new camera?
5. Why were you angry yesterday?
6. Was the weather nice last week?

UNIT 11

11.1

2. opened
3. started . . . ended
4. wanted
5. happened
6. rained
7. enjoyed . . . stayed
8. died

11.2

2. saw
3. played
4. paid
5. visited
6. bought
7. went
8. thought
9. copied
10. knew
11. put
12. spoke

11.3

2. got
3. had
4. left
5. drove
6. got
7. parked
8. walked
9. checked
10. had
11. waited
12. departed
13. arrived
14. took

11.4

2. lost her keys
3. met her friends
4. bought two newspapers.
5. went to the movies.
6. ate an orange.
7. took a shower.
8. came (to see us)

11.5

Example answers:

2. I got up late yesterday.
3. I met some friends at lunchtime.
4. I went to the supermarket.
5. I called a lot of people.
6. I lost my keys.

UNIT 12

12.1

2. didn't work
3. didn't go
4. didn't have
5. didn't do

12.2

2. Did you enjoy the party?
3. Did you have a nice vacation?
4. Did you finish work early?
5. Did you sleep well last night?

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

12.3
2. I got up before 7:00. *or* I didn't get up before 7:00.
3. I took a shower. *or* I didn't take a shower.
4. I bought a magazine. *or* I didn't buy a magazine.
5. I ate meat. *or* I didn't eat meat.
6. I went to bed before 10:30. *or* I didn't go to bed before 10:30.

12.4
2. did you get to work
3. Did you win
4. did you go
5. did it cost
6. Did you go to bed late
7. Did you have a nice time
8. did it happen / did that happen

12.5
2. bought
3. Did it rain
4. didn't stay
5. opened
6. didn't have
7. did you do
8. didn't know

UNIT 13

13.1
2. Jack and Kate were at the supermarket. They were buying food.
3. Tim was in his car. He was driving.
4. Tracey was at the station. She was waiting for a train.
5. Mr. and Mrs. Hall were in the park. They were walking.
6. *(Example answer)* I was at a café. I was having coffee with some friends.

13.2
2. she was playing tennis
3. she was reading a/the newspaper
4. she was cooking (lunch)
5. she was having/eating breakfast
6. she was cleaning the kitchen

13.3
2. What were you doing
3. Was it raining
4. Why was Sue driving
5. Was Tim wearing

13.4
2. He was carrying a bag.
3. He wasn't going to the dentist.
4. He was eating an ice cream cone.
5. He wasn't carrying an umbrella.
6. He wasn't going home.
7. He was wearing a hat.
8. He wasn't riding a bicycle.

UNIT 14

14.1
1. happened . . . was painting . . . fell
2. arrived . . . got . . . were waiting
3. was walking . . . met . . . was going . . . was carrying . . . stopped

14.2
2. was studying
3. did the mail arrive . . . came . . . was having
4. didn't go
5. were you driving . . . stopped . . . wasn't driving
6. Did your team win . . . didn't play
7. did you break . . . were playing . . . hit . . . broke
8. Did you see . . . was wearing
9. were you doing
10. lost . . . did you get . . . climbed

UNIT 15

15.1
2. He used to play baseball.
3. She used to be a taxi driver.
4. They used to live in the country.
5. He used to wear glasses.
6. This building used to be a hotel.

15.2
2. She used to play volleyball.

3.–6.
She used to go out three or four nights a week. / She used to go out a lot.
She used to play a musical instrument. / She used to play the guitar.
She used to read a lot. / She used to like to read.
She used to take two or three trips a year. / She used to travel a lot.

15.3
3. used to have
4. used to be
5. go/commute
6. used to eat
7. watches
8. used to live
9. get
10. did you use to play

UNIT 16

16.1
3. Have you ever been to South Korea?
4. Have you ever lost your passport?
5. Have you ever flown in a helicopter?
6. Have you ever won a race?
7. Have you ever been to Peru?
8. Have you ever driven a bus?
9. Have you ever broken your leg?

16.2
Helen:
2. She's/She has been to South Korea once.
3. She's/She has never won a race.
4. She's/She has flown in a helicopter a few times.

You (example answers):
5. I've/I have never been to New York.
6. I've/I have played tennis many times.
7. I've/I have never driven a truck.
8. I've/I have been late for work a few times.

16.3
2–6.
She's/She has done a lot of interesting things.
She's/She has traveled all over the world. *or* She's/She has been all over the world.
She's/She has been married three times.
She's/She has written 10 books.
She's/She has met a lot of interesting people.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

16.4

3. Have you ever written
4. She's/She has never met
5. they've/they have read
6. I've/I have never been . . . my brother has been
7. She's/She has seen . . . I've / I have never seen
8. I've/I have traveled

UNIT 17

17.1

3. have been
4. has been
5. have lived / have been living
6. has worked / has been working
7. has had
8. have been studying

17.2

2. How long have they been there? *or* . . . been in Brazil?
3. How long have you known her? *or* . . . known Amy?
4. How long has she been studying Italian?
5. How long has he lived in Seattle? / How long has he been living . . . ?
6. How long have you been a teacher?
7. How long has it been raining?

17.3

2. She has lived in South Korea all her life.
3. They have been on vacation since Sunday.
4. The sun has been shining all day.
5. She has been waiting for 10 minutes.
6. He has had a beard since he was 20.

17.4

2. I know
3. I've known
4. have you been waiting
5. works
6. She has been reading
7. have you lived
8. I've had
9. is . . . He has been

UNIT 18

18.1

3. for
4. since
5. since
6. for
7. for
8. for . . . since

18.2

Example answers:

2. A year ago.
3. A few weeks ago.
4. Two hours ago.
5. Six months ago.

18.3

3. for 20 years.
4. 20 years ago.
5. an hour ago.
6. a few days ago.
7. for six months.
8. for a long time

18.4

2. Jack has been here since Tuesday.
3. It's been raining for an hour.
4. I've known Sue since 2002.
5. Claire and Matthew have been married for six months.
6. Liz has been studying medicine (at the university) for three years.
7. David has played / David has been playing the piano since he was seven years old.

18.5

Example answers:

1. I've lived in . . . all my life.
2. I've been to New York three times.
3. I've been studying English for six months.
4. I've known Chris for a long time.
5. I've had a headache since I got up this morning.

UNIT 19

19.1

2. He has/He's closed the door.
3. They have/They've gone to bed.
4. It has/It's stopped raining.
5. He has/He's taken a shower.
6. The picture has fallen down.

19.2

2. I've written them a letter.
3. She's broken her arm.
4. They've moved to Seattle.
5. I've made a big mistake.
6. I've lost my wallet. . . . Have you seen it anywhere?
7. Have you heard? Mark has gotten married.
9. Brian took my bike again without asking.
10. Did you tell your friends the good news?
11. We didn't pay the electric bill.

UNIT 20

20.1

2. He's/He has just gotten up.
3. They've/They have just bought a car.
4. The race has just started.

20.2

2. No, they've / they have already seen it.
3. I've / I have already called him.
4. He's / He has already left/ gone to work.
5. I've / I have already read it.
6. She's / She has already started (it).

20.3

2. Have you told your father about the accident yet?
3. I've / I have just eaten a big dinner, so I'm not hungry.
4. Jenny can watch TV because she's / she has already done her homework.
5. You can't go to bed – you haven't brushed your teeth yet.
6. You can't talk to Pete because he's / he has just gone home.
7. Nicole has just gotten out of the hospital, so she can't go to work.
9. The mail carrier didn't come yet.
10. I just spoke to your sister.
11. Did Mario buy a new computer yet?
12. Ted and Alice didn't tell anyone they're getting married yet.
13. We already did our packing for our trip.
14. I just swam a mile.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

20.4

2. Have you met your new neighbors yet?
3. Have you paid your phone bill yet?
4. Has Tom/he sold his car yet?

UNIT 21

21.1

2. I started (it)
3. they arrived
4. she went out
5. I wore it

21.2

3. I finished
4. *OK*
5. did you finish
6. *OK*
7. (Steve's grandmother) died
8. Where were you / Where did you go

21.3

3. played
4. did you go
5. Have you ever met
6. wasn't
7. 's/has visited
8. turned
9. lived
10. haven't been

21.4

1. Did you have
   was
2. has won
   Have you seen
   saw
3. has had . . . was . . . worked . . .
   didn't enjoy
4. 've/have seen . . . 've/have never spoken . . . Have you ever spoken
   met

UNIT 22

22.1

3. Glass is made from sand.
4. Stamps are sold in a post office.
5. This word isn't used very often.
6. Are we allowed to park here?
7. How is this word pronounced?
9. The house was painted last month.
10. My phone was stolen a few days ago.
11. Three people were injured in the accident.
12. When was this bridge built?
13. I wasn't woken up by the noise.
14. How were these windows broken?
15. Were you invited to Jon's party last week?

22.2

2. Soccer **is played** in most . . .
3. Why **was the letter sent** to . . . ?
4. . . . where cars **are repaired**.
5. Where **were** you born?
6. How many languages **are spoken** . . . ?
7. . . . but nothing **was** stolen.
8. When **was** the bicycle **invented**?

22.3

3. is made
4. were damaged
5. was given
6. are shown
7. were invited
8. was made
9. was stolen . . . was found

22.4

2. Isabel was born in São Paulo.
3. Her parents were born in Rio de Janeiro.
4. I was born in . . .
5. My mother was born in . . .

UNIT 23

23.1

2. A bridge is being built.
3. The windows are being cleaned/washed.
4. The grass is being cut.

23.2

3. The window **has been** broken.
4. The roof **is being** repaired.
5. The car **has been** damaged.
6. The houses **are being** torn down.
7. The trees **have been** cut down.
8. They **have been** invited to a party.

23.3

3. has been repaired / was repaired
4. was repaired
5. are made
6. were they built
7. Is the computer being used (*or* Is anybody using the computer)
8. are they called
9. were stolen
10. was damaged . . . hasn't been repaired

UNIT 24

24.1

3. are
4. Does
5. Do
6. Is
7. do
8. Is
9. does
10. Are

24.2

2. don't
3. 'm/am not
4. isn't
5. don't
6. doesn't
7. 'm/am not
8. aren't / 're not

24.3

2. Did
3. were
4. was
5. Has
6. did
7. were
8. Has
9. did
10. have

24.4

2. was
3. Have
4. are
5. were
6. 've/have
7. is
8. was
9. has

24.5

3. eaten
4. enjoying
5. damaged
6. use
7. gone
8. understand
9. listening
10. pronounced
11. open

UNIT 25

25.1

3. said
4. brought
5. paid
6. enjoyed
7. bought
8. sat
9. left
10. happened
11. heard
12. put
13. caught
14. watched
15. understood

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

25.2

2.	began	begun
3.	ate	eaten
4.	drank	drunk
5.	drove	driven
6.	spoke	spoken
7.	wrote	written
8.	came	come
9.	knew	known
10.	took	taken
11.	went	gone
12.	gave	given
13.	threw	thrown
14.	got	gotten

25.3

3. slept
4. saw
5. rained
6. lost . . . seen
7. stolen
8. went
9. finished
10. built
11. learned
12. ridden
13. known
14. fell . . . hurt
15. ran . . . run

25.4

2. told
3. won
4. met
5. woken up
6. swam
7. thought
8. spoken
9. cost
10. driven
11. sold
12. flew

UNIT 26

26.1

2. Richard is going to the movies.
3. Rachel is meeting Dave.
4. Karen is having lunch with Ken.
5. Tom and Sue are going to a party.

26.2

2. Are you working next week?
3. What are you doing tomorrow night?
4. What time are your friends coming?
5. When is Liz going on vacation?

26.3

Example answers:

3. I'm going away this weekend.
4. I'm playing basketball tomorrow.
5. I'm meeting a friend tonight.
6. I'm going to the movies on Thursday night.

26.4

3. Karen is getting
4. are going . . . are they going
5. ends
6. I'm not going
7. I'm going . . . We're meeting
8. are you getting . . . leaves
9. does the movie begin
10. are you doing . . . I'm working

UNIT 27

27.1

2. I'm going to take a bath.
3. I'm going to buy a car.
4. We're going to play soccer.

27.2

3. 'm/am going to walk
4. 's/is going to stay
5. 'm/am going to eat
6. 're/are going to give
7. 's/is going to lie down
8. Are . . . going to watch
9. is . . . going to do

27.3

2. The shelf is going to fall (down).
3. The car is going to turn (left).
4. He's / He is going to kick the ball.

27.4

Example answers:

1. I'm going to call Maria tonight.
2. I'm going to get up early tomorrow.
3. I'm going to buy some shoes tomorrow.

UNIT 28

28.1

2.	she'll be	5. she's
3.	she was	6. she was
4.	she'll be	7. she'll be

28.2

Example answers:

2. I'll be at home.
3. I'll probably be in bed.
4. I'll be at work.
5. I don't know where I'll be.

28.3

2.	'll/will	5. 'll/will
3.	won't	6. 'll/will
4.	won't	7. won't

28.4

3. I think we'll win the game.
4. I don't think I'll be here tomorrow.
5. I think Sue will like her present.
6. I don't think they'll get married.
7. I don't think you'll like the movie.

28.5

2. are you doing
3. They're leaving
4. will lend
5. I'm going
6. will call
7. He's working
8. won't take
9. are coming

UNIT 29

29.1

2.	I'll send	5. I'll do
3.	I'll eat	6. I'll stay
4.	I'll sit	7. I'll show

29.2

2. I think I'll have
3. I don't think I'll play
4. I think I'll buy
5. I don't think I'll buy

29.3

2. I'll do
3. I watch
4. I'll go
5. is going to buy
6. I'll give
7. Are you doing . . . I'm going
8. I'm working
9. I'll buy

29.4

2.	g	6. a
3.	b	7. h
4.	e	8. c
5	i	9. f

UNIT 30

30.1

2. I might see you tomorrow.
3. Sarah might forget to call.
4. It might snow today.
5. I might be late tonight.
6. Mark might not be here next week.
7. I might not have time to go out.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

30.2
2. I might take a trip.
3. I might see her on Monday.
4. I might have fish.
5. I might take a taxi.
6. I might buy/get a new car.

30.3
3. He might get up early.
4. He isn't/He's not working tomorrow.
5. He might be at home tomorrow morning.
6. He might watch television.
7. He's going out in the afternoon.
8. He might go shopping.

30.4
Example answers:
1. I might read a newspaper.
2. I might go out with some friends at night.
3. I might have an egg for breakfast.

UNIT 31

31.1
2. Can you ski?
3. Can you play chess?
4. Can you run 10 kilometers?
5. Can you drive (a car)?
6. Can you ride (a horse)?

Example answers:
7. I can/can't swim.
8. I can/can't ski.
9. I can/can't play chess.
10. I can/can't run 10 kilometers.
11. I can/can't drive (a car).
12. I can/can't ride (a horse).

31.2
2. can see
3. can't hear
4. can't find
5. can speak

31.3
2. couldn't eat
3. can't decide
4. couldn't find
5. can't go
6. couldn't go

31.4
2. Can/Could you pass the salt (please)?
3. Can/Could you turn down the radio (please)?
4. Can/Could I have your phone number (please)?
5. Can/Could I look at your newspaper (please)? *or* Can/Could I have a look at your newspaper (please)?
6. Can/Could I use your pen (please)?

UNIT 32

32.1
2. must be hungry
3. must be good
4. must be very happy
5. must be for you
6. must be in the kitchen

32.2
2. must like
3. must have
4. must drink
5. must work

32.3
3. must not
4. must
5. must not
6. must not
7. must

32.4
2. must know
3. must wear
4. must get
5. must take
6. must be

32.5
3. must
4. had to
5. mustn't
6. must
7. mustn't
8. had to

UNIT 33

33.1
2. You should go
3. You should eat
4. you should visit
5. you should wear
6. You should read

33.2
2. He shouldn't eat so much.
3. She shouldn't work so hard.
4. He shouldn't drive so fast.

33.3
2. Do you think I should learn (to drive)?
3. Do you think I should get another job?
4. Do you think I should invite Gary (to the party)?

33.4
3. I think you should sell it.
4. I think she should take a trip.
5. I don't think they should get married.
6. I don't think you should go to work.
7. I think he should go to the doctor.
8. I don't think we should stay there.

33.5
Example answers:
2. I think everybody should have enough food.
3. I think people should drive more carefully.
4. I don't think the police should carry guns.
5. I think I should get more exercise.

UNIT 34

34.1
2. have to take
3. has to read
4. have to speak
5. has to travel
6. have to hit

34.2
2. have to go
3. had to buy
4. have to change
5. had to answer
6. have to wake
7. have to take

34.3
2. did he have to wait
3. does she have to go
4. did you have to pay
5. do you have to do
6. did they have to leave early
7. does he have to go to Moscow

34.4
2. doesn't have to wait.
3. didn't have to get up early.
4. doesn't have to work (so) hard.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

5. don't have to leave now.
6. didn't have to tell me something I already know

34.5

Example answers:

2. I have to go to work every day.
3. I had to go to the dentist yesterday.
4. I have to go shopping tomorrow.
5. I had to take the bus to work last week.
6. I had to go to bed at 9:00 when I was younger.

UNIT 35

35.1

2. Would you like an apple?
3. Would you like some coffee? / . . . a cup of coffee?
4. Would you like some cheese? / . . . a piece of cheese?
5. Would you like a sandwich?
6. Would you like some cake? / . . . a piece of cake?

35.2

2. Would you like to play tennis tomorrow?
3. Would you like to come to a concert next week?
4. Would you like to borrow my umbrella?

35.3

2. Do you like
3. Would you like
4. would you like
5. Would you like
6. I like
7. would you like
8. Would you like
9. Do you like
10. I'd like
11. I'd like
12. do you like

UNIT 36

36.1

2. 'd rather read (would rather read)
3. I'd rather have (I would rather have)
4. I'd rather wait (I would rather wait)

36.2

2. would you rather have/eat dinner
3. would you rather have
4. would you rather watch
5. would you rather call him

36.3

2. take
3. to go
4. get/have/find
5. carry/do
6. see / call / talk to / speak to . . . to send / to write

36.4

2. I'd/I would rather be a journalist / a school teacher.
3. I'd/I would rather live in a big city / in a small town.
4. I'd/I would rather have a small house / a big house.
5. I'd/I would rather study electronics/philosophy.
6. I'd/I would rather watch a soccer game / a movie.

UNIT 37

37.1

3. Don't buy
4. Smile
5. Don't sit
6. Have
7. Don't forget
8. Sleep
9. Be . . . Don't drop

37.2

2. let's take the bus
3. let's watch TV
4. let's go to a restaurant
5. let's wait a little

37.3

3. No, let's not go out.
4. No, don't close the window.
5. No, don't call me (tonight).
6. No, let's not wait for Andy.
7. No, don't turn on the light.
8. No, let's not take a taxi.

UNIT 38

38.1

3. There's / There is a hospital.
4. There isn't a swimming pool.
5. There are two movie theaters.
6. There isn't a university.
7. There aren't any big hotels.

38.2

Example answers:

3. There is a university in . . .
4. There are a lot of big shops.
5. There isn't an airport.
6. There aren't many factories.

38.3

2. There's/There is
3. is there
4. There are
5. are there
6. There isn't
7. Is there
8. Are there
9. There's / There is . . . There aren't

38.4

2.–6.

There are eight planets in the solar system.
There are five players on a basketball team.
There are twenty-six letters in the English alphabet.
There are thirty days in September.
There are fifty states in the United States.

38.5

2. It's
3. There's
4. There's . . . Is it
5. Is there . . . there's
6. It's
7. Is there

UNIT 39

39.1

2. There was a carpet
3. There were three pictures
4. There was a small table
5. There were some flowers
6. There were some books
7. There was an armchair
8. There was a sofa

39.2

3. There was
4. Was there
5. there weren't
6. There wasn't
7. Were there
8. There wasn't
9. There was
10. there weren't

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

39.3
2. There are
3. There was
4. There's/There is
5. There's been/There has been *or* There was
6. there was
7. there will be
8. there were . . . there are
9. There have been
10. there will be *or* there are

UNIT 40

40.1
2. It's cold.
3. It's windy.
4. It's sunny/clear. *or* It's a nice day.
5. It's snowing.
6. It's cloudy.

40.2
2. It's / It is
3. Is it
4. is it . . . it's / it is
5. It's / It is
6. Is it
7. is it
8. It's / It is
9. It's / It is

40.3
2. How far is it from the hotel to the beach?
3. How far is it from New York to Washington?
4. How far is it from your house to the airport?

40.4
3. It
4. It . . . It
5. There
6. it
7. It . . . there
8. It

40.5
2. It's nice to see you again
3. It's impossible to work in this office
4. It's easy to make friends
5. It's interesting to visit different places
6. It's dangerous to go out alone

UNIT 41

41.1
2. is
3. can
4. has
5. will
6. was

41.2
2. 'm not
3. weren't
4. haven't
5. isn't
6. hasn't

41.3
3. doesn't
4. do
5. did
6. does
7. don't
8. didn't

41.4
Example answers:
2. I like sports, but my sister doesn't.
3. I don't eat meat, but Jenny does.
4. I'm American, but my husband isn't.
5. I haven't been to Japan, but Jenny has.

41.5
2. wasn't
3. is
4. does
5. can't
6. did
7. has
8. do
9. hasn't
10. will
11. might

41.6
2. Yes, I do. *or* No, I don't.
3. Yes, I do. *or* No, I don't.
4. Yes, it is. *or* No, it isn't.
5. Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
6. Yes, I do. *or* No, I don't.
7. Yes, I will. *or* No, I won't.
8. Yes, I have. *or* No, I haven't.
9. Yes, I did. *or* No, I didn't.
10. Yes, I was. *or* No, I wasn't.

UNIT 42

42.1
2. You do?
3. You didn't?
4. She doesn't?
5. I do?
6. She did?

42.2
3. You have?
4. She can't?
5. You were?
6. You didn't?
7. There is?
8. You aren't?
9. You did?
10. She does?
11. You won't?
12. It isn't?

42.3
2. aren't they
3. wasn't she
4. haven't you
5. don't you
6. doesn't he
7. won't you

42.4
2. are you
3. isn't she
4. can't you
5. do you
6. didn't she
7. was it
8. doesn't she
9. will you

UNIT 43

43.1
2. either
3. too
4. too
5. either
6. either
7. too

43.2
2. So am I.
3. So have I.
4. So do I.
5. So will I.
6. So was I.
7. Neither can I.
8. Neither did I.
9. Neither have I.
10. Neither am I.
11. Neither do I.

43.3
1. So am I.
2. So can I. *or* I can't.
3. Neither am I. *or* I am.
4. So do I. *or* I don't.
5. Neither do I. *or* I do.
6. So did I. *or* I didn't.
7. Neither have I. *or* I have.
8. Neither do I. *or* I do.
9. So am I. *or* I'm not.
10. Neither was I. *or* I was.
11. Neither did I. *or* I did.
12. So do I. *or* I don't.

UNIT 44

44.1
2. They aren't / They're not married.
3. I haven't had dinner.
4. It isn't cold today.
5. We won't be late.
6. You shouldn't go.

44.2
2. I don't like cheese.
3. They didn't understand.
4. He doesn't live here.
5. Don't go away!
6. I didn't do the dishes.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

44.3
2. They haven't arrived.
3. I didn't go to the bank.
4. He doesn't speak Japanese.
5. We weren't angry.
6. He won't be happy.
7. Don't call me tonight.
8. It didn't rain yesterday.
9. I couldn't hear them.
10. I don't believe you.

44.4
2. 'm not / am not
3. can't
4. doesn't
5. isn't / 's not
6. don't . . . haven't
7. Don't
8. didn't
9. haven't
10. won't
11. didn't
12. weren't
13. hasn't
14. shouldn't

44.5
3. He wasn't born in Los Angeles.
4. He doesn't like Los Angeles.
5. He'd like to live someplace else.
6. He can drive.
7. He hasn't traveled abroad.
8. He doesn't read the newspaper.
9. He isn't interested in politics.
10. He usually watches TV at night.
11. He didn't watch TV last night.
12. He went out last night.

UNIT 45

45.1
3. Were you late this morning?
4. Has Kate seen that movie?
5. Will you be here tomorrow?
6. Is Paul going out tonight?
7. Do you like your job?
8. Does Nicole live near here?
9. Did you enjoy the movie?
10. Did you have a good vacation?

45.2
2. Do you use it a lot?
3. Did you use it yesterday?
4. Do you enjoy driving?
5. Are you a good driver?
6. Have you ever had an accident?

45.3
3. What are the children doing?
4. How is cheese made?
5. Is your sister coming to the party?
6. Why don't you tell the truth?
7. Have your guests arrived yet?
8. What time does your plane leave?
9. Why didn't Jenny go to work?
10. Was your car damaged in the accident?

45.4
3. What are you reading?
4. What time did she go to bed?
5. When are they going (on vacation)?
6. Where did you see him?
7. Why can't you come (to the party)?
8. Where has she moved?
9. How much (money) do you need?
10. Why doesn't she like you?
11. How often does it rain?
12. When did you do it? / . . . the shopping?

UNIT 46

46.1
2. What fell off the shelf?
3. Who wants to see me?
4. Who took your umbrella? / Who took it?
5. What made you sick?
6. Who is / Who's coming?

46.2
3. Who did you call?
4. What happened last night?
5. Who knows the answer?
6. Who did the dishes?
7. What did Jane do? / What did she do?
8. What woke you up?
9. Who saw the accident?
10. Who did you see?
11. Who has your pen? / Who has it?
12. What does this word mean? / What does it mean?

46.3
2. Who called you? What did she want?
3. Who did you ask? What did he say?
4. Who got married? Who told you?
5. Who did you meet? What did she tell you?
6. Who won? What did you do (after the game)?
7. Who gave you a/the book? What did Catherine give you?

UNIT 47

47.1
2. What are you looking for?
3. Who did you go to the movies with?
4. What/Who was the movie about?
5. Who did you give the money to?
6. Who was the book written by?

47.2
2. What are they looking at?
3. Which restaurant is he going to?
4. What are they talking about?
5. What is she listening to?
6. Which bus are they waiting for?

47.3
2. Which hotel did you stay at?
3. Which team does he belong to / play for?
4. Which school did you go to?

47.4
2. What is the food like?
3. What are the people like?
4. What is the weather like?

47.5
2. What was the movie like?
3. What were the classes like?
4. What was the hotel like?

UNIT 48

48.1
3. What color is it?
4. What time did you get up?
5. What type of music do you like?
6. What kind of car do you want (to buy)?

48.2
2. Which coat
3. Which movie/film
4. Which bus

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

48.3

3. Which
4. What
5. What
6. Which
7. Which
8. Who
9. What
10. Which

48.4

2. How far
3. How old
4. How often
5. How deep
6. How long

48.5

2. How heavy is this box?
3. How old are you?
4. How much did you spend?
5. How often do you watch TV?
6. How far is it from New York to Los Angeles?

UNIT 49

49.1

2. How long does it take to get from Houston to Mexico City by car?
3. How long does it take to get from Tokyo to Kyoto by train?
4. How long does it take to get from Kennedy Airport to Manhattan by bus?

49.2

Example answers:

2. It takes . . . hours to fly from . . . to Australia.
3. It takes . . . years to become a doctor in . . . .
4. It takes . . . to walk from my home to the nearest supermarket.
5. It takes . . . to get from my house to the nearest airport.

49.3

2. How long did it take you to walk to the station?
3. How long did it take him to paint the bathroom?
4. How long did it take you to learn to ski?
5. How long did it take them to repair the computer?

49.4

2. It took us 20 minutes to walk home. / . . . to get home.
3. It took me six months to learn to drive.
4. It took Mark/him three hours to drive to Houston. / . . . to get to Houston.
5. It took Lisa/her a long time to find a job. / . . . to get a job.
6. It took me . . . to . . .

UNIT 50

50.1

2. I don't know where she is.
3. I don't know how old it is.
4. I don't know when he'll be here.
5. I don't know why he was angry.
6. I don't know how long she has lived here.

50.2

2. where Susan works
3. what Peter said
4. why he went home early
5. what time the meeting begins
6. how the accident happened

50.3

2. are you
3. they are
4. the museum is
5. do you want
6. elephants eat
7. it is

50.4

2. Do you know if/whether they are married?
3. Do you know if/whether Sue knows Bill?
4. Do you know if/whether Gary will be here tomorrow?
5. Do you know if/whether he passed his exam?

50.5

2. Do you know where Paula is?
3. Do you know if/whether she is working today? / . . . she's working today?
4. Do you know what time she starts work?
5. Do you know if/whether the banks are open tomorrow?
6. Do you know where Sarah and Tim live?
7. Do you know if/whether they went to Jane's party?

50.6

Example answers:

2. Do you know what time the bus leaves?
3. Excuse me, can you tell me where the station is?
4. I don't know what I'm going to do tonight.
5. Do you know if there's a restaurant near here?
6. Do you know how much it costs to rent a car?

UNIT 51

51.1

2. She said (that) she was very busy.
3. She said (that) she couldn't go to the party.
4. He said (that) he had to go out.
5. He said (that) he was learning Russian.
6. She said (that) she didn't feel very well.
7. They said (that) they would be home late. / . . . they'd be . . .
8. She said (that) she had just gotten back from vacation. / . . . she'd just gotten back . . .
9. She said (that) she was going to buy a new computer.
10. They said (that) they didn't have a key.

51.2

2. She said (that) she wasn't hungry.
3. He said (that) he needed it.
4. She said (that) she didn't want to go.
5. She said (that) I could have it.
6. He said (that) he would send me a postcard. / . . . he'd send . . .
7. Linda said (that) he had gone home. / . . . he'd gone home.
8. He said (that) he wanted to watch TV.
9. She said (that) she was going to the movies.

51.3

3. said
4. told
5. tell
6. say
7. said
8. told
9. tell
10. say

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 52

52.1
3. call
4. call Paul
5. to call Paul
6. to call Paul
7. call Paul
8. to call Paul
9. call Paul
10. call Paul

52.2
3. get
4. going
5. watch
6. flying
7. listening
8. eat
9. waiting
10. wear
11. doing . . . staying

52.3
4. to go
5. rain
6. to leave
7. help
8. studying
9. to go
10. wearing
11. to stay
12. taking
13. to have
14. hear
15. go
16. listening
17. to make
18. to be . . . take
19. use

UNIT 53

53.1
3. to see
4. to swim
5. cleaning
6. to ask
7. visiting
8. going
9. to be
10. waiting
11. to do
12. to speak
13. to go
14. crying / to cry
15. to work . . . talking

53.2
2. to help
3. to see
4. reading
5. to lose
6. to send
7. raining
8. to go
9. watching / to watch
10. to wait

53.3
2. going / to go to museums
3. to go
4. writing / to write e-mails
5. to go (there)
6. traveling by train
7. walking

53.4
Example answers:
1. I enjoy cooking.
2. I don't like driving / to drive.
3. If it's a nice day tomorrow, I'd like to have a picnic by the lake.
4. When I'm on vacation, I like to do very little.
5. I don't mind traveling alone, but I prefer to travel with somebody.
6. I wouldn't like to live in a big city.

UNIT 54

54.1
2. I want you to listen carefully.
3. I don't want you to be angry.
4. Do you want me to wait for you?
5. I don't want you to call me tonight.
6. I want you to meet Sarah.

54.2
2. A woman told me to turn left after the bridge.
3. I advised him to go to the doctor.
4. She asked me to help her.
5. I told him to come back in 10 minutes.
6. Paul let me use his phone.
7. I told her not to call before 8:00.
8. Ann's mother taught her to play the piano.

54.3
2. to repeat
3. wait
4. to arrive
5. to get
6. go
7. borrow
8. to tell
9. to make (*or* to get)
10. think

UNIT 55

55.1
2.–4.

I went to a coffee shop to meet a friend.
I went to the drugstore to get some medicine.
I went to the supermarket to buy some food.

55.2
2. to read the newspaper
3. to open this door
4. to get some fresh air
5. to wake him up
6. to see who it was

55.3
Example answers:
2. to talk to you now
3. to tell her about the party
4. to do some shopping
5. to buy a car

55.4
2. to
3. to
4. for
5. to
6. for
7. to
8. to
9. for
10. for
11. to . . . for

55.5
2. for the movie to begin
3. for it to arrive
4. for you to tell me

UNIT 56

56.1
3. to
4. to
5. – *(no preposition)*
6. for
7. to
8. on . . . to
9. for
10. on
11. to
12. – *(no preposition)*
13. on
14. for
15. on

56.2
2. went fishing
3. goes swimming
4. going skiing
5. go shopping
6. went jogging/running

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

56.3
2. to college
3. shopping
4. to bed
5. home
6. skiing
7. riding
8. for a walk
9. on vacation . . . to Hawaii

UNIT 57

57.1
2. get your jacket
3. get a doctor
4. get another one
5. gets the job
6. get some milk
7. get a ticket
8. gets a good salary
9. get a lot of rain
10. get a new computer

57.2
2. getting dark
3. getting married
4. getting ready
5. getting late

57.3
2. get wet
3. got married
4. gets angry
5. got lost
6. get old
7. got better

57.4
2. got to New York at 12:00.
3. I left the party at 11:15 and got home at midnight.
4. *(Example answer)* I left home at 8:30 and got to the airport at 10:00.

57.5
2. got off
3. got out of
4. got on

UNIT 58

58.1
2. do
3. make
4. made
5. did
6. do
7. done
8. make
9. making
10. do
11. doing

58.2
2. They're/They are doing (their) homework.
3. He's/He is doing the shopping *or* He is shopping.
4. They're/They are doing (their) laundry.
5. She's/She is making a phone call.
6. He's/He is making the/his bed.
7. She's/She is doing/washing the dishes.
8. He's/He is making a (shopping) list.
9. They're/They are making a movie.
10. He's/He is taking a picture/photograph.

58.3
2. make
3. do
4. done
5. made
6. did
7. do
8. make
9. do
10. making
11. made
12. make . . . do

UNIT 59

59.1
3. He doesn't have / He hasn't got
4. Gary had
5. Do you have / Have you got
6. we didn't have
7. She doesn't have / She hasn't got
8. Did you have

59.2
2. She's/She is having a cup of tea.
3. He's/He is having breakfast.
4. They're/They are having fun.
5. They're/They are having dinner.
6. They're having an argument.

59.3
3. Have a good/great trip!
4. Did you have a nice/good weekend?
5. Did you have a nice/good vacation?
6. Have a great/good time! *or* Have fun!
7. Are you going to have a (birthday) party?

59.4
2. have something to eat
3. had a glass of water
4. had a bad dream
5. had an accident
6. have a baby

UNIT 60

60.1
2. him
3. them
4. her
5. him
6. them
7. her

60.2
2. I . . . them
3. he . . . her
4. they . . . us
5. we . . . him
6. she . . . them
7. they . . . me
8. she . . . you

60.3
2. him
3. like it
4. you like it
5. don't like her
6. Do you like them?

60.4
2. him
3. them
4. they
5. us
6. it
7. She
8. them
9. me
10. her
11. them
12. he . . . it

60.5
2. Can you give it to him?
3. Can you give them to her?
4. Can you give it to me?
5. Can you give it to them?
6. Can you give them to us?

UNIT 61

61.1
2. her
3. our hands
4. his hands
5. their hands
6. your hands

61.2
2. They live with their parents.
3. We live with our parents.
4. Jane lives with her parents.
5. I live with my parents.
6. John lives with his parents.
7. Do you live with your parents?
8. Most children live with their parents.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

61.3
2. their
3. his
4. his
5. her
6. their
7. her
8. their

61.4
2. his
3. Their
4. our
5. her
6. my
7. your
8. her
9. their
10. my
11. Its
12. His . . . his

61.5
2. my key
3. Her husband
4. your coat
5. their homework
6. his name
7. Our house

UNIT 62

62.1
2. mine
3. ours
4. hers
5. theirs
6. yours
7. mine
8. his

62.2
2. yours
3. my . . . Mine
4. Yours . . . mine
5. her
6. My . . . hers
7. their
8. Ours

62.3
3. friend of hers
4. friends of ours
5. friend of mine
6. friend of his
7. friends of yours

62.4
2. Whose camera is this?
   It's hers.
3. Whose gloves are these?
   They're mine.
4. Whose hat is this?
   It's his.
5. Whose money is this?
   It's yours.
6. Whose books are these?
   They're ours.

UNIT 63

63.1
2. Yes, I know **her**, but I can't remember **her name**.
3. Yes, **I know them**, but **I can't remember their** names.
4. Yes, **I know you**, but **I can't remember your name**.

63.2
2. He invited us to stay with **him** at his house.
3. They invited me to stay with **them at their** house.
4. I invited them to stay **with me at my** house.
5. She invited us to stay **with her at her house**.
6. Did you invite him to **stay with you at your** house?

63.3
2. I gave her my address, and she gave me **hers**.
3. He gave me his address, and I gave **him mine**.
4. We gave them **our** address, and they gave **us theirs**.
5. She gave him **her** address, and he gave **her his**.
6. You gave us **your** address, and we gave **you ours**.
7. They gave you **their** address, and you gave **them yours**.

63.4
2. them
3. him
4. our
5. yours
6. us
7. her
8. their
9. mine

UNIT 64

64.1
2. myself
3. herself
4. themselves
5. myself
6. himself
7. yourself
8. yourselves

64.2
2. When I saw him, he **was by himself**.
3. Don't **go out by yourself**.
4. I **went to the movies by myself**.
5. My sister **lives by herself**.
6. Many people **live by themselves**.

64.3
2. They can't see each other.
3. They call each other a lot.
4. They don't know each other.
5. They're / They are sitting next to each other.
6. They gave each other presents / a present.

64.4
3. each other
4. yourselves
5. us
6. ourselves
7. each other
8. each other
9. them
10. themselves

UNIT 65

65.1
3. Blanca is **Pedro's** wife.
4. Alberto is Julia's **brother**.
5. Alberto is **Daniel's** uncle.
6. Julia is **Paul's** wife.
7. Blanca is Daniel's **grandmother**.
8. Julia is Alberto's **sister**.
9. Paul is **Julia's** husband.
10. Paul is Daniel's **father**.
11. Daniel is **Alberto's** nephew.

65.2
2. Andy's
3. Dave's
4. Jane's
5. Diane's
6. Alice's

65.3
3. *OK*
4. Simon's phone number
5. My brother's job
6. *OK*
7. *OK*
8. Paula's favorite color
9. your mother's birthday
10. My parents' house
11. *OK*
12. *OK*
13. Sylvia's party
14. *OK*

UNIT 66

66.1
2. a
3. a
4. an
5. a
6. an
7. a
8. an
9. an

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

66.2
2. a vegetable
3. a game
4. a tool
5. a mountain
6. a planet
7. a fruit
8. a river
9. a flower
10. a musical instrument

66.3
2. He's a sales clerk.
3. She's an architect.
4. He's a taxi driver.
5. He's an electrician.
6. She's a photographer.
7. She's a nurse.
8. I'm a/an . . .

66.4
2.–8.

Tom never wears **a** hat.
I can't ride **a** bicycle.
My brother is **an** artist.
Rebecca works in **an** office.
Jane wants to learn **a** foreign language.
Mike lives in **an** old house.
Tonight I'm going to **a** party.

UNIT 67

67.1
2. boats
3. women
4. cities
5. umbrellas
6. addresses
7. knives
8. sandwiches
9. families
10. feet
11. holidays
12. potatoes

67.2
2. teeth
3. people
4. children
5. fish
6. leaves

67.3
3. . . . with a lot of beautiful **trees**.
4. . . . with two **men**.
5. *OK*
6. . . . three **children**.
7. Most of my **friends** are **students**.
8. He put on his **pajamas** . . .
9. *OK*
10. Do you know many **people** . . .
11. I like your **pants**. Where did you get **them**?
12. . . . full of **tourists**.
13. *OK*
14. **These scissors aren't** . . .

67.4
2. are
3. don't
4. watch
5. were
6. live
7. Do
8. are
9. them
10. some

UNIT 68

68.1
3. a pitcher
4. water
5. toothpaste
6. a toothbrush
7. an egg
8. money
9. a wallet
10. sand
11. a bucket
12. an envelope

68.2
3. . . . **a** hat.
4. . . . **a** job?
5. *OK*
6. . . . **an** apple . . .
7. . . . **a** party . . .
8. . . . **a** wonderful thing.
9. . . . **an** island.
10. . . . **a** key.
11. *OK*
12. . . . **a** good idea.
13. . . . **a** car?
14. . . . **a** cup of coffee?
15. *OK*
16. . . . **a** coat.

68.3
2. a piece of wood
3. a glass of water
4. a bar of soap
5. a cup of tea
6. a piece of paper
7. a bowl of soup
8. a loaf of bread
9. a jar of honey

UNIT 69

69.1
2. I bought a newspaper (*or* a paper), some flowers (or *a* bunch of flowers), and a pen.
3. I bought some stamps, some postcards, and some bread (*or* a loaf of bread).
4. I bought some toothpaste, some soap (*or* a bar of soap), and a comb.

69.2
2. Would you like some coffee? (*or* . . . a cup of coffee?)
3. Would you like some cookies? (*or* . . . a cookie?)
4. Would you like some bread? (*or* . . . a piece of bread? / a slice of bread?)
5. Would you like a sandwich?
6. Would you like some cake? (*or* . . . a piece of cake? / a slice of cake?)

69.3
2. some . . . some
3. some
4. a . . . some
5. an . . . some
6. a . . . a . . . some
7. some
8. some
9. some . . . a

69.4
2. eyes
3. hair
4. information
5. chairs
6. furniture
7. job
8. wonderful weather

UNIT 70

70.1
3. a
4. the
5. an
6. the . . . the
7. a . . . a
8. a . . . a

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

9. . . . a student . . . a journalist . . . **an** apartment near **the** college . . . **The** apartment is . . .
10. . . . two children, **a** boy and **a** girl. **The** boy is seven years old, and **the** girl is three . . . in **a** factory . . . doesn't have **a** job . . .

70.2
2. **the** airport
3. **a** cup
4. **a** nice picture
5. **the** dictionary
6. **the** floor

70.3
2. . . . send me **a** postcard.
3. What is **the** name of . . .
4. . . . **a** very big country.
5. What is **the** largest . . .
6. . . . **the** color of **the** carpet.
7. . . . **a** headache.
8. . . . **an** old house near **the** station.
9. . . . **the** name of **the** director of **the** movie . . .

UNIT 71

71.1
3. . . . **the** second floor.
4. . . . **the** moon?
5. . . . **the** best hotel in this town?
6. *OK*
7. . . . **the** football stadium.
8. . . . **the** end of May.
9. *OK*
10. . . . **the** first time I met her.
11. *OK*
12. **The** Internet is a good place to get information.
13. *OK*
14. . . . on **the** top shelf on **the** right.
15. . . . in **the** country about 10 miles from **the** nearest town.

71.2
2. the same time
3. the same age
4. the same color
5. the same problem

71.3
2. **the** guitar
3. breakfast
4. television/TV
5. **the** ocean
6. **the** bottom

71.4
2. **the** name
3. **The** sky
4. television
5. **The** police
6. **the** capital
7. lunch
8. **the** middle

UNIT 72

72.1
2. **the** movies
3. **the** hospital
4. **the** airport
5. home
6. jail/prison

72.2
3. school
4. **the** station
5. home
6. bed
7. **the** post office

72.3
2. **the** movies
3. go to bed
4. go to jail/prison
5. go to **the** dentist
6. go to college
7. go to **the** hospital / are taken to **the** hospital

72.4
3. **the** doctor
4. *OK*
5. *OK*
6. *OK*
7. **the** bank
8. *OK*
9. *OK*
10. *OK*
11. **the** station
12. *OK*
13. **the** hospital
14. *OK*
15. **the** theater

UNIT 73

73.1
Example answers:
2. I don't like dogs.
3. I hate museums.
4. I love big cities.
5. Tennis is all right.
6. I love chocolate.
7. I don't like computer games.
8. I hate parties.

73.2
Example answers:
2. I'm not interested in politics.
3. I know a lot about sports.
4. I don't know much about art.
5. I don't know anything about astronomy.
6. I know a little about economics.

73.3
3. friends
4. parties
5. **The** stores
6. **the** milk
7. milk
8. basketball
9. computers
10. **The** water
11. cold water
12. **the** salt
13. **the** people
14. Vegetables
15. **The** houses
16. **the** words
17. pictures
18. **the** pictures
19. English . . . international business
20. Money . . . happiness

UNIT 74

74.1
3. Sweden
4. **The** Amazon
5. Asia
6. **The** Pacific
7. **The** Rhine
8. Kenya
9. **The** United States
10. **The** Andes
11. Bangkok
12. **The** Alps
13. **The** Red Sea
14. Jamaica
15. **The** Bahamas

74.2
3. *OK*
4. **the** Philippines
5. **the** south of France

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

6. **the** Washington Monument
7. *OK*
8. **the** Museum of Art
9. *OK*
10. Belgium is smaller than **the** Netherlands.
11. **the** Mississippi . . . **the** Nile
12. **the** National Gallery
13. **the** Park Hotel near Central Park
14. *OK*
15. **The** Rocky Mountains are in North America.
16. *OK*
17. **the** United Kingdom
18. **the** west of Ireland
19. **the** University of Michigan
20. **The** Panama Canal joins **the** Atlantic Ocean and **the** Pacific Ocean.

UNIT 75

75.1
2. that house
3. these postcards
4. those birds
5. this seat
6. These plates

75.2
2. Is that your umbrella?
3. Is this your book?
4. Are those your books?
5. Is that your bicycle/bike?
6. Are these your keys?
7. Are those your keys?
8. Is this your watch?
9. Are those your glasses?
10. Are these your gloves?

75.3
2. that's
3. This is
4. That's
5. that
6. this is
7. That's
8. that's

UNIT 76

76.1
2. I don't need one
3. I'm going to get one
4. I don't have one
5. I just had one
6. there's one on First Avenue

76.2
2. a new one
3. a better one
4. an old one
5. a big one
6. a different one

76.3
2. Which ones?
   The green ones.
3. Which one?
   The one with a/the red door.
4. Which ones?
   The ones on the top shelf.
5. Which one?
   The black one.
6. Which one?
   The one on the wall.
7. Which one?
   The tall one with long hair.
8. Which ones?
   The yellow ones.
9. Which one?
   The one with a/the mustache and glasses.
10. Which ones?
    The ones I took at the party last week.

UNIT 77

77.1
2. some
3. any
4. any
5. any
6. some
7. any
8. some
9. some
10. any . . . any
11. some . . . any
12. some

77.2
2. some questions
3. any pictures
4. any foreign languages
5. some friends
6. some milk
7. any batteries
8. some fresh air
9. some fruit
10. any help

77.3
3. I've got some / I have some
4. I don't have any
5. I didn't buy any
6. I bought some
7. I didn't make any

77.4
2. something
3. anything
4. anything
5. Somebody/Someone
6. anything
7. anybody/anyone
8. something
9. anything
10. anybody/anyone

UNIT 78

78.1
2. There are no stores near here.
3. Carla has no free time.
4. There is no light in this room.
6. There isn't any milk in the fridge.
7. There aren't any buses today.
8. Tom doesn't have any brothers or sisters.

78.2
2. any
3. any
4. no
5. any
6. no
7. any
8. no
9. any
10. no
11. None
12. any

78.3
2. no money
3. any questions
4. no friends
5. no difference
6. any furniture
7. no answer
8. any air conditioning
9. no line

78.4
Example answers:
2. Three.
3. Two cups.
4. None.
5. None.

UNIT 79

79.1
2. There's nobody in the office.
3. I have nothing to do.
4. There's nothing on TV.
5. There was no one at home.
6. We found nothing.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

79.2

2. There wasn't anybody on the bus.
3. I don't have anything to read.
4. I don't have anyone to help me.
5. She didn't hear anything.
6. We don't have anything for dinner.

79.3

3a. Nothing.
4a. Nobody./No one.
5a. Nobody./No one.
6a. Nothing.
7a. Nothing.
8a. Nobody./No one.
3b. I don't want anything.
4b. I didn't meet anybody/anyone.
5b. Nobody/No one knows the answer.
6b. I didn't buy anything.
7b. Nothing happened.
8b. Nobody/No one was late.

79.4

3. anything
4. Nobody/No one
5. Nothing
6. anything
7. anybody/anyone
8. nothing
9. anything
10. anything
11. nobody / no one
12. anything
13. Nothing
14. Nobody/No one . . . anybody/anyone

UNIT 80

80.1

2. something
3. somewhere
4. somebody/someone

80.2

2a. Nowhere.
3a. Nothing.
4a. Nobody./No one.
2b. I'm not going anywhere.
3b. I don't want anything.
4b. I'm not looking for anybody/anyone.

80.3

3. anything
4. anything
5. somebody/someone
6. something
7. anybody/anyone . . . nobody/no one
8. anything
9. Nobody/No one
10. anybody/anyone
11. Nothing
12. anywhere
13. somewhere
14. anything
15. anybody/anyone

80.4

2. anything to eat
3. nothing to do
4. anywhere to sit
5. something to drink
6. nowhere to park
7. something to read
8. somewhere to stay

UNIT 81

81.1

2. Every day
3. every time
4. Every room
5. every word

81.2

2. every day
3. all day
4. every day
5. all day
6. all day
7. every day

81.3

2. every
3. all
4. all
5. Every
6. all
7. every
8. all
9. every

81.4

2. everything
3. Everybody/Everyone
4. everything
5. everywhere
6. Everybody/Everyone
7. everywhere
8. Everything

81.5

2. is
3. has
4. likes
5. has *or* is
6. was
7. makes
8. Is . . . Does

UNIT 82

82.1

3. Some
4. Most of
5. most
6. any of
7. all *or* all of
8. None of
9. any of
10. Most
11. most of
12. Some
13. All *or* All of
14. some of
15. most of

82.2

2. All of them.
3. Some of them.
4. None of them.
5. Most of them.
6. None of it.

82.3

3. Some people . . .
4. Some of **the** questions . . . *or* Some questions . . .
5. *OK*
6. All insects . . .
7. *OK* (*or* . . . all **of** these books)
8. Most of **the** students . . . *or* Most students . . .
9. *OK*
10. . . . most of **the** night

UNIT 83

83.1

3. Both
4. Neither
5. Neither
6. both
7. Either
8. neither of
9. Neither
10. either of
11. Both
12. neither of
13. Both
14. either of

83.2

2. Both windows are open.
3. Neither man is wearing a hat. *or* Neither of them is wearing . . .
4. Both men have (got) beards. *or* Both of them have . . .
5. Both buses go to the airport. *or* . . . are going to the airport.
6. Neither answer is right.

83.3

3. Both of them are students.
4. Neither of them has a car.
5. Both of them live in Boston.
6. Both of them like to cook.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

7. Neither of them can play the piano.
8. Both of them read the newspaper.
9. Neither of them is interested in sports.

UNIT 84

84.1
2. many
3. much
4. many
5. many
6. much
7. much
8. many
9. How many
10. How much
11. How much
12. How many

84.2
2. much time
3. many countries
4. many people
5. much luggage
6. many times

84.3
2. a lot of interesting things
3. a lot of accidents
4. a lot of fun
5. a lot of traffic

84.4
3. a lot of snow
4. *OK*
5. a lot of money
6. *OK*
7. *OK*
8. a lot

84.5
3. She plays tennis a lot.
4. He doesn't use his car much. (*or* . . . a lot.)
5. He doesn't go out much. (*or* . . . a lot.)
6. She travels a lot.

UNIT 85

85.1
2. a few
3. a little
4. a few
5. a little
6. a few

85.2
2. a little milk
3. A few days
4. a little Russian
5. a few friends
6. a few times
7. a few chairs
8. a little fresh air

85.3
2. very little coffee
3. very little rain
4. very few hotels
5. very little time
6. Very few people
7. very little work

85.4
2. A few
3. a little
4. little
5. few
6. a little
7. little

85.5
2. . . . **a** little luck
3. . . . **a** few things
4. *OK*
5. . . . **a** few questions
6. . . . **few** people
7. *OK*

UNIT 86

86.1
2. I like that green jacket.
3. Do you like classical music?
4. I had a wonderful trip.
5. We went to a Japanese restaurant.

86.2
2. dark clouds
3. long vacation
4. hot water
5. fresh air
6. sharp knife
7. dangerous job

86.3
2. It looks new.
3. I feel sick.
4. You look surprised.
5. They smell nice.
6. It tastes terrible.

86.4
2. It doesn't look new.
3. You don't sound American.
4. I don't feel cold.
5. They don't look heavy.
6. Maybe, but it doesn't taste good.

UNIT 87

87.1
2. badly
3. quietly
4. angrily
5. fast
6. dangerously

87.2
2. work hard
3. sleep well
4. win easily
5. Think carefully
6. know her very well
7. explain things clearly/well
8. Come quickly

87.3
2. angry
3. slowly
4. slow
5. careful
6. hard
7. suddenly
8. quiet
9. badly
10. nice *(See Unit 86C.)*
11. quickly

87.4
2. well
3. good
4. well
5. well
6. good . . . good

UNIT 88

88.1
2. bigger
3. slower
4. more expensive
5. higher
6. more dangerous

88.2
2. stronger
3. happier
4. more modern
5. more important
6. better
7. larger
8. more serious
9. prettier
10. more crowded

88.3
2. hotter/warmer
3. more expensive
4. worse
5. farther
6. more difficult *or* harder

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

88.4

3. taller
4. harder
5. more comfortable
6. better
7. nicer
8. heavier
9. more interested
10. warmer
11. better
12. bigger
13. more beautiful
14. sharper
15. more polite
16. worse

UNIT 89

89.1

3. Liz is taller than Ben.
4. Liz starts work earlier than Ben.
5. Ben works harder than Liz.
6. Ben has more money than Liz.
7. Liz is a better driver than Ben.
8. Ben is more patient than Liz.
9. Ben is a better dancer than Liz. / Ben dances better than Liz.
10. Liz is more intelligent than Ben.
11. Liz speaks Spanish better than Ben. / Liz speaks better Spanish than Ben. / Liz's Spanish is better than Ben's.
12. Ben goes to the movies more than Liz. / . . . more often than Liz.

89.2

2. You're older than her. / . . . than she is.
3. You work harder than me. / . . . than I do.
4. You watch TV more than him. / . . . than he does.
5. You're a better cook than me. / . . . than I am. *or* You cook better than me. / . . . than I do.
6. You know more people than us. / . . . than we do.
7. You have more money than them. / . . . than they do.
8. You can run faster than me. / . . . than I can.
9. You've been here longer than her. / . . . than she has.
10. You got up earlier than them. / . . . than they did.
11. You were more surprised than him. / . . . than he was.

89.3

2. Jack's mother is much younger than his father.
3. My camera cost a little more than yours. / . . . than your camera. *or* My camera was a little more expensive than . . .
4. I feel much better today than yesterday. / . . . than I did yesterday. / . . . than I felt yesterday.
5. It's a little warmer today than yesterday. / . . . than it was yesterday.
6. Sarah is a much better volleyball player than me / . . . than I am. *or* Sarah is much better at volleyball than me / . . . than I am. *or* Sarah plays volleyball much better than me / . . . than I do.

UNIT 90

90.1

2. A is longer than B, but not as long as C.
3. C is heavier than A, but not as heavy as B.
4. A is older than C, but not as old as B.
5. B has more money than C, but not as much as A. *or* . . . but less (money) than A.
6. C works harder than A, but not as hard as B.

90.2

2. Your room isn't as big as mine. / . . . as my room.
3. I didn't get up as early as you. / . . . as you did.
4. They didn't play as well as us. / . . . as we did.
5. You haven't been here as long as me. / . . . as I have.
6. He isn't as nervous as her. / . . . as she is.

90.3

2. as
3. than
4. than
5. as
6. than
7. as
8. than

90.4

2. Julia lives on the same street as Laura.
3. Julia got up at the same time as Andy.
4. Andy's car is the same color as Laura's.

UNIT 91

91.1

2. C is longer than A.
   D is the longest.
   B is the shortest.
3. D is younger than C.
   C is the oldest.
   B is the youngest.
4. D is more expensive than A.
   C is the most expensive.
   A is the cheapest.
5. A is better than C.
   A is the best.
   D is the worst.

91.2

2. the happiest day
3. the best movie
4. the most popular singer
5. the worst mistake
6. the prettiest city
7. the coldest day
8. the most boring person

91.3

2. Everest is the highest mountain in the world.

3.–6.

Brazil is the largest country in South America.

Alaska is the largest state in the United States.

The Nile is the longest river in Africa. / . . . in the world.

Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system.

UNIT 92

92.1

2. enough chairs
3. enough paint
4. enough wind

92.2

2. The car isn't big enough.
3. His legs aren't long enough.
4. He isn't strong enough.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

92.3
3. old enough
4. enough time
5. big enough
6. eat enough
7. enough space
8. tired enough
9. practice enough

92.4
2. sharp enough to cut
3. warm enough to go
4. enough bread to make
5. well enough to win
6. enough time to read

UNIT 93

93.1
2. too heavy
3. too low
4. too fast
5. too big
6. too crowded

93.2
3. enough
4. too many
5. too
6. enough
7. too much
8. enough
9. too
10. too many
11. too much

93.3
3. It's too far.
4. It's too expensive.
5. It isn't/It's not big enough.
6. It was too difficult.
7. It isn't/It's not good enough.
8. I'm too busy.
9. It was too long.

93.4
2. It's too early to go to bed.
3. They're too young to get married.
4. It's too dangerous to go out at night.
5. It's too late to call Sue (now).
6. I was too surprised to say anything.

UNIT 94

94.1
3. I like this picture very much.
4. Tom started his new job last week.
5. *OK*
6. Jane bought a present for her friend. *or* Jane bought her friend a present.
7. I drink three cups of coffee every day.
8. *OK*
9. I borrowed 50 dollars from my brother.

94.2
2. I bought a new computer last week.
3. Paul finished his work quickly.
4. Emily doesn't speak French very well.
5. I did a lot of shopping yesterday.
6. Do you know New York well?
7. We enjoyed the party very much.
8. I explained the problem carefully.
9. We met some friends at the airport.
10. Did you buy that jacket in Canada?
11. We do the same thing every day.
12. I don't like football very much.

94.3
2. I arrived at the hotel early.
3. Julia goes to Puerto Rico every year.
4. We have lived here since 2002.
5. Sue was born in Florida in 1984.
6. Paul didn't go to work yesterday.
7. Helen went to a wedding last weekend.
8. I had my breakfast in bed this morning.
9. Barbara is going to college in September.
10. I saw a beautiful bird in the garden this morning.
11. My parents have been to Tokyo many times.
12. I left my umbrella in the restaurant last night.
13. Are you going to the movies tomorrow night?
14. I took the children to school this morning.

UNIT 95

95.1
2. He always gets up early.
3. He's/He is never late for work.
4. He sometimes gets angry.
5. He rarely goes swimming.
6. He's/He is usually at home in the evenings.

95.2
2. Susan is always polite.
3. I usually finish work at 5:00.
4. Sarah has just started a new job.
5. I rarely go to bed before midnight.
6. The bus isn't usually late.
7. I don't often eat fish.
8. I will never forget what you said.
9. Have you ever lost your passport?
10. Do you still work in the same place?
11. They always stay at the same hotel.
12. Jane doesn't usually work on Saturdays.
13. Is Tina already here?
14. What do you usually have for breakfast?
15. I can never remember his name.

95.3
2. Yes, and I also speak French.
3. Yes, and I'm also hungry.
4. Yes, and I've also been to Guatemala.
5. Yes, and I also bought some books.

95.4
1. They both play soccer.
They're / They are both students.
They've both got cars. / They both have cars.
2. They're / They are all married.
They were all born in Venezuela.
They all live in Miami.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 96

96.1

2. Do you still have an old car?
3. Are you still a student?
4. Are you still studying Japanese?
5. Do you still go to the movies a lot?
6. Do you still want to be a teacher?

96.2

2. He was looking for a job.
   He's/He is still looking (for a job).
   He hasn't found a job yet.
3. She was asleep.
   She's / She is still asleep.
   She hasn't woken up yet. /
   She isn't awake yet. *or*
   She hasn't gotten up yet. /
   She isn't up yet.
4. They were having dinner. /
   They were eating (dinner).
   They're / They are still having dinner. / . . . still eating (dinner).
   They haven't finished (dinner) yet. / They haven't finished eating (dinner) yet.

96.3

2. Is Helen here yet? *or* Has Helen arrived/come yet?
3. Have you gotten the results of your blood test yet? /
   Have you received the . . . /
   Do you have the . . .
4. Have you decided where to go (for vacation) yet? / Do you know where you're going (for vacation) yet?

96.4

3. She's/She has already gone/left.
4. I already have one. / I've already got one.
5. I've/I have already paid it. *or* I already paid it.
6. No, he already knows.

UNIT 97

97.1

2. He gave it to Gary.
3. He gave them to Sarah.
4. He gave it to his sister.
5. He gave them to Robert.
6. He gave it to a neighbor.

97.2

2. I gave Joanna a plant.
3. I gave Richard a tie.
4. I gave Emma some chocolates / a box of chocolates.
5. I gave Rachel some flowers / a bouquet of flowers.
6. I gave Kevin a pen.

97.3

2. Can you lend me an umbrella?
3. Can you give me your address?
4. Can you lend me 20 dollars?
5. Can you send me some information?
6. Can you show me the letter?
7. Can you get me some stamps?

97.4

2. lend you some money
3. send the letter to me
4. buy you a present
5. pass me the sugar
6. give it to her
7. showed the police officer my driver's license

UNIT 98

98.1

3.–7.

I went to the window and (I) looked out.

I wanted to call you, but I didn't have your number.

I jumped into the river and (I) swam to the other side.

I usually drive to work, but I went by bus this morning.

Do you want me to come with you, or should I wait here?

98.2

Example answers:

2. because it was raining. / because the weather was bad.
3. but it was closed.
4. so he didn't eat anything. / so he didn't want anything to eat.
5. because there was a lot of traffic. / because the traffic was bad.
6. good-bye, got into her car, and drove off/away.

98.3

Example answers:

3. I went to the movies, **but** the movie wasn't very good.
4. I went to a coffee shop **and** met some friends of mine.
5. There was a movie on television, **so** I watched it.
6. I got up in the middle of the night **because** I couldn't sleep.

UNIT 99

99.1

2. When I'm tired, I like to watch TV.
3. When I called her, there was no answer.
4. When I go on vacation, I always go to the same place.
5. When the program ended, I turned off the TV.
6. When I got to the hotel, there were no rooms.

99.2

2. when they heard the news.
3. they went to live in France.
4. while they were away.
5. before they came here
6. somebody broke into the house.
7. they didn't believe me.

99.3

2. I finish
3. it's
4. I'll be . . . she leaves
5. stops
6. We'll come . . . we're
7. I come . . . I'll bring
8. I'm
9. I'll give . . . I go
10. I'll tell . . . I'm

99.4

Example answers:

2. you finish your work
3. I'm going to buy a motorcycle
4. you get ready
5. I won't have much free time
6. I come back

UNIT 100

100.1

2. If you pass the driving test, you'll get your license.
3. If you fail the driving test, you can take it again.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

4. If you don't want this magazine, I'll throw it away.
5. If you want those pictures, you can have them.
6. If you're busy now, we can talk later.
7. If you're hungry, we can have lunch now.
8. If you need money, I can lend you some.

100.2
2. I give
3. is
4. I'll call
5. I'll be . . . get
6. Will you go . . . they invite

100.3
Example answers:
3. . . . you're busy.
4. . . . you'll feel better in the morning.
5. . . . you're not watching it.
6. . . . she doesn't practice.
7. . . . I'll go and see Chris.
8. . . . the weather is good.
9. . . . it rains today.

100.4
2. When
3. If
4. If
5. if
6. When
7. if
8. when . . . if

UNIT 101

101.1
3. wanted
4. had
5. were/was
6. didn't enjoy
7. could
8. tried
9. didn't have

101.2
3. I'd go / I would go
4. she knew
5. we had
6. you won
7. I wouldn't stay
8. we lived
9. It would be
10. the salary was/were
11. I wouldn't know
12. would you change

101.3
2. I'd watch it / I would watch it
3. we had some pictures on the wall
4. the air would be cleaner
5. every day was/were the same
6. I'd be bored / I would be bored
7. we had a bigger house / we bought a bigger house
8. we would/could buy a bigger house

101.4
Example answers:
2. I'd go to Antarctica
3. I didn't have any friends
4. I'd buy a house if I had enough money.
5. I'd try and help
6. there were no guns

UNIT 102

102.1
2. A butcher is a person who sells meat.
3. A musician is a person who plays a musical instrument.
4. A patient is a person who is sick in the hospital.
5. A dentist is a person who takes care of your teeth.
6. A fool is a person who does stupid things.
7. A genius is a person who is very intelligent.
8. A liar is a person who doesn't tell the truth.

102.2
2. The woman who opened the door was wearing a yellow dress.
3. Most of the students who took the test passed (it).
4. The police officer who stopped our car wasn't very friendly.

102.3

2. who	6. which
3. which	7. who
4. which	8. who
5. who	9. which

That *is also correct in all these sentences.*

102.4
3. . . . a machine **that/which** makes coffee.
4. *OK* (**which** *is also correct*)
5. . . . people **who/that** never stop talking.
6. *OK* (**who** *is also correct*)
7. *OK* (**that** *is also correct*)
8. . . . the sentences **that/which** are wrong.
9. . . . a car **that/which** cost $60,000.

UNIT 103

103.1
2. I've lost the pen you gave me.
3. I like the jacket Sue is wearing.
4. Where are the flowers I gave you?
5. I didn't believe the story he told us.
6. How much were the oranges you bought?

103.2
2. The meal you cooked was excellent.
3. The shoes I'm wearing aren't very comfortable.
4. The people we invited to dinner didn't come.

103.3
2. Who are the people you were talking to?
3. Did you find the keys you were looking for?
4. Where is the party you're going to?
5. What's the name of the movie you were talking about?
6. What's that music you're listening to?
7. Did you get the e-mail you were waiting for?

103.4
2. What's the name of the restaurant where you had dinner?
3. How big is the town where you live?
4. Where exactly is the factory where you work?

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

UNIT 104

104.1

2. at
3. in
4. at
5. in
6. in
7. at
8. in
9. at
10. in . . . at

104.2

3. at
4. on
5. in
6. in
7. on
8. on
9. at
10. on
11. at
12. in
13. on
14. on
15. at
16. at
17. on
18. in

104.3

3. B
4. A
5. both
6. A
7. B
8. B
9. both
10. both
11. B
12. both

104.4

2. I'll call you in three days.
3. My exam is in two weeks. / . . . in 14 days.
4. Tom will be here in half an hour. / . . . in 30 minutes.

104.5

3. in
4. – *(already complete)*
5. – *(already complete)*
6. in
7. on
8. – *(already complete)*
9. – *(already complete)*
10. – *(already complete)*
11. in
12. at

UNIT 105

105.1

2. Alex lived in Canada **until** 2003.
3. Alex has lived in Japan **since** 2003.
4. Jin Sook lived in South Korea **until** 2007.
5. Jin Sook has lived in Australia **since** 2007.
6. Beth worked in a hotel **from** 2002 **to** 2005.
7. Beth has worked in a restaurant **since** 2005.
8. Adam was a teacher **from** 1996 **to** 2002.
9. Adam has been a journalist **since** 2002.
11. Alex has lived in Japan for ____ years.
12. Jin Sook has lived in Australia for ____ years.
13. Beth worked in a hotel for three years.
14. Beth has worked in a restaurant for ____ years.
15. Adam was a teacher for six years.
16. Adam has been a journalist for ____ years.

105.2

2. until
3. for
4. since
5. Until
6. for
7. for
8. until
9. since
10. until
11. for
12. until
13. Since
14. for

UNIT 106

106.1

2. after lunch
3. before the end
4. during the course
5. before they went to Mexico
6. during the night
7. while you're waiting
8. after the concert

106.2

3. while
4. for
5. while
6. during
7. while
8. for
9. during
10. while

106.3

2. eating
3. answering
4. taking
5. finishing/doing
6. going/traveling

106.4

2. John worked in a bookstore for two years after finishing high school.
3. Before going to sleep, I read for a few minutes.
4. After walking for three hours, we were very tired.
5. Let's have a cup of coffee before going out.

UNIT 107

107.1

2. **In** the box.
3. **On** the box.
4. **On** the wall.
5. **At** the bus stop.
6. **In** the field.
7. **On** the balcony.
8. **In** the pool.
9. **At** the window.
10. **On** the ceiling.
11. **On** the table.
12. **At** the table.

107.2

2. in
3. on
4. in
5. on
6. at
7. in
8. in
9. at
10. at
11. in
12. at
13. on
14. at
15. **on** the wall **in** the living room

UNIT 108

108.1

2. **At** the airport.
3. **In** bed.
4. **On** a ship.
5. **In** the sky.
6. **At** a party.
7. **At** the doctor's.
8. **On** the second floor.
9. **At** work.
10. **On** a plane.
11. **In** a taxi.
12. **At** a wedding.

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

108.2

2. in
3. in
4. at
5. at
6. in
7. in
8. at
9. in
10. in
11. on
12. on
13. at
14. in
15. on
16. at

UNIT 109

109.1

2. to
3. in
4. to
5. in
6. to
7. to
8. in

109.2

3. to
4. to
5. (**at**) home . . . **to** work
6. at
7. – *(already complete)*
8. to
9. at
10. **at** a restaurant . . . **to** the hotel

109.3

2. to
3. to
4. in
5. to
6. to
7. at
8. to
9. to
10. at
11. at
12. **to** Maria's house . . . (**at**) home
13. – *(already complete)*
14. meet **at** the party . . . go **to** the party

109.4

1. to
2. – *(already complete)*
3. at
4. in
5. to
6. – *(already complete)*

109.5

Example answers:

2. to work
3. at work
4. to Alaska
5. to parties
6. at a friend's house

UNIT 110

110.1

2. next to / by
3. in front of
4. between
5. next to / by
6. in front of
7. behind
8. on the
9. in the

110.2

2. behind
3. above
4. in front of
5. on
6. by / next to
7. below / under
8. above
9. under
10. by / next to
11. across from
12. on

110.3

2. The fountain is in front of the theater.
3. The bank/bookstore is across from the theater. *or* Paul's office is across from the theater. *or* The theater is across from . . .
4. The bank/supermarket is next to the bookstore. *or* The bookstore is next to the . . .
5. Paul's office is above the bookstore.
6. The bookstore is between the bank and the supermarket.

UNIT 111

111.1

2. Go under the bridge.
3. Go up the hill.
4. Go down the steps.
5. Go along this street.
6. Go into the hotel.
7. Go past the hotel.
8. Go out of the hotel.
9. Go over the bridge.
10. Go through the park.

111.2

2. off
3. over
4. out of
5. across
6. around
7. through
8. on
9. around
10. **into** the house **through** a window

111.3

1. out of
2. around
3. in
4. **from** here **to** the airport
5. around
6. on/over
7. over
8. out of

UNIT 112

112.1

2. on time
3. on vacation
4. on the phone
5. on television

112.2

2. by
3. with
4. about
5. on
6. by
7. at
8. on
9. with
10. **about** grammar **by** Vera P. Bull

112.3

1. with
2. without
3. by
4. about
5. at
6. by
7. on
8. with
9. at
10. by
11. about
12. by
13. on
14. with
15. by
16. by

UNIT 113

113.1

2. in
3. to

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

4. at
5. with
6. of

113.2
2. at
3. to
4. about
5. of
6. of
7. from
8. in
9. for
10. about
11. of
12. at

113.3
2. interested in going
3. good at getting
4. fed up with waiting
5. sorry for/about waking
6. Thank you for waiting.

113.4
2. Sue walked past me without speaking.
3. Don't do anything without asking me first.
4. I went out without locking the door.

113.5
Example answers:
2. I'm afraid of the dark.
3. I'm not very good at drawing.
4. I'm not interested in cars.
5. I'm fed up with living here.

UNIT 114

114.1
2. to
3. for
4. to
5. at
6. for

114.2
2. to
3. of
4. to
5. for
6. for
7. of/about
8. for
9. on
10. to
11. at
12. for
13. to
14. – *(already complete)*
15. to
16. on
17. – *(already complete)* . . . **(to)**
18. of/about
19. at
20. of
21. for
22. – *(already complete)*

114.3
Example answers:
3. It depends on the program.
4. It depends (on) what it is.
5. It depends on the weather.
6. It depends (on) how much you want.

UNIT 115

115.1
2. went in
3. looked up
4. rode off/away
5. turned around
6. got off
7. sat down
8. got out

115.2
2. away
3. around
4. going **out** . . . be **back**
5. down
6. over
7. back
8. in
9. up
10. going **away** . . . coming **back**

115.3
2. Hold on
3. slowed down
4. takes off
5. get along
6. speak up
7. broken down
8. fall over / fall down
9. work out
10. gave up
11. went off

UNIT 116

116.1
2. She took off her hat. *or* She took her hat off.
3. He put down his bag. *or* He put his bag down.
4. She picked up the magazine. *or* She picked the magazine up.
5. He put on his sunglasses. *or* He put his sunglasses on.
6. She turned off the faucet. *or* She turned the faucet off.

116.2
2. He put his jacket on.
   He put it on.
3. She took off her glasses.
   She took them off.
4. I picked the phone up.
   I picked it up.
5. They gave the key back.
   They gave it back.
6. We turned off the lights.
   We turned them off.

116.3
2. take it back
3. picked them up
4. turned it off
5. bring them back

116.4
3. knocked over
4. look it up
5. throw them away
6. tried on
7. showed me around
8. gave up
9. fill it out
10. put your cigarette out

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Answer Key to Additional Exercises

(see page 244)

1

3. Kate is a doctor.
4. The children are asleep.
5. Gary isn't hungry.
6. The books aren't on the table.
7. The hotel is near the station.
8. The bus isn't full.

2

3. she's / she is
4. Where are
5. Is he
6. It's / It is
7. I'm / I am *or* No, I'm not. I'm a student.
8. What color is
9. Is it
10. Are you
11. How much are they?

3

3. He's / He is taking a shower.
4. Are the children playing?
5. Is it raining?
6. They're / They are coming now.
7. Why are you standing here? I'm / I am waiting for somebody.

4

4. Sam doesn't want
5. Do you want
6. Does Helen live
7. Sarah knows
8. I don't travel
9. do you usually get up
10. They don't go out
11. Tom always leaves
12. does Julia do . . . She works

5

3. She's / She is a student.
4. She doesn't have a car.
5. She goes out a lot.
6. She has / She's got a lot of friends.
7. She doesn't like Houston.
8. She likes to dance.
9. She isn't / She's not interested in sports.

6

1. Are you married?
   Where do you live?
   Do you have any children?
   How old is she?
2. How old are you?
   What do you do? / Where do you work? / What's your job?
   Do you like/enjoy your job?
   Do you have a car?
   Do you (usually) go to work by car?
3. What's his name?
   What does he do? / What's his job?
   Does he live/work in New York?

7

4. Sonia is 32 years old.
5. I have / I've got two sisters.
6. We often watch TV at night.
7. Jane never wears a hat.
8. My car has a flat tire. *or* My car's got / has got a flat tire.
9. These flowers are beautiful.
10. Mary speaks German very well.

8

3. are you cooking
4. plays
5. I'm leaving
6. It's raining
7. I don't watch
8. we're looking
9. do you pronounce

9

2. we go
3. shining
4. are you going
5. do you take
6. She writes
7. I never read
8. They're watching
9. She's talking
10. do you usually have
11. He's visiting
12. I don't drink

10

2. went
3. found
4. was
5. had/took
6. told
7. gave
8. were
9. thought
10. invited/asked

11

3. He was good at sports.
4. He played basketball.
5. He didn't work hard at school.
6. He had a lot of friends.
7. He didn't have a bicycle.
8. He wasn't a quiet child.

12

3. How long were you there? / How long did you stay there?
4. Did you like/enjoy the Bahamas?
5. Where did you stay?
6. Was the weather good?
7. When did you get/come back?

13

3. I forgot
4. did you get
5. I didn't speak
6. Did you have
7. he didn't go
8. she arrived
9. did Robert live
10. The meal didn't cost

14

2. were working
3. opened
4. rang . . . was cooking
5. heard . . . looked
6. was looking . . . happened
7. wasn't reading . . . was watching
8. didn't read
9. finished . . . paid . . . left
10. saw . . . was walking . . . was waiting

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

15

3. is playing
4. gave
5. doesn't like
6. did your parents go
7. saw . . . was driving
8. Do you watch
9. were you doing
10. goes
11. 'm/am trying
12. didn't sleep

16

2. I haven't read it.
3. Have you seen her?
4. I've / I have had enough.
5. Have you (ever) been to Chile?
6. How long have you lived here? *or* . . . have you been living here?
7. we've / we have known each other for years.
8. It's / It has been raining all day. *or* It has rained all day. *or* It has been horrible/bad all day.

17

3. 's/has been
4. for
5. since
6. has he lived / has he been
7. for
8. 've/have been

18

Example answers:

3. I've just started this exercise.
4. I've met Julia a few times.
5. I haven't had dinner yet.
6. I've never been to Australia.
7. I've lived here since I was born.
8. I've lived here for three years.

19

3. bought/got
4. went
5. 've/have seen *or* saw it . . .
6. haven't started (it)
7. was
8. didn't see
9. finished *or* graduated from
10. 's/has been
11. was
12. 've/have never made

20

3. He's/He has lived there since last May. *or* He's been living . . .
4. she left at 4:00.
5. How many times have you been there?
6. I've / have been tired all day.
7. It was on the table last night.
8. I've eaten there a few times.
9. What time did they get here?

21

1. When was the last time? *or* When did you go the last time? *or* When were you there the last time?
2. How long have you had it? I bought/got it yesterday.
3. How long have you lived there / have you been there / have you been living there? Before that we lived on Mill Road. How long did you live on Mill Road?
4. How long have you worked there / have you been working there? What did you do before that? I was a taxi driver. *or* I worked as a taxi driver.

22

Example answers:

2. I didn't go out last night.
3. I was at work yesterday afternoon.
4. I went to a party a few days ago.
5. It was my birthday last week.
6. I went to South America last year.

23

2. B	9. C
3. D	10. D
4. A	11. A
5. A	12. C
6. D	13. B
7. C	14. C
8. B	15. A

24

1. was damaged . . . be torn down
2. was built . . . is used . . . is being painted
3. is called . . . be called . . . was changed
4. have been made . . . are produced

25

2. is visited
3. were damaged
4. be built
5. is being cleaned
6. be forgotten
7. has been repaired
8. be kept
9. Have you ever been bitten
10. was stolen

26

2. My car was stolen last week.
3. You're / You are wanted on the phone.
4. All the bananas have been eaten.
5. The machine will be repaired.
6. We're / We are being watched.
7. The housework has to be done.

27

3. pushed
4. was pushed
5. has taken *or* took
6. is being repaired
7. invented
8. was the camera invented
9. have been washed *or* were washed
10. I've / I have washed them. *or* I washed them.
11. did they send
12. be sent

28

2. B	8. B
3. A	9. B
4. C	10. A
5. B	11. B
6. C	12. C
7. C	

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

29

1. *B:* I stayed
   A: did you do
   B: I watched
   A: Are you going
   B: I'm going
   A: are you going to see
   B: I don't know. I haven't decided
2. *A:* have you been
   B: We arrived
   A: are you staying / are you going to stay
   A: do you like
   B: we're having
3. *A:* I've just remembered / I just remembered – Karen called
   B: She always calls *or* She's always calling . . . Did she leave
   A: she wants
   B: I'll call . . . Do you know
   A: I'll get
4. *A:* I'm going . . . Do you want
   B: are you going
   A: Have you ever eaten
   B: I've been . . . I went
5. *A:* I've lost / I lost . . . Have you seen
   B: You were wearing . . . I came
   A: I'm not wearing
   B: Have you looked / Did you look
   A: I'll go

30

1. we met
2. we sat / we were sitting
3. We didn't know
4. we became
5. we liked
6. we spent
7. We finished
8. we meet
9. has been
10. she's working
11. She's coming
12. she comes
13. we'll have / we're going to have
14. It will be

31

2. we're staying
3. we enjoyed
4. We watched
5. slept
6. I don't sleep
7. we're not doing / we're not going to do
8. we're going
9. to see
10. We haven't decided
11. wants
12. to go
13. I'll send
14. you're having
15. are studying / have been studying
16. he had
17. he needs
18. We've been
19. We got
20. seeing
21. I liked
22. we went
23. we left
24. had
25. he wasn't injured
26. was damaged
27. We've changed / We changed
28. we're leaving
29. We're staying / We're going to stay / We'll stay
30. flying
31. That will be / That's going to be
32. finished
33. I'll let
34. we get
35. are looking
36. We're going
37. we'll send

32

2. A	11. B
3. B	12. A
4. C	13. C
5. B	14. B
6. C	15. C
7. B	16. A
8. A	17. C
9. C	18. B
10 A	

33

2. a car
3. the fridge
4. a teacher
5. school
6. the movies
7. a taxi
8. the piano
9. computers
10. the same

34

4. **a** horse
5. **The** sky
6. **a** tourist
7. for lunch (–)
8. **the** first president of **the** United States
9. a watch
10. remember names (–)
11. **the** next train
12. sends e-mails (–)
13. **the** backyard
14. **the** Majestic Hotel
15. sick last week (–) . . . to work (–)
16. **the** highest mountain in **the** world
17. to **the** radio . . . having breakfast (–)
18. like sports (–) . . . is basketball (–)
19. **a** doctor . . . **an** art teacher
20. **the** second floor . . . **the** top of **the** stairs . . . on **the** right
21. After dinner (–) . . . watched TV (–)
22. northern Mexico (–) . . . **the** south

35

2. in	11. for
3. on	12. at
4. at	13. in
5. on	14. at
6. in	15. on
7. since	16. by
8. on	17. for . . . on
9. by	18. to . . . in
10. in	19. at . . . in

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Answer Key to Study Guide

(see page 263)

Present

1.1 B
1.2 A
1.3 C
1.4 A
1.5 C, D
1.6 B
1.7 D
1.8 C
1.9 C
1.10 A
1.11 C
1.12 A
1.13 D
1.14 C
1.15 A
1.16 D
1.17 C, D
1.18 A, D

Past

2.1 B
2.2 E
2.3 D
2.4 B
2.5 A
2.6 D
2.7 A
2.8 C
2.9 C
2.10 E

Present perfect

3.1 B, E
3.2 D
3.3 B
3.4 D
3.5 E
3.6 B
3.7 A
3.8 C
3.9 D
3.10 E

Passive

4.1 D
4.2 C
4.3 E
4.4 A
4.5 A

Verb forms

5.1 D
5.2 B

Future

6.1 A
6.2 A
6.3 C
6.4 A, B
6.5 B
6.6 C
6.7 D
6.8 C
6.9 B, C

Modals, imperative, etc.

7.1 C, D
7.2 A, C
7.3 A
7.4 D
7.5 B
7.6 C
7.7 B, D
7.8 D
7.9 C
7.10 C
7.11 B, D
7.12 A
7.13 B

There and *it*

8.1 B
8.2 E
8.3 A
8.4 A
8.5 B

Auxiliary verbs

9.1 D
9.2 A
9.3 C
9.4 B
9.5 B
9.6 C
9.7 D

Questions

10.1 D
10.2 D
10.3 A
10.4 A
10.5 B
10.6 D
10.7 B
10.8 A
10.9 C, E
10.10 C
10.11 A
10.12 A, C

Reported speech

11.1 E
11.2 A, B, D

-ing and *to . . .*

12.1 B
12.2 D
12.3 B
12.4 C
12.5 B, C
12.6 C
12.7 A
12.8 D

Go, get, do, make, and *have*

13.1 A, D
13.2 C
13.3 C, D
13.4 A, D
13.5 B
13.6 D

Pronouns and possessives

14.1 A
14.2 C
14.3 D
14.4 B
14.5 B, C
14.6 A
14.7 E
14.8 A
14.9 D
14.10 C

A and *the*

15.1 C
15.2 B
15.3 A, C
15.4 B
15.5 B
15.6 A
15.7 D
15.8 C

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

15.9 B
15.10 B
15.11 E
15.12 D
15.13 B
15.14 A

Determiners and pronouns

16.1 C
16.2 C
16.3 B
16.4 B
16.5 C
16.6 A, C
16.7 D
16.8 B, D
16.9 A
16.10 B
16.11 D
16.12 B, D
16.13 A
16.14 A, B
16.15 D
16.16 A, C
16.17 D
16.18 B
16.19 A

Adjectives and adverbs

17.1 A
17.2 C
17.3 C
17.4 D
17.5 B
17.6 B
17.7 A, C
17.8 E
17.9 A
17.10 B
17.11 D
17.12 A
17.13 D
17.14 C

Word order

18.1 B
18.2 C
18.3 B
18.4 A
18.5 A, D

Conjunctions and clauses

19.1 C
19.2 A
19.3 D
19.4 E
19.5 B, C
19.6 A, B
19.7 B, D
19.8 A

Prepositions

20.1 A, D
20.2 E
20.3 C, D
20.4 B
20.5 A, D
20.6 A
20.7 B
20.8 C
20.9 B
20.10 D
20.11 D
20.12 A
20.13 C
20.14 D
20.15 A
20.16 E
20.17 C
20.18 B
20.19 D
20.20 D

Phrasal verbs

21.1 C
21.2 A, B
21.3 B

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Index

The numbers are unit numbers (not page numbers).

a/an 66
a and *some* 68–69
a/an and *the* 70
about 112E
above 110E
across 111
across from 110B
active and **passive** Appendix 1
adjectives 86
get + adjective (*get tired*, etc.) 57B
possessive adjectives (*my/your/her*, etc.) 61, 63
something/anybody, etc. + adjective 80C
adjectives and adverbs *(quick/quickly)* 87
comparatives *(older / more expensive)* 88–90
superlatives *(the oldest / the most expensive)* 91
adjectives + preposition (*afraid of*, etc.) 113A
adverbs 87
word order (*always/usually/often*, etc.) 95
advise *(advise somebody to . . .)* 54B
afraid (of) 113A
after 99, 106
ago 18B
all
all and *every*, etc. 81
all (of) 82
word order 95
along 111
already 96C
already + present perfect or simple past 20B
word order 95
also (word order) 95
always
always + simple present 5C
word order 95
am/is/are 1–2
am/is/are -ing (present continuous) 3–4, 24A, 26, 52C
there is / there are 38
an see **a**
and 98
angry (at/with/about) 113A
another 66B
any
any and *some* 77
not + *any* 78
any and *no* 78
any (of) 82
anybody/anyone/anything 77D, 79–80
anywhere 80
apostrophe (*I'm, it's*, etc.) Appendix 4
apostrophe 's *(my brother's car)* 65
are see **am/is/are**
around 111
turn around / show around (phrasal verbs) 115–116, Appendix 7
arrive 109C
articles *(a/an/the)* 66–74
a/an 66, 68–69
a/an and *the* 70
the 71–74
as *(not as . . . as)* 90
ask
ask somebody to . . . 54B
ask somebody for . . . 114A
at
at 8:00/ at night, etc. 104
at the bus stop / at work, etc. 107–108
at and *to* 109
at the age of . . . 112B
auxiliary verbs 24, 41–43
away
run away / throw away, etc. (phrasal verbs) 115–116, Appendix 7

back
come back / give back, etc. (phrasal verbs) 115–116, Appendix 7
in back of 110A
base form 52
be (base form of *am/is/are*)
am/is/are 1–2
am/is/are + *-ing* (present continuous) 3–4, 24A, 26, 52C
was/were 10
was/were + *-ing* (past continuous) 13, 24A, 52C
have/has been (present perfect) 16–17
passive 22–23, Appendix 1
will be 28
because 98
been
have/has been (present perfect) 16–17
been and *gone* 21A
there has/have been 39B
before 99, 106
begin *(begin to . . .* or *begin -ing)* 53C
belong (to) 114A
below 110E
best 91B
better 88D
between 110A
born 22C
both 83
word order 95
but 98
by 112C
by after the passive *(I was bitten by a dog.)* 22D
by myself / by yourself, etc. 64C
by (= next to) 110C

call 114B
can/can't 31
comparative (*older / more expensive*, etc.) 88–90
conditional *(if . . .)*
if I do . . . 100
if I did . . . 101
conjunctions 98–101
and/but/or/so/because 98
when/before/while/after/until 99
if 100–101
continue *(continue to . . .* or *continue -ing)* 53C
contractions (short forms - *I'm, it's, you've*, etc.) Appendix 4
could/couldn't 31C–D
countable and uncountable nouns 68–69

depend (on) 114C
did
didn't in negatives 12, 24D, 41C, 44B, 52A
did in questions 12, 24D, 41C, 45B, 52A
different (from) 113A
direct speech and reported speech 51
do and **make** 58
don't/doesn't in negatives 6, 24D, 41C, 44B, 52A
do/does in questions 7, 24D, 41C, 45B, 52A
don't go / don't fall, etc. (imperative) 34B
down 111
sit down / put down, etc. (phrasal verbs) 115–116, Appendix 6–7
during 106

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

each other 64D

either
either and *too* 43A
either (of) 83

embedded questions (*Do you know what . . . ?*, etc.) 50

e-mail 114B

end *(at the end of)* 104B, 107B

enjoy
enjoy -ing 53B
enjoy myself/yourself, etc. 64A

enough 92
enough and *too* 93D

ever
Have you ever . . . ? 16
superlative + *ever* 91E
word order 95

every 81

everybody/everyone/everything/everywhere 81C

expect 53A, 54B

far
How far is it? 40A, 48D
far/farther 88B

fast 87C

fed up (with) 113A

few / a few 85

finish *(finish -ing)* 53B

for
for 10 minutes / for three years, etc. 18, 105D
for and *to . . .* 55B
go for a walk, etc. 56C
for and *during* 106C

from 105A, 111

front *(in front of)* 110A–B

full (of) 113A

farther 88B

future 26–29
I'm working tomorrow. (present continuous) 26
The concert starts at 7:30. (simple present) 26C
(I'm) going to (do something) 27
will 28–29
shall 29C
future after *when/before/while*, etc. 99B
future after *if* 100B

geographical names with and without *the* 74

gerund see **-ing**

get 57
get to (a place) 57C, 109C
get on / get up, etc. (phrasal verbs) 115, Appendix 6

give
give something to somebody / give somebody something 97
give up / give back, etc. (phrasal verbs) 116, Appendix 6–7

go 56
go -ing (go swimming, etc.) 56D
go home / go to work / go to the movies 72
go in / go back, etc. (phrasal verbs) 115

going to *(I'm going to do something)* 27

gone and **been** 21A

good
good and *well* 87D
good at 113A

got
past of *get* 11C, 57
have/has got 9, 59A
don't have/haven't got 9B

had
past of *have* 11C
had to 34B
He said he had (done something) 51, Appendix 1.1

happen (to) 114A

hard 87C

has see **have**

hate 53C–D

have 9, 59
don't have / haven't got 9B
have and short answers 9D
have got / has got 9, 59A
have done / have been, etc. (present perfect) 16–19, 24C
have to 34
have a nice time / have fun, etc. 34A
there has/have been 39B
have breakfast / have a good time, etc. 59B

her 60–61, 63

hers 62–63

herself 64

him 60, 63

himself 64

his 61–63

home 56A, 72A, 109B
get home 57C, 109C

how 48
How long have you . . . ? (present perfect) 17
how big? / how old? / how far?, etc. 48D
How long does it take? 49
how much? / how many? 84A

I/you/he/she, etc. (personal pronouns) 60, 63

if 100–101
if we go / if you see, etc. 100
if and *when* 100C
if I had / if we went 101
Do you know if . . . ? 50C

imperative (*do this / don't do that*, etc.) 34

in
in five minutes / in three years, etc. 104E
in April / in the summer, etc. 104
in a room / in the hospital, etc. 107–108
in and *to* 109
in back of 110A
in front of 110A–B
put something in 111
go in / fill in, etc. (phrasal verbs) 115–116, Appendix 7

infinitive
adjective + infinitive (*it's easy to . . .*) 40B
infinitive (*do/see*, etc.) 52
infinitive and *-ing* (*do/doing*, etc.) 52–53
I want to go, etc. 52B, 53
I went to the store to buy . . . 55
infinitive and *for . . .* 55B
something to eat / nowhere to go, etc. 80D

-ing (*doing/playing/going*, etc.)
am/is/are + *-ing* (present continuous) 3–4, 24A, 26, 52C
was/were + *-ing* (past continuous) 13, 24A, 52C
-ing and infinitive (*do/doing*, etc.) 52–53
verbs + *-ing* (*enjoy -ing*, etc.) 53B–C
go -ing (*go swimming*, etc.) 56D
prepositions + *-ing* 106D, 113B

interested (in) 113A

into 111

irregular verbs 11C, 25B, Appendix 2–3

is see **am/is/are**

it 40, 60B
it is and *there is* 38B, 40A
it's and *its* 61C

its 61

just
just + present perfect or simple past 20A
word order 95

kind *(kind to somebody / kind of somebody)* 113A

know *(Do you know where . . . ?)* 50

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

learn *(learn to . . .)* 53A
left *(on the left)* 110A
lend *(lend something to somebody)* 97
less 89C
let 54D
let's *(let's go / let's dance,* etc.) 37C, 54D
like *(What is it like?)* 47B
like (verb)
would like 35, 53D, 54A
do you like? and *would you like?* 35C
like to . . . or *like -ing* 53C
listen (to) 114A
little / a little 85
(a little older/bigger, etc.) 89D
look
look + adjective *(look tired,* etc.) 86C
look at/for/after 114A
lot (a lot of . . .) 84
love 53C–D

make 58
make somebody do something 54D
make and *do* 58
many
many and *much* 84
not as many (as) 90B
too many 93C
married
married to 113A
get married 57B
may 30D
me/you/him, etc. (personal pronouns) 60, 63
middle *(in the middle of)* 108A, 110A
might 30
mind *(I don't mind -ing)* 53B
mine/yours/hers, etc. (possessive pronouns) 62–63
modal verbs *(will/can/might,* etc.) 28–35, 52A
more 88C, 89
most
most (of) 82
the most expensive / the most difficult, etc. 91
much
much and *many* 84
much bigger / much more expensive 89D
not as much (as) 90B
too much 93C
must 32
my/your/his, etc. (possessive adjectives) 61, 63
myself/yourself, etc. (reflexive pronouns) 64

need
need to . . . 53A
negatives 44
negative questions 45C
no and *none* 78
not + any 78–79
neither
Neither am I / Neither do I, etc. 43B
neither (of) 83
never
never + simple present 5C
never + present perfect 16
word order 95
next to 110A
nice *(nice to somebody / nice of somebody)* 113A
no *(no money / no friends,* etc.) 78A–B, 82A
nobody/no one/nothing 79–80
no one and *none* 78C
none 78B–C, 82B–C
nouns (countable and uncountable) 68–69
nowhere 80

of
the roof of the building, etc. 65C
the . . . of . . . 74E
off 111
get off / turn off, etc. (phrasal verbs) 115–116, Appendix 6
offer *(to do something)* 53A
often
often + simple present 5C
word order 95
on
on Monday / on April 25, etc. 104
on the table / on the wall 107–108
on the left/right 110A
on vacation / on television, etc. 112A
go on (vacation/ a trip, etc.) 56B
get on / put on, etc. (phrasal verbs) 115–116, Appendix 6–7
one/ones 76
or 98B
ought to 33F
our 61, 63
ours 62–63
ourselves 64
out
out of 111
go out / put out, etc. (phrasal verbs) 115–116, Appendix 6–7
over 111
climb over / knock over (phrasal verbs) 115–116, Appendix 6–7

pair *(a pair of . . .)* 67B
passive 22–23, 24B, Appendix 1
simple present *(is done)* and simple past *(was done)* 22
present continuous *(is being done)* and present perfect *(has been done)* 23
will/can/must (etc.) *be done* Appendix 1.2
past *(Go past the movie theater . . .)* 111
past continuous *(was/were + -ing)* 13–14, 24A, 52C
past continuous *(I was doing)* and simple past *(I did)* 14
past continuous passive, Appendix 1.1
past participle *(cleaned/done/seen,* etc.) 25A
present perfect *(I have played)* 16, 19, 24C
passive *(the room was cleaned)* 22–23, 24B, Appendix 1
regular *(cleaned)* and irregular *(seen)* 25B, Appendix 2–3
past perfect
He said he had (done something) 51
active and passive Appendix 1.1
past simple see **simple past**
people 67C–D
personal pronouns *(I/me/you,* etc.) 60, 63
persuade *(persuade somebody to . . .)* 54B
phrasal verbs *(get up / put on,* etc.) 115–116, Appendix 6–7
plural *(cup cups / man men,* etc.) 67
police (plural) 67D
possessive adjectives *(my/your/his,* etc.) 61, 63
possessive pronouns *(mine/yours/his,* etc.) 62–63
prefer 36B, 53C–D
prepositions 104–114
at/on/in (time) 104
for/since 18, 105
until 105A-B
before/after/during/while 106
in/at/on (places) 107–108
to/in/at (places) 109
on 104, 107–108, 110A, 112A
at 104, 107–109, 112B
under/between/next to, etc. (position) 110
up/over/through, etc. (movement) 111
by 110C, 112C
with/without 112D, 113B
about 112E
prepositions + *-ing* (*in -ing / without -ing,* etc.) 106D, 113B
adjective + prepositions (*afraid of,* etc.) 113A

The numbers are unit numbers (not page numbers).
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

verb + preposition (*listen to / wait for*, etc.) 114
prepositions at the end *(Who is she talking to?)* 47
prepositions in relative clauses *(the man she is talking to)* 103B

present continuous *(am/is/are + -ing)* 3–4, 24A, 52C
negative *(I'm not -ing)* 3
questions *(are you -ing?)* 4
present continuous *(I am doing)* and simple present *(I do)* 8
present continuous passive 23A, Appendix 1.1
present continuous for the future *(What are you doing tomorrow?)* 26

present perfect *(I have done)* 16–17, 19–21, 24C
present perfect + *just* 20A
present perfect + *already* 20B
present perfect + *yet* 20C, 96B
Have you ever . . . ? 16
gone and *been* 21A
How long have you . . . ? 17
present perfect + *for/since* 17–18
present perfect continuous *(I have been -ing)* 17B
present perfect *(I have done)* and simple past *(I did)* 19
present perfect passive 23B, Appendix 1.1
regular and irregular verbs 16, 25, Appendix 2–3

present simple see **simple present**

promise *(promise to . . .)* 53A

pronouns
personal pronouns (*I/me/you*, etc.) 60, 63
possessive pronouns (*mine/yours*, etc.) 62–63
reflexive pronouns (*myself/yourself*, etc.) 64
one/ones 76
relative pronouns *(who/which/that)* 102–103

put
put something in . . . 111
put on / put out, etc. (phrasal verbs) 116, Appendix 7

questions 45–48
am/is/are . . . ? 2
do/does . . . ? (simple present) 7, 45B
did . . . ? (simple past) 12, 45B
Why don't . . . ? / Why isn't . . . ?, etc. 45C
Who saw you? / Who did you see? 45
preposition at the end *(Who is she talking to?)* 47
What / Which / How . . . ? 48
How long does it take? 49
Do you know where . . . ? (embedded questions) 50
reply questions (*Have you? / Are you?*, etc.) 42A
tag questions (*. . . do you? / . . . isn't it?*, etc.) 42B

rather
I'd rather/Would you rather? 36
I'd rather go out than . . ., etc. 36C

reflexive pronouns (*myself/yourself*, etc.) 64

regular and irregular verbs 11, 25, Appendix 2–3

relative clauses 102–103

relative pronouns *(who/which/that)* 102–103

reply questions *(Have you? / Are you?)* 42A

reported speech
He said that . . . / He told me that . . . 51
He told me to . . . 54C

right *(on the right)* 110A

's (apostrophe **'s**) 65, Appendix 4.5

same 71B, 90E

say/said
He said that . . . (reported speech) 51
say and *tell* 51B

shall 29C

short answers (*do/don't have/ haven't, does/doesn't*, etc.) 9D

short forms (*I'm / it's / you've*, etc.) Appendix 4

should 33

simple past (*did/cleaned/saw*, etc.) 11–12
negative *(didn't . . .)* 12, 44B
questions *(did . . . ?)* 12, 45B
was/were 10
regular *(cleaned)* and irregular verbs *(saw)* 11C, Appendix 2–3
simple past + *ago* 18B
simple past + *already* 20B
simple past *(I did)* and present perfect *(I have done)* 19
simple past *(I did)* and past continuous *(I was doing)* 14
simple past + *just* 20A
simple past passive *(the room was cleaned)* 22, 24B, Appendix 1.1
simple past + *yet* 20C
if + simple past *(if I had / if we went)* 101

simple present (*I work / she works*, etc.) 5–7, 24D
negative *(don't/doesn't)* 6, 43B
questions *(do/does . . . ?)* 7, 44B
simple present + *always/usually/never*, etc. 5C
simple present *(I do)* and present continuous *(I am doing)* 8
simple present passive *(the room cleaned)* 22, 24B, Appendix 1.1
simple present for the future *(The concert starts at 7:30.)* 26C
simple present after *when/while*, etc. 98B
simple present after *if* 99B

since 18A, 105C

singular and plural *(flower → flowers)* 67

so
so am I / so do I, etc. 43B
I was tired, so I went to bed. 98

some
some and *a/an* 68–69
some and *any* 77
some (of) 82

somebody/someone/something/somewhere 77, 80

sometimes
sometimes + simple present 5C
word order 95

sorry *(sorry about* and *sorry for)* 113A

speak (to) 114A

spelling Appendix 5

start *(start to . . .* and *start -ing)* 53C

still 96
word order 95

stop *(stop -ing)* 53B

suggest *(suggest -ing)* 53B

superlative (*the biggest / the most expensive*, etc.) 91

tag questions 42B

take *(How long does it take?)* 49

talk (to) 114A

tell/told
He told me that . . . 51
tell and *say* 51B
Can you tell me where . . . ? 50A
He told me to . . . 54B

tenses
active and passive Appendix 1.1
present continuous *(I am doing)* 3–4, 24A, 26, 52C
simple present *(I do)* 5–7, 24D, 26C
simple past *(I did)* 11–12, 14, 19–21, 24D
past continuous *(I was doing)* 13–14, 24A, 52C
present perfect *(I have done)* 16–21, 24C
be/have/do in present and past tenses 24

text 114B

than 89–90

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

that 75
He said that . . . (reported speech) 51C
that and *this* 75
a thing that . . . (relative clauses) 102
the 70–74
the and *a/an* 70
the same 71B
the sun / the sky, etc. 71C
the movies / the theater / the bank, etc. 72B
flowers / the flowers 73
the in names of places 74
the biggest / the most expensive, etc. 91
their 61, 63
theirs 62, 63
them 60, 63
themselves 64
there
there is/are 38
there was/were 39A
there has/have been 39B
there will be 39C
there is and *it is* 38B
these 75
think (*think about / think of*) 114A
this 75
those 75
through 111
till (= *until*) 105B
to
time 105A
places 109, 111
go to . . . 56A, 109A
get to . . . 57C, 109C
infinitive (*to go / to be*, etc.) 52
verb + *to* 53A, 53C
too 93
too and *either* 43A
turn (*turn around / turn on*, etc.) (phrasal verbs) 115–116, Appendix 7

uncountable nouns (*salt/water/music*, etc.) 68–69
under 110D, 111
until 99B, 105A-B
up 111
get up / pick up, etc. (phrasal verbs) 115–116, Appendix 6–7
us 60, 63

used (*I used to . . .*) 15
usually
usually + simple present 5C
word order 95

verbs
present tenses 1–9, 24, 26
past tenses 10–15, 19, 24
present perfect 16–21, 24
passive 22–23, Appendix 1
regular and irregular verbs 25, Appendix 2–3
future 26–29
modal verbs (*will/can/should*, etc.) 28–35, 52A
negatives 44
questions 45–48
reported speech 51
verbs + *-ing* 53
verbs + *to . . .* 52–54
verbs + preposition (*look at / speak to*, etc.) 114
phrasal verbs (*get up / put on*, etc.) 115–116, Appendix 6–7

wait (for) 55C, 114A
want
want to . . . 53A
want somebody to . . . 54A
was/were 10
was/were + *-ing* (past continuous) 13, 24A, 52C
was/were done (passive) 22, 24B
there was/were 39A
if I was/were . . . 101B
well 87D
were see **was**
what
What . . . ? and *Who . . . ?* 45C
What . . . like? 47B
What . . . ? 48
What . . . ? and *Which . . . ?* 48C
when 99
when and *if* 100C
whether 50C
which
Which . . . ? 48
Which . . . ? and *What . . . ?* 48C
Which one/ones? 76B
a thing which . . . (relative clauses) 102
while 99, 106

who
Who . . . ? 45
a person who . . . (relative clauses) 102
whose (*Whose is this?*) 62D
will 28–29
will and *shall* 29C
won't 28A
there will be 39C
with/without 112D
with/without + *-ing* 113B
won't (= *will not*) 28A
word order
questions 45–47
present continuous questions 4B
simple present questions 7B
simple past questions 12D
passive 22–23
Do you know where . . . ? (embedded questions) 50
verb + object 94A
place and time 94B
always/usually/often, etc. 95
after *give/lend/send*, etc. 97
worse 88D
worst 91B
would
I'd like / would you like? 35
I'd rather/would you rather? 36
would like/love, etc. 53D
He would buy a car if he had the money. 101
write (to) 114A

yet 96
yet + present perfect or simple past 20C
you 60, 63
your 61, 63
yours 62–63
yourself/yourselves 64

The numbers are unit numbers (not page numbers).
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

CD-ROM TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF USE

This is a legal agreement between you ("the customer") and Cambridge University Press ("the publisher") for *Basic Grammar in Use*, Third Edition, CD-ROM.

1. Limited license

(a) You are purchasing only the right to use the CD-ROM and are acquiring no rights, express or implied, to the software itself, or the enclosed copy, other than those rights granted in this limited license for educational use only.

(b) The publisher grants you the license to use one copy of this CD-ROM on your site and to install and use the software on this CD-ROM on a single computer. You may not install the software on this CD-ROM on a single secure network server for access from one site.

(c) You shall not: (i) copy or authorize copying of the CD-ROM, (ii) translate the CD-ROM, (iii) reverse-engineer, alter, adapt, disassemble, or decompile the CD-ROM, (iv) transfer, sell, lease, lend, profit from, assign, or otherwise convey all or any portion of the CD-ROM, or (v) operate the CD-ROM from a mainframe system.

2. Copyright

All titles and material contained within the CD-ROM are protected by copyright and all other applicable intellectual property laws and international treaties. Therefore, you may not copy the CD-ROM. You may not alter, remove, or destroy any copyright notice or other material placed on or with this CD-ROM.

3. Liability

The CD-ROM is supplied "as-is" with no express guarantee as to its suitability. To the extent permitted by applicable law, the publisher is not liable for costs of procurement of substitute products, damages, or losses of any kind whatsoever resulting from the use of this product, or errors or faults in the CD-ROM, and in every case the publisher's liability shall be limited to the suggested list price or the amount actually paid by the customer for the product, whichever is lower.

4. Termination

Without prejudice to any other rights, the publisher may terminate this license if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of the license. In such event, you must destroy all copies of the CD-ROM.

5. Governing law

This agreement is governed by the laws of England, without regard to its conflict of laws provision, and each party irrevocably submits to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of England. The parties disclaim the application of the United Nations Convention on the International Sale of Goods.

SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

WINDOWS

- Windows XP, Windows Vista, or Windows 7
- 800GHz or faster Intel/AMD (XP) or 1GHz Intel/AMD CPU (Vista and Windows 7)
- 256MB RAM or better (XP) or 1GB RAM or better (Vista and Windows 7)
- Resolution at least 1024 x 768 pixels
- Microphone
- Internet connection (for accessing Cambridge Dictionaries Online)

MAC

- Mac OS X 10.4+
- 500MHz G3/1GHz Core Solo
- 256MB RAM or better
- Resolution at least 1024 x 768 pixels
- Microphone
- Internet connection (for accessing Cambridge Dictionaries Online)

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

CD-ROM Installation Instructions

The *Basic Grammar in Use* program can be run directly from the CD-ROM and does not require installation. However, we recommend that you install the program and run it from your computer's hard drive. This will make the program run more smoothly.

WINDOWS

To install the program on your computer (recommended):

1. Make sure you are allowed to install software on your computer. If you are using a school computer, talk to the system administrator first.
2. Make sure that the CD-ROM is in your CD-ROM drive. If the program is already running, close it first.
3. Double-click on "My Computer" to display all the files and folders.
4. Right-click on your own CD-ROM. Choose "Explore."
5. Double-click on the file "**Install Basic Grammar in Use to hard drive.exe**."
6. Follow the instructions on your screen.

To run the program from the CD-ROM:

1. When you insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive, the program should start automatically.
2. If the program doesn't start automatically, double-click on "My Computer" to display all the files and folders.
3. Right-click on your CD-ROM drive. Choose "Explore."
4. Double-click on the file "**Basic Grammar in Use from CD.exe**."

MAC OS X

To install the program on your computer (recommended):

1. Make sure you are allowed to install software on your computer. If you are using a school computer, talk to the system administrator first.
2. Double-click on the CD-ROM icon on your desktop to display all the files and folders. Navigate through to the "files > program files > Cambridge > Basic Grammar in Use" directory.
3. Copy that entire "Basic Grammar in Use" directory onto a suitable location on your hard drive.
4. In the newly copied folder, double-click on the "**Basic Grammar in Use Mac OS X**" icon.

To run the program from the CD-ROM:

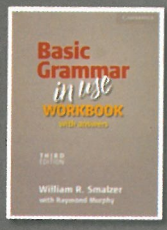
1. Make sure that the CD-ROM is in your CD-ROM drive.
2. Double-click on the CD-ROM icon on your desktop to display all the files and folders.
3. Double-click on the "**Basic Grammar in Use Mac OS X**" icon. Note that there may be a pause before the program launches.

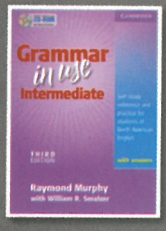
www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس

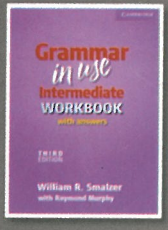
مرکز زبان آرمانی
www.armanienglish.com

Basic Grammar in use

Also in the series







Well known for its simple, clear explanations and two-page format, *Basic Grammar in Use* is a unique combination of grammar reference and practice for students of North American English. It is an excellent resource for use as a classroom text or for students who are studying on their own.

This new full-color edition is updated and also includes:

- a study guide to help students pinpoint exactly which grammar points they need
- more *Additional Exercises* in the back of the book to give students extra opportunities to consolidate what they have learned
- a fun, interactive CD-ROM with more practice, listening exercises, a create-your-own tests feature, and grammar games
- a complete answer key

A version without an answer key is also available.

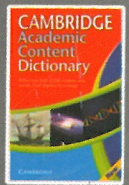
Evaluation Test A new evaluation test helps students assess which units from *Basic Grammar in Use* to review for more practice. The test is available online in an interactive format or as a PDF.
www.cambridge.org/elt/bgiu/test

Basic Grammar in Use is available in the following formats:

ISBN	Title	With Answers	With CD-ROM
978-0-521-13334-0	***Basic Grammar in Use***	•	•
978-0-521-13353-1	*Basic Grammar in Use*	•	
978-0-521-13337-1	*Basic Grammar in Use*		•

Beginner to Low Intermediate

Also of interest



978-0-521-69196-3

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS
www.cambridge.org

ISBN 978-0-521-13334-0

www.ARMANIENGLISH.com
دانلود رایگان کتب آموزش زبان
مرکز زبان آرمانی بزرگترین ارائه دهنده دوره های آنلاین زبان و آیلتس